

ARTHOUR AND MERLIN

NACH DER AUCHINLECK-HS.

NEBST ZWEI BEILAGEN

HERAUSGEGEBEN

VON

EUGEN KÖLBING

C'
LEIPZIG

VERLAG VON O. R. REISLAND

1890

Of Arthour & of Merlin.

f. 201 b.

Jesu Crist, heuen king,
Al ous graunt gode ending,
& seynt Marie, þat swete ping,
So be at our bigining
5 & help ous at our nede,
& leue ous, wele to spedē,
þat we habbep euer to don,
& scheld ous fram our fon!
Childer, þat ben to boke ysett,
10 In age hem is miche þe bett,
For þai mo witen & se
Miche of godes priuete,
Hem to kepe & to ware
Fram sinne & fram warldes care,
15 & wele ysen, zif þai willen,
þat hem no þarf neuer spillen;
Auauntages þai hauen pare,
Freynsch & Latin euer ay whare.
Of Freynsch no Latin nil y tel more,
20 Ac on Inglisch ichil tel þer fore;
Rizt is, þat Inglische vnderstond,
þat was born in Ingland;

Die überschrift z. th. überklebt. 6) leuel] e ü. d. z. nachgetr.
19) Freynsch] y aus n corr. 20) Inglisch], g verklext, n f. i. k.
21) Iglische ms.

Freynsche vse pis gentilman,
Ac euerich Inglische Inglische can;
25 Mani noble ich haue yseize,
þat no Freynsche coupe seye:
Biginne ichil for her loue,
Bi Iesus leue, þat sitt aboue,
On Inglische tel mi tale:
God ous sende soule hale!

f
33

Now ich zou telle pis romauce:
A king hiȝt while sir Costaunce,
þat regned in Ingland, f. 201 c.
Mani
35 H
O
H
·
·
40 A
þ
N

H
Costaunce
45 þat oper broþer name was
Sir Aurilisbrosias,
þe þridde broþer of gret renoun
Was cleped Vter Pendragoun,
Ac þe eldest sone, Costentine,
50 Was noble clerk & wise afine;
He loued god & holy chirche,
& holy werkes forto wirche,
For pi he bisouȝt his fader dere,

²⁵⁾ yseize] ei ganz verklext. ³³⁾ Ingland] ond halb verklebt. ³⁴⁻⁴¹⁾ Das fehlende stand auf der rückseite des herausgeschnittenen bildes. ⁴⁸⁾ Pendradoun ms. ⁴⁹⁾ þe] danach zwei buchst. ausradirt.

- þat him graunted his prayer,
55 þat he most monke be
At Winchester, in þat gode cite,
& maki Brosias, his broþer,
Or Pendragoun king, & no noper.
þe king was lop graunti þer tille,
60 Ac noþeles, to zain his owen wille,
At Winchester he was monke ymade,
Wip outen his fader, þe kinges, rade.

Sone after, as ich finde in boke. ||

- A gret sikenes þe king him toke,
65 þat out of þis warld he most wende;
After his barouns he gan sende,
& when þai were ycomen ichon,
þe king seyd to hem anon:
„Lordinges,“ he seyd, „lesse & mare.
70 Out of þis warld y most fare;
þer fore y pray, for loue o me,
For godes loue & for charite,
When ich am dede & rotan in clay,
Helpþ mi childer þat ze may,
75 & takeþ Costaunt, mi neldest sone,
& zif him boþe ring & crone,
& holdep him for zour lord euer mo!“ f. 201 d.
Al þay graunt, it schuld be so.

- Dan hadde þis king, as ze may here,
80 A steward, þat hiȝt Fortiger;
Strong he was & wiȝt, ywis,
Fals & ful of couaitise;
þe king he hadde yserued long,
& for he was so wiȝt & strong,
85 In him was al his trust at nede,
& zauē him boþe lond & lede,
To help his childer after his day,
& oftsiþes he gan him pray,
To goruerny hem wip al his miȝt;
90 His treupe he dede him forto plizt.
& when þe king hadde his liif forlore,

Sone þat traitour was forswore
& wiþ gret tresoun brak his treuþe
& dede hem wrong, & þat was reuþe.

95 Out of þis world þe king went
& was ybiried, verrament;
At Winchester, wiþ outen les,
þer þat king bigrauen wes.

Erls & barouns euerichon
100 Token hem to red anon
Wiþ outen ani more duelling,
& made Costaunce her king,
& for þat he was monke þore,
11 King Moyne men cleped him euer more.
105 Ac þe steward, sir Fortiger,
Was wel wrop in his maner
& wiþ al his miȝt was þer oȝain,
As fer forþ, as he durst sayn.

King Angys sone herd it telle;
110 He gadred him folk wel felle
Of Danmark & of Sessoyne,
Forte wer oȝaines Moyne;
He filled ful mani dromouns
Of kinges, erls & barouns;
115 Vp þai sett sail & mast
& in to Ingland com an hast;
Ac Ingland was yhoten bo
Michel Breteyne, wiþ outen no.
þe Bretouns, þat beþ Inglisse nov,
120 Herd telle, when he com & hou,
þat Angys bi water brouȝt.
þe king Fortiger bisouȝt,
He schuld afong his pouwer
& be steward, as he was er,

f. 202 a.

¹⁰²⁾ Cost.] danach biforþ, durohgestr. her] mit späterer hand
und dunklerer tinte ü. d. z. nachgetr. ¹²⁰⁾ &] mit dunklerer
tinte ü. d. z. nachgetr.

- 125 & help him bi day & niȝt,
Ozain his fomen forto fiȝt.
He it forsoke & seyd, he nold,
Noiper for siluer no for gold,
& feined him, þat he no miȝt
130 At batayle com, forto fiȝt,
& al he it dede for traſoun:
King to be was his achesoun.

- Angys was riued wiþ mani a man,
King Moyne went him oȝan;
135 þo he come þider, wiþ outen faile,
Sone was smiten þe batayle;
þer was broken spere & scheld
& mani a kniȝt of hors yfeld;
Ac our men & king Moyne
140 Were ouercomen, wiþ outen asoine;
To Wincherster þai flowen þo
Wiþ mani sizhing & walewo,
þat swiche a sleiȝster wiþ hond
Was fallen in to Ingland.
145 þer was mani kniȝt yslawe
& mani swain ybrouȝt of dawe;
Angis tok in a þrowe
Mani castels & tounes arowe
& put þer in his men,
150 For to stonden our oȝen,
& sent after eld & zing,
For to help in his fizting.

- þo were fel kinges in lond,
þat Costaunce wan vnder his hond;
155 Mani of hem so weren þare,
Of þat descomfite hadden care,
& oft Iesu Crist hye bisouȝt,
He schuld hem help, as he hem bouȝt,
& hem bring out of her care,
160 After þat þai worþi ware.

On a day, as y zou telle,
Our princes speken wordes felle
& seyd, þat her king
Nas bot a breþeling;

- 165 3if Fortiger her prince ware, f. 202 b.
„No hadde we nouȝt hadde so miche care!“
þai hadden leuer þan ani þing,
þat he were chosen to her king;
In her witt þai vnderstode,
170 þat it were so in his mode,
Her king to ben him selue;
To him þer fore þai sent tvelue,
Wisest þai chosen of þat lond,
þat schuld wele his hert fond,
175 Why he nold wiþ hem come,
So he tofore was ywone.

þis tvelue to him come,
So þe conseil was ynome,
Wiþ grete honour & him gret,
180 & he hem badde bi him site;
What he desired forto ben,
Bi his answere þai schuld ysen.
He asked hem, wat was her wille,
& þai him seyd tidinges ille:

- 185 Angys hem hadde ouercome
& michel of her lond binome,
& mani barouns & kniȝt yslawe,
& her kin brouȝt of dawe:
þer fore þe conseyl of þe lond
190 Bad, he schuld don to his hond,
þis ich wo amende rape,
þat þai no hadde no more scape.

þo bispak him Fortiger:
„Gode kniȝt, hardi & pautener,

161) On] n später nachgetr. 170) his] i corr. aus e.
184) þai] mit dunklerer tinte später ü. d. z. nachgetr. him] mit
dunklerer tinte aus e corr. 190) to] om. ms.

195 Y nam noiper zour douke no king:
Whi aske ze me *conseiling*?
King Costauns y was to swore,
Euer y was zou po tofore
& wered zou wiþ mi power,
200 Wide & side, fer & ner:
Wiþ me nis it nouȝt nov so,
þer fore to zour king ze go,
Biseche him, he zou socour,
& ze wil him þan honour!“

205 þan bispac to him a baroun:
„Sir, our king is bot a coujoun;
þo he seize swerdes drawe,
To fle sone he was wel fawe:
He no can *conseil* to no gode;
210 He is so adrad, he is neize wode.
Whiles þou were in our þrome,
No were we neuer ouercome;
þat we forlorn at þis asaut,
Al we wite it þi defaut:
215 So siggeþ al our pers!“
„I leue wele,“ quaf Fortigers,
„Nil ich me noping auentour,
To purchas a fole gret honour;
3if Moyne, zour king, ded ware,
220 Ich wald zou help out of care!“
„Sir,“ þai seyd to him þo,
„Wiltow, þat we Moyne slo?“

f. 202 c.

„Nay, ac gop fro me bliue!
While ich wot, he is oliue,
225 *Conseyl* worþ zou of me non!“
þe barouns pennes gan gon,
To take her king, þai wenten alle
& founden king Moyne in his halle,
þer he sat at his mete;
230 On him þai schoten wiþ gret hete

²¹³⁾ forlorn] *das zweite r ii. d. z. geschr.*

- & smiten of his heued wiþ a sword,
Er þai spoken ani word,
& who so struted ozainward,
Anon þai ȝauen hem dintes hard.
- 235 Out atte þe dore þai flowen anon
& ascaped euerichlon.
þer fore was contek & striif,
& mani it abouȝt wiþ þe liif;
Ac seþpen þe king yslawe was
- 240 & opon hem fallen swiche a cas,
A king þai mosten haue swiþe,
Al her sorwe for to lïþe,
& þat he miȝt hem were þan
Oȝain Angys, þat douhti man.
- 245 & þan Vter Pendragon
Armes miȝt bere non,
No Aurilisbrosias, is broþer,
þan þai most chese anoþer;
Where purch, þai seyd, in þat nede,
- 250 Wele no miȝt þai nouȝt spede,
Bot ȝiue þai wold Fortiger
Chese to her king þere;
Nouȝt fele nar þer oȝen,
Ac seyden, þat it most ben;
- 255 What for loue, what for ay,
Non no durst ozain say;
Ac þer þai chosen, old & ȝing,
Fortiger, to ben her king.

f. 202 d.

- Mirie time is Auerille,
260 þan scheweth michel of our wille;
In feld & mede floures springeþ,
In grene wode foules singeþ;
ȝong man wereþ jolif,
& þan proudeþ man & wiif.

²³⁴⁾ hem] him, i unterpunktet und e übergeschr.

- 265 þe barouns com to Fortiger
 & gretten him wiþ glad cher
 & seyd, þat her solas
 þurch wicked men ylorn was,
 þat was Moyne, her king;
 270 & his breþer were to zing:
 „& for we zou witeþ wiȝt & trest,
 Of al men þe mowen best
 Vs kepen oȝain our fon,
 So þe han er þis ydon;
 275 We haue zou chosen our king
 & zouen zou boþe croun & ring:
 þe heize siggeþ & þe lowe also,
 It miȝt no better ben ydo!“

- „Now gramercl!“ quap Fortiger
 280 & was made king, wiþouten daunger.
 Ac at his coronument
 To barouns þer weren gent,
 þat þis tresoun vnderstode,
 & sore hem rewe þe kinges blod,
 285 þat it schuld be spilt so,
 & tok rede bi tvixen hem to,
 þe to childer ouer þe se bring,
 & went hem forþ, wiþ outen lesing;
 Noman wist of her conseyle,
 290 Bot þai al on, wiþ outen faile.

- þe king held fest noble & gent
 & afterward his parlement,
 In wiche parlement he hete,
 Men schuld him bring þe children skete.
 295 þai were souȝt, & founde hem nouȝt;
 þo he held him iuel bicouȝt;
 þo Fortiger it vnderstode,
 For wreþe he wex neize wode;
 It was no wonder, for soþe to say,
 300 For þai dede him after gret tray.

f. 203 a.

279) Mow ms. 297) it] ü. d. z. nachgetr.

- Fortiger al þis forlete,
Princes, doukes, al so skete,
Fre & bond, swain & kniȝt,
Alle graiped hem to fȝt,
305 þat þai mizten flemen Angys
& al her dedlich enimis.
So þai deden, wiþ outen no,
& were al redi, forþ to go
Oȝaines her foman Angys,
310 Sum on gode hors of priis,
Sum on palfray & on stede
& sum on fot, ful gode at nede,
Wiþ arwe & bowe & alblast,
Her fomen forto agast.
- 315 þai wenten forþ & met Angys
Wiþ mani Sarrazin of priis.
þer was mani arwe yschote
& mani quarel þurch þe þrote,
Schaft tobroken & cleued scheld,
320 Mani a kniȝt feld in þe feld,
Helme tobroken, hauberk torrent,
Mani noble hors yschent.
Ac our men þer dede ful wel.
Wiþ broun swerd of grounden stiel:
325 Mani a riche Sarrazin
þai brouȝten in to helle pin.
- Angys seize his del þe wors
& gan to fle wel swiþe on hors
To a castel wel strong about,
330 Where was michel of his rout.
þo, þat he left bihindem him,
Hadde chaunce hard & grim;
No halp hem noiþer pes no crie,
No fȝting no criing merci.
335 Al men maden her acord
Wiþ axes, speres, kniif & sword.

³²⁹⁾ wel] w corr. aus t.

Al, þat were bihinde yfounde,
Anon þai were leyd to grounde;
No mitz þer askape neuer on,
340 þat he nas to dep ydon.
þus our folk hadden þe priis
& went þo, to bisege Angys.
þo þai hadde him long bilay,
Angys sent hem þan to say,
345 ȝif he in pays wende most,
He wold taken al his ost
& leden hem to his cuntraye
& neuer eft don hem traye.
Fortiger bi his *conseyle*
350 Lete hem wende hole & hayle;
Ac ferst þai sworen him an oþ,
þai schuld him neuer waite loþ.
þus þai wenten to þe strand
& ferden ouer to her lond.

f. 203 b.

355 Fortiger & his ost
Oȝain com wip gret bost
& held fest mani a day
Of gret delite & noble play.
When þis fest was don & held,
360 þe xii. traitours, þat y of teld,
þat hadde yslawe Moyne, þe king,
Bipouzt hem of a selcouþe þing:
þai wold go to Fortiger
& asken him her lower
365 Of þe king, þat was yslawe
Wip tresoun, oȝain þe lawe,
& seyden: „King, þou art aboue,
þenke, what we dede for þi loue:
We slouȝ our lord kende;
370 Nov be sen, ȝif þou art hende!
þurch ous þou art in þi power:
ȝif ous now our lower!“

351) anop *ms.*

353) strand] r *u. d. z. geschr.*

- Jan bispac him Fortiger
Anon to hem wiþ loureand chere:
375 „Bi þe lower, þat god made,
þe schul haue þat ze bade:
So ich euer mot ythe,
So no schul ze nouȝt serue me;
For ze han zour lord yslawe,
380 ȝe schul ben honged & todrawe!“
He dede feche hors wel sket
& teyed hem to her fet
& dede hem drawe on þe pauement
& hong hem after; verrament.
385 Mani kniȝt & baroun hende f. 203 c.
Seizen þis of her kende,
Opon þe king þai ourn anon
As his dedliche son;
Ac bitven hem stode his men
390 Stedfastliche ozaines hem.
þer was mani heued ofhitt,
þer was mani prote ykitt,
Mani hert forles his blod
& mani þe bal vp in þe hod.
395 Vnneþe þat ich day
þe king ascaped oway.

- þe barouns went þat ich niȝt
Toward her frendes ful rizt
& her gref anon hem teld,
400 Hou Fortiger her king aqueld
þurch tresoun, þat þai hadde yspeken;
Of him þai wald ben awreken;
Ich his frendes so bisouȝt,
þat opon Fortiger þai brouȝt
405 Mani erl, baroun & kniȝt,
Hardy & kene forto fizt.
þai fouȝten wiþ Fortiger
Mani moneþ & mani a zere,

³⁷⁵) þe] danach ein buchst. ausradirt. ³⁸³) on þe p.] auf rasur geschr.

Wher purch mani a leuedi fre
410 Her lord les & fair meyne.

Fortiger nam gode courē,
þat he no mīzt ozain hem dōure,
For þai wexen mo' & mo,
& his men lassed al way þo.

- 415 Letters he made to Angys, þe welp,
& bad, he schuld cum, him to help
Ozaines his men, þat wald him sle,
& he schuld haue half his fe.
Angys per of was blīpe,
420 His message he dede swīpe.
Mani þousand he tok wiþ him,
þat were boþe stout & grim,
& comen ouer to Fortiger,
& he hem welcomed wiþ glad chere;
425 Of his couenaunt he was biknawe
& made Angys half felawe,
þat he hadde or haue mīzt,
Wiþ þat he schuld him help in fizt
Ozaines his men, & help him were,
430 þat were abouten, him to dere.
Þis couenaunt was made stedfast,
& hem grayþed sone on hast,
To batayle forto wende;
For þe barouns were hende
435 Bi Salesbiri bisiðe a lite
Al redi, bataile to smite
& abiden her fomen,
þat þider comen hem ozen.
þer was sone leyd adoun
440 Mani wel brizt gonfaynoun,
þe schafteſ tobroken & cloþ torrent
& mani a gret lording yschent.
Mani knīzt oþer slouȝ,
Mani hors her guttes drouȝ.

f. 203 d.

⁴¹²⁾ dōure] d corr. aus t. ⁴¹⁸⁾ his] i mit dunklerer tinte
aufgefriſcht, s ü. d. z. geschr.

- 445 Ich zou sigge riȝt treuȝe:
Non of oper hadde reuȝe;
Swerdes on helmes gan driue,
Mani schaft per gan riuȝe,
Mani hauberk was torrent
- 450 & mani purch þe bodi schent.
þer was slawe & brouȝt to grounde
Mani man in litel stounde;
A boþe half lay mani on,
þe heued fro þe nek bon;
- 455 Wombe & side purch out dast
Wiþ launce, quarel & alblast,
þat mani leuedi & damisele
Biwepe it seppen wit teres fele.
Ac Fortiger hade euer four
- 460 Ozain on, for soþe, of our;
For whi þe barouns no miȝt
Wipstond in þat fizt,
Ac gun fle wel fast þenne,
Sum ouer se to her kenne,
- 465 Sum for gret ayȝe & dout
To oper kinges flowen about.
Al so we finden in þe bok,
Al þat Fortiger atok,
He let todrawe & anhong,
- 470 Were it wiþ riȝt oper wiþ wrong.
þe oper he devoide alle
Of lond & tour, castel & halle,
& bi conseyl of Angys
3aue it to Sarrazins of pris.
- 475 þer was loue of hert cler
Bitven Angys & Fortiger;
Angys hadde, verrament,
A douhter, boþe fair & gent,
Ac sche was hepen Sarrazin;
- 480 & Fortiger for loue fin
Hir tok to fere & to wiue
& was curssed in al his liue,
For he lete cristen wedde hapen
& meynt our blod, as flesche & matþen.

f. 204 a.

- 485 Mani pou sand was swiche in weddeloc,
As we finde writen in bok;
þer was wel neize al þis lond
To þe deuel gon an hond.
Festes he made gret & fele,
490 & hadden al warldes wele
— & held no better lawe,
þan þe hounde wip his felawe.
þis last wel fel zere.
On a day sat Fortiger
495 & bipouzt him of þe children to,
þat ouer see weren ygo,
& of mani noble he nam zome,
þat he hadde yboden flem.
— Of afterclap he hadde care,
500 þat he schuld forfare.

- He hete chese carpenters
Ouer al in his powers
& masouns, þat þai no lete,
To him þai schuld comen sket.
505 His hest was sone ydon:
þousandes þer were anon
Wip her tole swiþe prest,
For to do þe kinges hest.
þe king hem gan fair to calle,
510 & þus he seyd to hem alle:

- „Listnep now, heize & lawe,
& vnderstond to mi sawe!
In mi witt ich haue yþouzt,
Ichil a castel han ywrouzt
515 Of wode & lime, morter & ston,
þat swiche be in þis world non,
þat, zif me comeþ ani nede,
Ich may me þere were & hede
Fro min fon, þat aires hem claim;
520 At Salesbiri, opon þe plain,

f. 204 b.

þat ze schul yfond
To maken wiþ þour hond!
Loke, þat tre & ston be riche,
þe tour largge & depe þe diche!
525 Mi deuisse ich haue ysade:
Now heiȝþ þou, þat it war made,
& ze schullen haue hire,
Al þat ze wil desire!"

bis werkemen þider went þo,
530 þre þousand þer were & mo,
Hewen schides & coruen ston
& laiden foundement anon;
Sum rammed & doluen snel
& gun þat castel fair & wel.
535 þat folk was boþe swift & sleize,
þat werk was arered brest-heize
þat ich day alle aboute,
So it is writen in þe Brout,
& wenten hom, þo it was niȝt,
540 So it is werkmennes riȝt,
& comen al oȝain amorwe
& seiȝen þing of gret sorwe:

Foundement & werk þai founde
Ligge vp so & doun op þe grunde;
545 Sprad it was al abrod;
For wonder þai were neize wode,
Ac her werk þai bigonne,
So long so þai seiȝen þe sonne,
& als wele spedden, par ma fay,
550 So þai deden þat oþer day.
Ac þo þai come þider eft,
Her werk was al vp aleft
& yschatred here & þere.
þus it ferd wele half a zer:

522) maken] *danach* hi, *ausgestr.* 523) tre] *danach* drei
buchst. *ausrad.* 526) þou] *aus* zen corr. 528) snel] *auf*
rasur geschr. 548) Foundemement ms. 544) so] *ü. d. z.*
nachgetr. 546) wode] *d aus t corr.*

- 555 Al pat euer þai wrouȝt o day,
Amorwe it ouerþrowe lay.
þe king herd telle pis
& gret wonder hadde, ywis;
He dede aspie bi day & nizt,
560 What þing hem lett miȝt;
Ac wite no miȝt lewed no clerk,
What þing felled her werk.

f. 204 c.

- Fortiger sat in his halle
Among his kniztes & barouns alle;
565 He bat his fest & his elbowe
& seyd to hem wiþ michel howe,
Wretþefulliche þere he hete,
Clerkes biforn him bring skete,
þe best, þat were in pis lond.
570 Sone was don þe kinges sond;
Mani clerk was ful wide ysouȝt
& biforn him sone ybrouȝt;
Hem he aposed, on & alle,
Whi his werk was so yfalle;
575 Her non no coupe him telle.
þe king swore, he wold hem quelle,
Bot ȝif þai wold him telle an hond,
Whi þat his werk miȝt nouȝt stond.

- Ten þer were of hem ynome,
580 Wisest clerkes of þe þrome,
& in o chaumber ydo,
þat no man most hem com to
For þe hest of þe king,
Bot vnneþe her mete bring;
585 Astronomiens þese weren,
Wiser neuer non neran.
þai were .ix. days bischet,
Ac ȝete þai coupe litel þe bet;
Bot ich ȝou sigge, verrament,
590 þai seyzen in þe firmament,

562) þing] g corr. aus? 585) Astromiens ms. 589) verr.]
e ii. d. z. nachgetr.

A child in erþe bizeten wes
Wip outen ani mannes fles.

& þo þai com þe king bifore,
þai seyd, a child on erþe was bore
595 Wip outen mannes bizeteing,
þat wist wel neize al þing:
„Do him sle wel sodanliche,
þe blod to þe is tresore riche;
Were ȝour werk ysmerd per wip,
600 Euer it wold stond in griþ!“
þe king was of þis tale bliþe
& dede priueliche .xii. swiþe,
þat were departed, þre & þre,
To wende about, þat childe to sle;
605 ȝiue þai him ouwher finde miȝt,
þai no schuld lete for wrong no riȝt,
þat þai schuld sodeinliche
Smite of his heued hastiliche
& no word no speke him to:
610 þus bad him þis clerkes do,
For þai wende, it were to her lere,
ȝif þat child zeue answere.
þis men on þe kinges sond
Went a four half Ingland,
615 þre & þre bi four way,
þat child to finde, y ȝou say.
þis clerkes, of whom ich told,
Wip þe king weren atheld,
For to wite, ȝif it soþe were,
620 þat þai hadde him seyd þere:
ȝif he founde wip hem lesing,
Her liif were at þe ending.
Lete we þis clerkes bihinde;
þis .xii. went, þe child to finde;
625 & are ich teþ more ȝou
Of his romance, y wil now,

f. 204 d.

592) flesches ms.

605) ȝour ms.

622) mit verweisungs-

zeichen unten auf der seite nachgetr.

623) clerk ms.

bat ze vnderstond & wite,
Hou þis child was biȝete
On swiche maner, & what he hete;
630 Now y pray þou listen skete!

He, þat was & is & ay schal ben,
Chese him here a swete quen,
In whom he nam flesche & blod,
Wip wiche he bouȝt ous on þe rode,
635 Whare purch we ben to heuen ycorn
& þe deuel his miȝt forlorn:
Blisced be he in euerich song
& Mari, of whom he sprong!

Listnep wele to mi steuen:
640 þe deuels, þat fel out of heuen
Wip her pride Lucifer,
Sum fel to helle fer,
Sum in water, sum in lond,
Sum in þe aire gan wipstond;
645 Al fort our drizt seyd: 'ho!',
So þai bileued euer mo;
&, for soþe, þai han power,
Man to dere þere & here.
Y nil zou telle her priuete,
650 Bot þat longep now to me:
þe deuelen, þat houen abouen ous,
Euer be luxorius
& oper while makeþ hem body
Of þe aire, wel gent and rody,
655 & hauen miȝt & power,
Doun to lizt & derien her
Al þo, þat nillen wirche
Godes comandment in chirche,
Ac whilom more þan now,
660 For purch þe miȝt of swete Jesu

f. 205 a.

⁶³³⁾ blod] bld ms. ⁶⁴⁶⁾ So] *verklext und unsicher.*

Mani of hem yfelled is,
Al hou, y no may nouzt tellen, ywis,
Mi matery wer to long
& þe tale to zou wel strong.

- 665 As þe deuelen, of whom y said,
Seize, hou Jesu of a maide
þurch his milce was ybore
& bouzt al, þat was forlore,
þer to þai hadden gret ond
670 & sayd, þat þai wolden fond,
To ligge bi a maidekin
& bizeten a child her in:
Swiche schuld acomber also fele,
So þat oper had brouzt to wele.

- 675 Bi þat day was a riche man,
þat hadde to wiue a fair wiman,
Bi whom he hadde a sone fre
& wel fair douhtren þre.
A forseyd deuel liȝt adoun
680 & of þat wiif made a couioun,
To don alle his volunte,
Whar þurch in her he had entre
& brouzt her in chideing & fizt
& made her oft wrop, y plizt,
685 So þat on an euen late
> þe deuel sche tauȝt hir bizate;
þat ich niȝt þe deuel com
& strangled hir owhen grom.
þe wiif hir sone seize ded amorwe,
690 Anon sche heng hir self for sorwe.
þo þat þe bounde yseize pis,
Anon he starf for diol, ywis.
Lo, what wo & diol & dere
Dede wretþe & foule answere!
695 Al þe men, ich zou say,
þat woned in þat cuntry,

f. 205 b.

665) Ac ms. 671) maiden kin ms. 682) hem ms.
683) hem ms. 684) hem ms. 685) aneuen ms.

Here of hadden gret pite,
Boþe vp lond & in cite,
For þat man & eke his wiif
700 Were yholden of gode liif.
Biside þer woned an ermite,
þat þider com, þis to visite,
Blasy, ywis, his name was;
þo he seize þis, he seyd: 'allas!'
705 & seyd, it was, verrament,
þe deuels foule encumbrement.

þre douthern he fonde olyue,
& he hem dede ȝern schriue
Of alle, þat he couþe enserche,
710 þurch þe lore of holy chirche,
& penaunce on hem layd,
For þat þai hadde god ytrayd,
& tauȝt hem, to serue god almizt;
& þo he went hom ful rizt.
715 þis fair maidens þre
Serued god wiþ hert fre,
In grete drede & loue.
þe deuel, þat com fro aboue,
He, þat was fram heuen yfalle,
720 Of whom y spac tofor ȝou' alle,

þo he nam likenis of man
& com him to an old wiman
& bihete hir ȝiftes & grete fe,
To wende to þis sostren þre
725 & þe heldest to bichaunte,
ȝong mannes loue for to haunte.
In þis lond was þo vsage,
Who so dede wiþ man vtrage,
Bot it were in wedloc,
730 In pilke time men hem tok

⁷⁰²⁾ visite] nach s steht e, unterpunktet.

Wip iuggement, wip outen les,
& al so quic doluen hes,
Bot sche hir knewe for lizt woman
& comoun hore to alle men;
735 þan was it rizt & lawe,
þat sche no schuld ben yslawe.

þis ald wiif — þat iuel sche þe! — f. 205 c.
Com to þis sostren þre
& made wailing & michel fare
740 For þis þre maidens care;
To þe eldest soster sche seyd:
„Wolewo, mi swete maide,
þou hast fair fot & hond
& gentil viis, bi godes sond,
745 White hond & long arm:
Certes, it were michel harm,
Bot þi bodi most assay,
Wip som gentil zongman to play,
þat þe miȝt in þis cas
750 Finde ioie & solas!“
þe maiden seyd: „3iue so dede ic,
Y schuld be doluen al so quic!“

„Nay, certes,“ quaþ þat ald quen,
„þou miȝt it do wip outen den
755 ȝer & oper in þi bedde,
& þan þe wil þat zong man wedde!“
þurch þis quen, verrament,
& þe fendes enticement
þe eldest soster, y zou say,
760 A yongman lete wip hir play;
Ac po hir liked alder best,
Hir gamen com al to chest,
For sche was nome & forþ ydrawe,
& of hir dede sche was biknowe.
765 þurch juggement doluen sche was;
Mani man seyd: ‘allas! allas!’

750) Finde] *danach* þe, *unr.* 751) ic] *iche*, he *ausradirt.*

For her & for her elderlinges
Men made gret diol & wepeinges.

- 3ete wald þe deuel ful of ond
770 þe midel soster a gile fond
& brouzt hir vp a zong man,
Wiche þat wowen hir bigan;
Al his wille don him sche lete,
& it was aperceiuied skete.
775 Sche was brouzt bifor iustise.
Dep to poly in al wise;
Sche seyd, sche was a liȝt woman
& comoun hore to alle man.
Of þat chaunce mani nam kepe
780 & wiþ eizen sore wepe;
For ribaudye gret haras
Tok folwe hir bodi. Allas,
þat þe fende haþ swiche pouwer,
To deri, þat god bouzt so dere!
785 þe þridde soster was so wo,
Hir þouȝt, hir hert brast atvo:
Hir moder was ded acurssedliche,
& hir fader starf reuliche,
& hir broþer yslawe al so,
790 & hir soster quic doluen þo,
Hir oper soster hore strong,
þat al harlotes ȝede among.

f. 205 d.

- In wanhope sche fel neize,
Ac þurch godes help an heize
795 Sche hir biþouȝt of permite,
þat hem com to visite;
To him sche went þo bliae
& hir schrof of hir liue
& alle þe chaunces teld al so,
800 þat hir kin were comen to.

⁷⁸²⁾ To ms. ⁷⁸⁹⁾ broþer] mit jüngerer hand und dunklerer tinte ü. d. z. nachgetr. ⁷⁹⁰⁾ quic] ü. d. z. geschr.

- þis hermite hadde wonder gret
& hir tauȝt bope & hete:
„Hauē euer Crist in mende
& lete þe lores of þe fende!“
- 805 Pride, wratþe & glotonie,
Niþe, sleuþe & lecherie,
Couaitise & trecherie,
Bacbiteing & envie,
Swiche þinges he bad hir flen
- 810 & gode & bonair for to 'ben;
Alle þe werkes, þat gode ware,
To don, he hir tauȝt þare,
& þat sche nere so michel ape,
þat sche hir laid doun to slape,
- 815 Ar hir dore & hir fenester
Hadde yblisced, & ich ester
þus he tauȝt hir to done,
& þo sche went hir hom sone.
þe deuel here of hadde ond,
- 820 Hir to gile wold he fond
þurch hir soster, ich ȝou telle,
þat was his in flesche & felle.
þis hore com opon a day
To hir soster, par ma fay,
- 825 & to hir soster sche gan sigge,
þat sche it schuld dere abigge,
þat sche hadde hir hiritage,
& ran to hir in gret rage
Wip herlotes, þat wip hir ware,
- 830 & sore bete þat wenche þare.
In to a chaumber sche ran hir þo
& fast schett þe dore hir to.
Out sche gradde, & neizebours come
& driuen oway þis wreches sone.
- f. 206 a.
- 835 þis sely þing was alday wroþ,
Hir Owen liif was hir lop;

⁸²⁰⁾ þat he hir, þat he *durchgestr. ms.* to] *mit dunklerer*
tinte ü. d. z. nachgetr. ⁸²¹⁾ his *ms.*

- On hir bed, þo it was nizt,
Al ycloped sche fel doun rizt,
& sche forȝat hir vnblisced,
840 So þe hermite hir hadde ywissed;
For wretþe sche þouȝt of blisseing non
& fel on slepe sone anon.

- þe fende her of was ful bliþe,
To hir he com þan swiþe;
845 Ouer alle hir chaumber in he mizt,
For þer nas no merk of our drizt.
To þis maiden, sikerliche,
He com þo & lay flescheliche.
þis maiden, sone þat hye awaked,
850 Feld hir legges al naked
& feled al so bi her pi,
þat sche was yleyen bi;
Sche ros & fond hir dore loke,
& no þing no was tobroke;
855 Sche þouȝt, it was þe foule wiȝt þo,
Sche was aferd, sche nist, wat to do,
Hir selue sche bete & gan to tere
Wiþ boþe honden hir ȝalu here
& wepe al nizt wiþ gret sorwe.
860 To permite sche went a morwe
& told him al þe cas;
He was sori & seyd: ‘allas’:
For sche no held nouȝt hir penance,
Sche was fallen in encombraunce.
865 „Allas, sir,“ sche seyd þo,
„Certes, sir, men wil me slo,
Sone so þai it may wite,
þat on me is a child bizete!“
„Ich leue wele,“ quap he, „saunfaile,
870 Ich haue of pi tale gret meruaile;
Siker, douhter, & y finde & se,
þat þou so wiþ child be,
I schal þe help wiþ al mi mizt!
Til ich haue per of a siȝt,

f. 206 b.

- 875 Go now hom, doucher min,
& haue Crist in hert þin,
Do penaunce day & niȝt,
Serue Jesu wiþ al þi mȝzt:
He may, zif his wille be,
880 Out of anoye bring þe!“
Hom sche went wiþ dreri mod
& serued god wiþ hert gode;
& euerich day pat bizete
In hir wombe bigan to grete.
885 Hir no gett it nouȝt to hide,
For hir wombe wex vnride;
þer sone after sche was ynome
& yladde to hir dome;
Sore mȝzt hir agrise,
890 þo sche stode bifor þe iustise.

- þermite herd tellen þis,
& þider he com anon, ywis;
þe iustise him gan bipenche
& þus aposed pat wenche:
895 „O maiden, bi mi treuþe,
Of þe ich haue gret reuþe;
• Whi noldestow vnderstonde,
Hou þi kin is brouȝt to schond
& ben out of þis world ywent?
900 & now þou hast þi seluen yschenȝt,
þat hast mannes flesche yknawȝt
& vnderfong ozaines þe lawe:
þis ich day þou schalt be slawe,
For pat wil now þe lawe!“

- 905 „Certes, sir,“ sche seyd, „nay,
No dede ich neuer ozain þe lay:
Bi him, þat poled ded on tre,
Man no lay neuer bi me,
No, bi his moder, seynt Marie,
910 Mannes mouþe kist in vilanie!“

⁸⁹¹⁾ þermite] mite *auf rasur geschr.*

„Ey,“ quap þe iustise, „swiche meruaile!
þou lext, damisel, saun faile;
þi tale soþe no miȝt be,
Seþpen wiþ child y þe se!“
f. 206c.
915 „Certes,“ sche sayd, „wiþ child icham
Wiþ outen companie of man:
So y slepe þis ender niȝt,
Bi me lay a selcouþe wiȝt;
Y nist neuer, wat is was,
920 Ac now ich hold to godes gras;
Ac wele ich wot, bi þis day,
þat noman neuer bi me lay!“

þe iustise swore bi seynt Albon,
Swiche meruail herd he neuer non:
925 „þine tale ich no leue,
For, seþpen þat Adam was & Eue,
Child bizeten wiþ outen man
Herd y neuer bot of an,
þat was Jesu, our drizt,
930 þurch god þe fadres miȝt;
&, for þou seyst, wiþ child þou art
& haddest neuer of man part,
Ar ani man þe quic delue,
Telle schul wiues tuelve,
935 3if ani child may be made
Wiþ outen knoweing of mannes sade!“
Opon tuelve wiues it was ydo,
& þai com & seyden þo,
þat neuer child bizeten was,
940 Bot Iesu þurch godes gras,
Wiþ outen mannes flesche, for soþ,
& þer to þai sworen her op.
þo spac Blasy, permite:
„Iustise, listen me a lite:
945 Hir tale no may sche avowe,
Vnder ous alle se we mowe;

⁹³³⁾ delue] e corr. aus?

Ich haue hir schriuen & tauzt þe lawe:
To me no was sche neuer biknawe,
þat ani man to hir cam,
950 þat euer knewe hir licham;
þei sche haue serued, to be spilt,
þe child þer of haþ no gilt;
It were gret vnriȝt, to to slon,
& reupe, for þe gilt of on.
955 Ac lete hir in ward don,
Sche schal her after child son;
Tvo zer & an half þan sche mot
þe child loke, god it wot;
When þe child can go & speke,
960 þan ze may ben of hir awreke!“
„A, min dieu,“ seyd the justise,
„þine tales ben gode & wise;
þer after now wirche ichille:
To day no schal hir noman spille!“
965 In a tour þai han hir do,
þat noman miȝt hir com to,
Bot an eld midwiif,
þat schuld zemen hir liif.
þer in sche was don on hast
970 & þer in bischet ful. fast;
þilke tour was swiþe heize,
Noman miȝt comen hem neize;
A windowe was þer in
& a cabel made bi gin,
975 Forto drawen vp al þing,
þat nede was to her libbeing.
Sone to hir time come,
Sche childed a selcouþe grome:
So ich bi bok telle can,
980 It hadde fourm after a man,
Bot it was blacker,
þan anoþer, & wel rower.

f. 206 d.

⁹⁵¹⁾ spilt] i ü. d. z. nachgetr. ⁹⁵³⁾ gret] danach re, unter-
punktet. ⁹⁶²⁾ tales] s ü. d. z. geschr. ⁹⁶⁷⁾ aneld ms.
⁹⁸¹⁾ it] danach it, ausgestr.

- þo þat child was ybore,
Blasi stode þe hole bifore;
985 Bi þe rope þai it adoun let,
& he it cristned al so sket;
He clept it Merlin a godes name;
þe fende per of hadde grame,
For þai lese per þe miȝt,
990 þat þai wende to haue bi riȝt.
þo þat child ychristned was,
Blasi turned oȝain his pas
& in þe rope anon it knitt,
þe howe wiif anon it fett
995 & ȝede & held it bi þe fer,
Biheld his face & eke his cher:
„Away, þou foule þing,
þat þi moder swiche ending
For þi sake haue schal,
1000 For þou art loþlich ouer al!“
þat child spac wiþ gret den: t. 207 a.
„þou lext,“ he seyd, „þou eld quen :
Mi moder quelle no may noman,
While þat ich oliues am!“
1005 Þe wif agros of þis answe
& seyd: „Hauð þou no power, me to dere:
Ich þe hals a godes name!“
On þat maner seyd his dame
& halsed him also þare,
1010 He schuld telle, wat he ware;
Ac þei þai it hadde al yswore,
þai no miȝt do him speke nomore;
& y ȝou telle anon, saunfayl,
þai hadden per of gret meruail,
1015 & alle men, þat herden it,
Wonder hadde in her wit.

þer afterward ȝete half a ȝer
His moder held him bi þe fer
& swiþe bitter ters lete
1020 & seyd: „Allas, mi sone swete,

For þe misbieten stren
Quic y schal now doluen ben!“
þe child seyd: „Dame, nay,
Ich þe swere, par ma fay,
1025 No schal þer neuer no iustise
þe bidelue o non wise
No in erþe þi bodi reke,
þer whiles y may gon & speke!“

His moder wex a blipe wiman;
1030 Fram þat ich day after þan
He teld hir, vnder sonne
Al þat sche wald conne.

þo þat child coupe go,
þe iustise com pider þo
1035 & dede feche þat wiman
Bifor þe pople rizt onan
& swore, ded sche schuld ben
Rizt anon, bi heuen quen.

þo bispac Merlin childe
1040 To þe iustise wordes milde:
„Man, wele wot, þat ani gode kan,
Ozain chaunce no may no man;
purch chaunce & eke purch gras
In hir, for soþe, pelt y was!“
1045 þe iustise biheld þat childe;
For Merlin he was neize wilde
& seyd, ydoluen most sche ben.
þo quap Merlin: „So mot y þen,
For al þat euer kanestow do,
1050 Schaltow it neuer bring þer to,
þat þou mi moder delue mow;
Bi resoun ichil wele avowe:

f. 207 b.

1030) þat] danach ein buchst. ausradirt.

A fende it was, þat me bizat
 & pelt me in an holy fat;
 1055 He wende haue hadde an iuel fode,
 Ac al icham turned to gode;
 ? Ac þurch kende of hem y can bo,
 Telle of þing, þat is ago,
 & al þing, þat is now,
 1060 Whi it is & what & how;
 Of oper þing, þat is to come,
 Telle y can nouȝt al, ac some;
 Ich wot wele, who mi fader is,
 Ac þou no knowest nouȝt þine, ywis,
 1065 Whar þurch y tel moder þine
 Digner, to be ded, þan moder mine!“

Hou noblelich þat child answerd.
 Wonder hadde, þat it herd,
 þat so coupe speke & go
 1070 & was bot of ȝeres two.
 þe iustise seyd: „þou gabbest, couioun :
 Mi fader was an heize baroun,
 Mi moder is a leuedi fre,
 Oliue ȝete þou miȝt hir se;
 1075 Ich wene, bi þe quen Marie,
 Men dede neuer bi hir folie!“

þe child seyd: „Justise, held pi mouȝe,
 Oper y schal make it wide coupe,
 Of hir folis mani on;
 1080 Do hir after som man gon:
 Bot ȝif y do hir it ben aknawe,
 Wip wild hors do me todrawe!“
 þe justise, anon rafe & skete
 His moder þider feche he hete;
 1085 Bifor him sche com wel sone;
 þe justise seyd mid ydone:
 „Say, Merlin, þat þou seydest arst.
 Bifor mi moder, ȝif þou darst!“

1055) aniel ms.

1066) Dingner, u unterpunktet.

f. 207 c.

- „Now ich ise, sir iustise,
1090 þine ordinaunce no be nouȝt wise:
3if ich telt þis men bifore,
Hou þou were bizeten & bore,
þi moder most ydoluen be,
& þat were alle purch þe!“
1095 þo þe iustise þis vnderstode,
He þouȝt, þat child coupe gode;
In to a chaumber sone anon
Al þre þai gun to gon,
& þe iustise seyd þo:
1100 „Child Merlin, forþ þou go:
Telle now bitven ous þre,
What man it was, þat bizat me!“
þe child swore: „Bi seyn Symoun,
It was þe personе of her toun,
1105 Haþ ypleyd wiþ þi dame
& bizat þe al a game!“
þat leuedy seyd: „þou misbizeten þing,
þou hast ylowe a gret lesing:
His fader was a fair baroun;
1110 Y telle þat man a couioun,
þat to þe ȝiueþ ani listening,
For þou art a cursed þing,
Misbizeten ozaines þe lawe:
þou schust wiþ riȝt ben yslawe,
1115 þat þou no leize no lesinges mo,
Men forto wirchen wo!“
þe child seyd: „Dame, be stille!
Wiþ riȝt may me no man spille,
For icham a ferly sond,
1120 Born to gode to al þis lond,
Ac þou art digne, doluen to ben:
þi sone schal þe soþe ysen!

þo þi lord com fro Cardoil,
In hert þou haddest gret diol;

1117) be] vor und hinter diesem worte ist ein buchst. ausdrückt.

- 1125 Bi niȝt it was, ar þe day,
þe persone in þine armes lay;
On þi dore þi lord gan knoke,
& þou stirtest vp in þi smoke,
Wel neize wode for dred & howe;
- 1130 Vp þou schotest a windowe,
& þe persone þou out lete,
& afterward þou schet it sket;
&, for soþe, þat ich niȝt
He biȝat þis ich kniȝt.
- 1135 Hou seistow, dame, seystow auȝt?“
& sche no spac oȝain riȝt nauȝt,
Ac so gretliche sche awondred was,
þat hir chaunged blod & fas.
þe justise seyd: „Dame, what seystow?“
- 1140 „Sir,“ he seyt, „soþe bi Crist Iesu,
þei ȝe me hong bi a cord,
He no leiȝep neuer a word!“
þe justise þo hadde no game,
Ac neize wode he was for shame.
- 1145 Merlin him cleped to an herne
& to him told tales derne:
„Sir,“ he seyd, „listen to me:
For soþe, ichil now tellen þe:
Lete þi moder wende hom
- 1150 & sende þou after a litel grom,
þat hir cun wele aspie,
For homward sche wil an heiȝe
& to þe persone sone say,
Hou ichaue hem boþe biwray!
- 1155 When þe persone hab herd þis,
Sore he worþ adrad, ywis,
Of shameful deþ to haue of þe;
To a brigge he wil flee,
In to þe water scippe he wille,
- 1160 & so he schal him seluen spille.
Bot it be soþ, þat y þe telle,
Wip þine honden þou me aquelle!“

f. 207 d.

¹¹⁸⁸⁾ þat] danach zwei buchst. ausradirt.

þe iustise dede, saunfail,
Al bi þat childeſ conseyl;
1165 He it aspide bi on hewe,
þe childeſ tale he fond al trewe;
& seþpen he legged hir fore,
þe childeſ moder nas nouȝt forlore;
& al quite he lete hir go,
1170 Wiþ outen pain, wiþ outen wo.

Seþpen Blasy, permite,
Merlin com to visite
& halsed him a godes name,
þat wiþ outen harm & schaime
1175 He schuld him telle al þe cas,
Hou he euer bizeten was.
Merlin him told ende & ord
Of his bizeteing, euery word,
& seþpen seyd to Blasy after:
1180 „To kinges foure y worþ maister;
Hem y mot zete alle rade,
& pou schalt write her dade;
þou schalt write, þat y say,
Mani man for to averray!“
1185 þere he told of mani a þing,
þat Blasi made of writeing,
Bi was bok we vnderstond
Al, þat Merlin wrouȝt in lond.

f. 208 a.

þo Merlin was fif winter eld,
1190 He was michel, broun & beld;
So we in boke finde conne,
His moder he dede make a nonne,
þat Iesu Crist wiþ hert gent
Serued ay wiþ gode entent.

1195 On a day, as ich zou telle,
þo ich pre sechers snelle,
þat were ysent fram þe king,
To hauen of pis child findeing,

Comen al þre bi cas

- 1200 In to þe toun, þer Merlin was.
Merlin in þe strete þo pleyd,
& on of his felawes him trayd,
þat him seyd loude to :
„Foule schrewe, fram ous go :
1205 þou art al bizeten amis,
þou nost, who þi fader is,
Ac some deuel, as ich wene,
þe bizat, ous euer to tene !“

Merlin seize þis, & vnderstode,

- 1210 þo þre it were, þat souȝt his blod,
þat þo ride[n] þer forbi,
þat of þis child herden cri ;
He seize, þat ich his hors wiþdrouȝ ;
Merlin schoke his heued & louȝ,
1215 He was of fwe winter eld,
& he spac wordes swiþe beld :
„Yuel þe bifalle, þou couiou[n],
þou hast yseyd to loude þi roun !
Her comeþ þe kinges messanger,
1220 þat hap me souȝt al þis zer,
For to han min hert blod,
& it no may don hem no gode ;
Hast þai haue, me to slen,
Ac bi þat þai me wiþ eizen sen,
1225 þer to worþ hem no talent,
& ȝif þai deden, þai weren schent !“
Messangers to him gan terne,
& he ozaines hem fast gan erne,
& on hem Merlin louȝ, for soþe,
1230 & seyd to hem : „Wel comeþ boþe !
Now ȝe haue yfounden me,
þat ȝou was hoten forto sle,
Ar ȝe wiþ me spak auȝt,
þus ȝo was bihoten & tauȝt,

f. 208 b.

¹²⁰²⁾ him | hit ms.?

1235 Mi blod to haue to þat werk,
þat schuld be so strong & sterke:
For mi blod no worþ it þe bet,
Neuer more þe bet yset;
Ichil proue, leizers þai beþ,
1240 þat so bispoken mi deþ;
Ac, certes; ȝiue ich were ded,
þe king no worþ þer of no red!“

„Seynt Marie,“ quap her on,
„Swiche wonder haue we herd of non!
1245 Hou wostow, þat we it ben,
þat þe seche forto slen,
& þe kinges priuete,
So ȝong þou art? Telle it me!“
Merlin seyd: „Wele y wot
1250 þe kinges conseyl eueri grot,
& al þat on erþe worþ ydo,
& al þat schal be don per to!“
þis men hadde wonder gret,
Him to sle, it were vnnet.
1255 þe child seyd: „Nouȝt me no slep,
For y schal scheld ȝou fram þe deþ
Bifor þe king, ich ȝou plizt,
& telle & schewe þe soþe rizt,
Why his werk mai nouȝt stond,
1260 & of þe clerkes, þat ben in bond,
Hou þai han ylowen on me,
þe king þat soþe schal yse!
ȝif it ȝour willes is,
Wip ȝou ichil wende ywis!“
1265 Al þre þai spoken þo:

f. 208 c.

„Certes, child, we wil, it be so!
Telle ous now, what is þi name,
Oper what wiman was þi dame,
þat we se sum witnesseing
1270 Of þi dede: þou art so ȝing!“

1286) &] om. ms.

1289) mai] mani ms.

Merlin, anon he hem sede:
„Comeþ pider, þer ich ȝou lede:
Mi moder ȝe schullen se
& wiþ þe soþe finde me!“
1275 þer he ledde hem bi heize sonne
To his moder, þer sche was nonne,
þat al þat soþe was biknawe,
& euerich word hem told a rawe,
Hou þat child *before* þe justise
1280 Fram dep hir saued wiþ wordes wise;
Of þis sche told hem pus, saunfayl;
þe kniztes hadden gret meruail,
& seþpen in gret quiet & pays
He ledde hem to his maister Blays,
1285 þat hem told & wittnes bar
Of al þing, þat he seyd par.
Merlin to Blasi þer meche seyd,
þat Blasi al in writh leyd.
þat nizt al þe messangers,
1290 þai bileften to þe sopers;
Amorwe, so we seþ in boke,
Al fwe þer her leue toke
At þe nonne & at Blays
& went hem forþ, wele at aise,
1295 Toward þe king, þer he lay,
So þat þai comen on a day
þurch a toun, was chepeing,
& to selle mani a þing;
þer Merlin houed & louȝ stille
1300 & seize, hou men loued schon to selle.
þe messenger made anon asking,
Whi he made swiche leizeing;
Merlin seyd: „No se ȝe nouȝt:
Newe schon þat man hap bouȝt
1305 & strong clout leþer, hem to clout,
& smere, to smere hem al about;
He wenes, to liue & hem tere,
Ac, bi mi soule y ȝou swere,

¹²⁷⁹⁾ *bef.*] fram ms.

¹²⁸⁷⁾ Blasi] si sehr verkratzt.

f. 208 d.

- His wreche liif he schal forlate,
1310 Her he com to his owhen gate!“
þe messangers herden þis
& wonder hadde þer of, ywis,
For sone þer afterward þai founde
þat man ded opon a stounde.
1315 Rest þai token þat ich nizt,
Amorwe her way þai went forþ riȝt
& comen bi a chirche ȝerd
& metten a bere to chirche werd;
His bridel þer Merlin wiðdrouȝ,
1320 & swiþe schille & loude he louȝ;
þe messangers bad him þo telle,
Whi it was, he louȝ so snelle.
He seyd, he seize wepe, þat schuld sing,
& sing, þat schuld make wepeing:
1325 „For þe prest, þat singeþ pare,
Bizat þat child, þat lip on bare,
He ouȝt for his sinne sori ben;
& þe bond, þat ȝe ȝond sen,
þat so loude & sore ginneþ wepe,
1330 For blis he ouȝt to sing & lepe,
For þe prestes sone is ded,
þat euer schuld haue don him qued!“
To þe moder þai gun gon
& þat soþe atoken anon;
1335 Alle þe soþe sche gan hem say
& bad hem nouȝt hir biwray,
For sche were þan schent ay;
„Verrament,“ þai seyd, „nay!“
Forþ þai went in her way
1340 ȝiderward, þe king him lay;
So ich ȝou segge in mi rime,
þo louȝ Merlin þe ȝridde time;
Eft him asked al his fere,
Whi he maked swiche chere;
1345 „ȝis,“ he sayd, „listen now,
þe soþe ichil tel you:
þe quen, mi lordes wiif at hom,

¹³⁴⁷⁾ wiif] ii corr. aus?

Hap puruayd a wrongful dom:
Hir chaumberlain is a wiman,
1350 þat goþ in gise of a man;
For he is louely & of fair hewe,
Our quen, þat is vntrewe,
Bad hir be hir leman,
For sche wend, sche were a man.
1355 þis chaumberlain seyd, þat he nold
Tresou_{ndo} for no gold,
Whar þurch þe quen pleint made
To mi lord, þe king, & sade,
þat purch fors hir chaumberlain
1360 Wald haue hir forlain.

f. 209a.

þe king for þis was swiþe wroþ
wraþfulliche swore his oþ:
&3if y may atake þis wrong,
'He worþ to drawe & to hong!'
1365 Now wendep to forn, on of þou,
& tel anon þe king, hou
Y haue þou teld of þe fals loue;
Bid him, þat he þe sope proue!"
Forþ him went a messenger
1370 Swiftlich on a gode destrer;
Til þan he com to þe king,
Made he no whar no targeing.
þe king he fond in his halle;
On þis maner he gan him calle:

1375 , Hail þou be, king Fortiger,
& god þe loke in þi power,
Sause & kepe þi mizti hond!
Whe han went in to al þis lond,
To seche a child, bi hest þine,
1380 Wiche men clepeþ Merlin;
Y wot, he is now fine zer eld,
Wise of speche, of dede beld;
He can telle al þing

1353) & bad ms.

1359) fors] s corr. aus p.

- On erþe vnder heuen king,
1885 þat is go, & now is,
& michel, þat to comen is.
þe ten clerkes on him lowe,
Aforн zou he wil avowe;
He wil zou teche swipe wel,
1890 What destourbes zour castel,
þat it may stand on þe pleyn,
& al so of zour chaumberlain,
þat ze no schul sle no hong,
For it were al wiþ wrong,
1895 To sle a woman for a man,
þat mannes cloþes haþ opan;
Bot ze him wiman finde, f. 209 b.
Ze schuld him hong bi þe windē!“
Fortiger awondred was
1400 & al þo, þat herd þis cas;
þe chaumberleyn he ofsent anon,
þat in strong prisoun was ydon;
He was despuled fram heued to grōunde,
Marked woman & maiden founde.
1405 þe king was wondred out of witt
& toke þe messanger bi þe slit
& seyd: „Telle me, zif þou can,
Who þe teld, sche was wiman!“
Child Merlin it gan ous say,
1410 As we went hideward in our way,
For he can telle & gabbe nouȝt,
Of al þing, þat haþ ben wrouȝt.“
& al he teld þer þe king
Of his bizete, of his bereing,
1415 & whiche þinges he gan say,
As he com bi þe way.
þan seyd Fortiger þe bold:
„& it be soþe, þat þou me told,
Ichil þe ziuē lond & plouȝ
1420 & make þi felawes riche ynouȝt!“

1891) pleyn] p corr. aus?
verweisungszeichen nachgetragen.

1418—16) am fuss der seite mit

- He dede comand anon rizt
Douke, erl, baroun & knizt,
To dizt her hors & make hem zare,
Wip him ozain Merlin to fare.
1485 & when it was wele wip in nizt,
Wip Merlin he mett, aplizt;
& when þe king wip Merlin mett,
Wel hendelich he him gret;
& þe king welcomed þat child
1480 Wip fair wordes & wip mild.
Mani worde þai spoken sone,
þat y no haue nouzt of to done,
No al siggen y no may,
þei y sete al þis day,
1485 Bot þat longeþ to þis nede:
Wel schortliche ich wil me spede.
þai were at ese þat ich nizt,
Amorwe þai went forþ ful rizt
& to þe stede gun ten,
1490 þer þe castel schuld ben.
Fortiger spac to Merlin :
Tel me now, sone mine,
Whi noman no may founde
Castel here opon þis grounde,
1495 & whi it is ybrouȝt to nouȝt,
þat is here o day ywrouȝt?“
Merlin seyd: „Certes, sir king,
þer of nis no selcouȝe þing :
Her vnder is a ȝerde depe
1500 A water, boȝe swift & stepe:
Vnder þat water ligge stones to,
Brod & long þai ben bo ;
Vnder þo stones beþ depe in mold
To dragouns fast yfold ;
1505 þat on is white so milkes rem,
þat oþer is red, so fer is lem ;
Wip in þai brinneþ boȝe
& beþ to gider swiȝe wroȝe.

f. 209 c.

1448) may] her add. ms. unr.

- When þe sonne is doun euery niȝt,
1460 To gider þai fond forto fizt,
& purch þe strengþe of her blast
Al þi werk is doun ycast.
þat iche þe say, now it serche,
& þan mow þi werkmen werche
1465 Castel & tour after þi wille:
þai mow stond long stille!“
þe king was wondred of þis cas
& al, þat euer mid him was.
Werkmen he dede anon
1470 Þider feche, mani on,
þat þer doluen in þe grounde
& sone þer after a water founde,
In whiche sone, vnder hem alle,
þai maden to picke walles,
1475 þe water vp loden þo,
Al way bi to & to;
þo þai comen to þe grounde,
To stones picke þai founde
Vnder þat water, boþe long & brode,
1480 Hem bitven a gret schode
Of grauel & erþe al so,
þat hem hadde schifted ato.
Mani on, for soþe, þer were,
þo to stonnes for to arere.
1485 þo þe stones weren ywent, f. 209d.
To dragouns þer layen ybent;
þe tail vnder hem fel feld,
As so Merlin hadde yteld;
- þat on was rede so þe fer,
1490 þe eizen so a bacine cler,
Euerich powe a span long,
þe fer out of his mouþe sprong,
His tail was boþe long & gret;
A gastlich best he was to mete;
1495 He hadde a bodi as a whal.
þat oper dragoun was al

1479) *Vnder*] om. ms.

1492) moþe ms.

1495) as] *danach*

ausradirt.

- Nouzt so michel, so þe rede,
& clowes he hadde qued,
Hoked tail & mouþe wide,
- 1500 Tong so a brenand glede,
A rugged taile so a fende,
& an heued at þe nende.
Boþe þai gun arise;
Al þat hem seiȝe, gun agrise;
1505 þer nas noiþer king no erl,
Baroun, kniȝt, fre no cherl,
þat þer durst abide leng,
Alle þai flowen on o reng;
No man nome ȝeme, who þer was he,
1510 Ac ich tofore oper gan fle;
þe dragouns arisen of her den
& no folwed neuer on þe men,
Ac to gider smiten anon:
Swiche batayl nas neuer non.
1515 þai kest fer on swiche maner,
As al þe cuntry were a fer;
Wip mouþe, wip clowes & wip tayl
þer þai maden a gret batail;
þe erþe quaked vnder hem þo,
1520 þe weder chaunged abouen al so;
þai biten & smiten & fer cast,
þai fallen & risen & fouȝten fast;
Al mest a day þis fizting
Last, wip outen ani resting;
1525 & þo þis more rede dragoun
Drof þis white fer adoun,
Til þai com in to a valaye,
& þer þai gun to rest baye,
Ich vnderstond, so long a while,
1530 While men miȝt gon a mile.
þe white þere arered him wip miȝt
& gan eft wip þe rede fizt,
& þe rede he drof ozain,
Til þai com to þe playn;

f. 210 a.

¹⁵⁰²⁾ nede ms.

¹⁵³¹⁾ him wip] om. ms.

- 1535 þe white dragoun wip gret main
þe rede drof, þat men it sayn,
& þe rede adoun cast,
þat wip strengþe of his blast
þe white brent þan rede,
1540 þat of him nas founden a schrede,
Bot dust, for soþe ich saye,
& þe white fleiȝe oway;
Nist neuer seþpen man,
Whiderwardes he bicam.
1545 Alle, þat euer seize þis,
Wonder hadde gret, ywis,
Of þe dragouns, þat fouȝten þo,
& of child Merlin al so,
þat he coupe so priue þing
1550 Soþe schewen to þe king.

þo spac Merlin to Fortiger:
„Sir, þou sest, þis þing is cler,
þat ich haue yschewed þe;
þe clerkes do bring bifor me,
1555 þat to þe, mi lord, þe king,
On me lowe swiche lesing,
& y schal asken hem, whare fore
Mi blod þai wold haue forlore!“
„Certes,“ quap king Fortiger,
1560 „It schal be don wiþ outen danger;
Y schal þe don after mi mizt
Al þi wille, & þat is rizt!“
þe king anon, wiþ his men
Sent after þis clerkes ten;
1565 þo þai com bifor Merlin,
He asked hem al on Latyn,
þurch wiche þing þai vnderstode,
þat þurch þe vertu of his blode
þe kinges castel schuld on hast
1570 Haue ben gode & stedefast.

1563) wiþ] auf rasur geschr.

þe clerkes spoken to þe child
Dradefullich, wip wordes milde:
„We seizen,“ he seyd, „her aboue
Ouer ous a sky houe,

f. 210b.

- 1575 þat ous schewed þe biȝate
Of swiche a þing on erþe late,
þurch was blod þe castel
Schuld stond fair & wel;
þis we wenden, verrament:
1580 Do wip ous al þi talent!“
„Ow,“ quap Merlin, „sikerlike,
Now ȝe sen, ȝe ben biswike:
þe sky, þat ȝou schewed þat,
It was þe fader, þat me biȝat;
1585 For he me hadde nouzt to his wille,
þurch ȝou he wald do me spille;
Ac for he haþ biswike ȝou,
Y pray mi lord, þe king, nov,
þat he graunt ȝou to liue,
1590 For al þis gilt y ȝou forȝiue!“
þe king it al hem graunted rape,
& hye him al merci quape.

- þo þe king & child Merlin
& euerich went vnto his in.
1595 Merlin bileft wip Fortiger,
Ich vnderstond, al þat ȝere,
Bi whos conseyl & rede & witt
þe castel was maked in a fit,
Heize & strong, of trewe & ston;
1600 Swiche nas in þis lond non.
þo þe castel was ymade,
Men ȝeue þe king sone rade,
þat he schuld at Merlin wite,
Whi þe dragouns batail smite:
1605 „It bitoknep,“ þai seyden alle,
„Sum tokening, þer after schuld falle.“

¹⁵⁷⁶⁾ swiche] iche verkratzt und unlesbar.
¹⁵⁹²⁾ hye] auf
rasur geschr.

Merlin com tofor þe king,
& al þai asked him of þat þing,
Whi þe dragouns to gider fouȝt:
1610 It bitokned sumwhat, hem þouȝt.
Merlin made sumdel danger
& þo bispac him Fortiger:
„Merlin, bot þou it me telle,
Ichil þe do anon quelle!“
1615 Quaþ Merlin: „Y sigge, aplizt,
ȝif þou me slouȝ, it were vnriȝt;
Ac þer þou haddest nome an hond, f. 210 c.
Me to sle or don in bond,
— þou miztest fayle, verrament,
1620 So dop mani of his talent;
For, certes, sir Fortiger,
Y no ȝiue nouȝt of þi power;
Ac ȝif þou wilt finde me borwes,
þat þou no schalt me waite sorwes,
1625 Y wil þe telle, & no þing lyȝe,
What þe dragouns signifie!“
þat gentil folk & eke þe king
Awondred of his answering.

þe king swore opon a boke,
1630 þat he nold him neuer harm loke,
& seþpen he fond him sikerliche
To borwe two doukes riche.
þo him spac an heye Merlin:
„Now herken, king, to tale min:
1635 þe red dragoun, so strong in fizt,
Bitokneþ þe & al þi miȝt,
Bi whiche þou hast procourd fro fer
þe ded of Moyne, þe rizt air.
þat þe rede þe white drof
1640 To a valay bi side a grof,

¹⁶²⁶⁾ þe dragouns] þe dr *auf rasur geschr.* ¹⁶³²⁾ two]
danach bor, *unterpunktet.* ¹⁶³⁵⁾ [þe] e *auf rasur geschr.*
¹⁶³⁷⁾ Bi] om. ms.

Tokēn, pou hast made flem
þe riȝt aires out of þe rem,
In cite, toun & in feld,
& al þe men, þat wiþ hem held.

- 1645 þe white dragoun *dop* signifie
þe riȝt air, þat haþ envie
To þe, þat heldep al his lond
Wiþ gret wrong vnder þine hond;
þat he fleize in to þe valaye
- 1650 & recouerd, miȝt y say,
Bitokneþ þe air, þe se bizounde,
þat haþ gret socour yfounde
& is hideward wiþ mani kniȝt,
Dizt, ozaines þe to fizt.
- 1655 þat þe white drof ozain
þe rede riȝt to þe plain
& him þere adoun cast
& al tofrust him wiþ his blast,
Bitokneþ þe air of þis lond,
- 1660 þat schal þe keuer in to his hond
& in to þi castel driue
Wiþ þine children and þi wiue;
& mani noble of þine mene
He schal wiþ þe per in brenne.
- 1665 þe tayle of þe dragoun rede,
þat is so long & so vnrede,
Signifieþ þe wicke stren,
þat schal com out of þi kin
& of þi wiues fader, Angys,
- 1670 þat schal be ded & lesen his pris;
His kin & eke þin
Schal don wo to Bretouns kin.
þe heued of þe white *dragouns* tayle
- 1675 Signifieþ gret conseyle,
þat schul held be wiþ þe kinges blod
Of þe gentil men & gode.

f. 210 d.

1645) *dop*] om. ms. 1656) *rede*] white ms. 1673) *drag.*]
- om. ms. 1675) *be*] om. ms.

- Sir, for soþe, þis is þe tokening
Of þe dragouns fizting.
Puruay þe now, ich þe rede:
1680 „þer is comen gret ferrede!“
þo agros sir Fortiger,
Bot his lippe & hong his cher
& to Merlin seyd anon:
„þou most ous teche, hou to don,
1685 Ozaines our fomen for to ware,
Oper of þi liif þou art al bare!“
Anon þai wold him han ynome,
Ac þai nist, where he was biconie.
þe king & his folk al so
1690 þer fore made michel wo;
þai him souȝt & nouȝt him founde,
He was oway in a stounde
Vnto his maister Blasy,
& þer he told him, sikerly,
1695 Of þe dragouns rede & white,
& Blasy dede it al in write;
He told him of þe rede dragoun
Swipe michel *confusyoun*,
Of him & of his fals stren,
1700 In Ingland þat schuld ben,
Mani sori chaunce & hard,
þat sone fel þer afterward;
Sum fel now late al so,
& sum beþ nouȝt zete ago.
1705 For it is alle þester þing,
Nil ich make þer of no telling,
Ac forþ ichil wiþ mi tale:
Listneþ now, gret & smale!

f. 211a.

Miri time it is in May,
1710 þan wexþ along þe day,

1698) *confusyoun*] u *auf rasur geschr.* 1702) *sone*] *danach*
þter, er *unterpunktet.* 1706) *alle*] *danach ein buchst. ausradirt.*

Floures schewen her borioun,
Miri it is in feld & toun,
Foules miri in wode gredeb,
Damisels carols ledreb.

- 1715 A baroun com to Fortiger,
þer he sat at his diner,
& seyd: „Allas, mi lord, þe king,
Y sigge þe an hard tiding:
Orpedlich pou þe bistere
1720 & þi lond þou fond to were!
Vterpendragoun & mani anoþer,
& Aurilisbrosias, his broþer,
Pople boþe gret & smale
Wip hem is comen, wip outen tale;
1725 At Winchester þai ben al mast.
Sir, þine help now on hast:
Socour -about now after sende,
þai ben here neize at þine hende,
þat þou miztest ozain hem fizt
1730 & hem to sle anon doun rizt!“

- Vp him stirt sir Fortiger
& ofcleped his chaunceler,
þat letters fele him made, ywis,
Vnto his eldfader, sir Angys,
1735 To erls, doukes & to kniztes,
þat were of swiþe gret miztes;
þe buriays of Winchester he gret
& bad, þai schuld þe gates schet
& helden wele her leute
1740 & to him loke þat cite,
3if þai wold his loue winne,
þat his fon no com þer inne,
& seyd, he wald hem com to
As swiþe, as he mizt it do.

- 1745 To Fortiger þai comen anon,
Erls, barouns, euerichon;

1718) gredeb] r. ü. d. z. geschr.
- buchst. ausradirt. 1726) þine] danach ein

Angys, his eldfader, cam
& wiþ him wel mani a man,
Amirayls & doukes heize,
1750 þat in batayle were sleize;
Mani þousand per were bi tale,
Boþe of gret & of smale;
þo þai to gider weren ycome,
Her conseyl was sone ynome,
1755 Wiþ outen let forþ to wende,
Her fomen for to schende,
þat þai no entred in þe lond,
Harm to don oper schond.

f. 211 b.

Vp þai lift gomfaynoun
1760 & went to Winchester toun.
Vterpendragoun & his ferrede,
To Winchester þai gun spede
Wiþ so michel pople of men,
þat þai wrezzen doun & den,
1765 þat come boþe bi water & lond,
For to winnen Ingland.
þai vndede her gomfaynoun
Wiþ a brizt gliderand lyoun,
þat her faders hadde yben;
1770 þe buriays it gun ysen,
þe gomfaynoun sone þai knewe:
Costaunce ded þo gun hem rewe,
þat hadde her noble lord yben,
& Moynes ded, þat was his stren,
1775 & wist wele, þat king wiþ wrong
Sir Fortiger hadde ben long,
þat cursed was in liif & dede,
& al, þat held to his ferrede.
þer þai spoken hem bitvene,
1780 For liif, for dede no for tene
& þei þai alle hong schold,
Wiþ Fortiger be þai nold,

¹⁷⁷⁸⁾ to] om. ms. frrede ms.

& turned hem al bi on acord
To Vterpendragoun, her lord;
1785 þe gates al þai deden vp wide
& lete al þe folk in ride;
Hem & al her ferrade
þai welcomed wip chero glade
& hem deliuerd þe toun als snel
1790 & hem selue & þe castel;
Whar purch þanke & frende gret
þai wonnen þer, þat hem was net.
Fortiger, þat comend was,
Sone was told him þat cas;
1795 He was neize wode out of wit
& seyd, it schuld hem iuel atsit;
Swipe he heized wip al his men,
& Vterpendragoun hem oȝen
& desplayd his gomfaynoune
1800 A litel wip outen Winchester toun,
þat ich oþer folk yseyze,
þai were neized so neize.
Of pis lond baroun & knizt
Of þe lyoun hadden a silt,
1805 King Costaunce þat hadde yben,
& Vterpendragoun was his stren;
Anon turned her mode
To Vterpendragounes rizt blod.

f. 211 c.

þer was þousandes mani on,
1810 Opon Fortiger þai turned anon
& seyd to him: „Wicke traytour,
þou schald abigge þine errour!“
Fortiger his swerd out drouȝ,
& mani of hem per he slouȝ;
1815 Wip gret ire þai run him on,
For he hem wende al his men;
Ac oȝain him þai were al went,
Where purch he was al yschenȝ.

¹⁷⁸⁹) deliuerd ms. ¹⁷⁹¹) What ms. ¹⁷⁹³) comend] d
ii. d. z. geschr. ¹⁸⁰⁹) neiztȝe, sehr verlöscht, ms. ¹⁸¹⁶) wende]
n corr. aus?

- Fortiger was noble kniȝt,
1820 He fauȝt & slouȝ adoun rizt;
To his help þer com Angys
Wip mani Sarrazin of priis,
þat wise wordes coupe speke,
Stedes prike & launces breke;
1825 þe barouns þai bisett anon,
For to sle hem euerichon.
þer was a baroun, a noble man,
þat brac hem al fram;
He dede his stede swiȝe gon,
1830 Til he com to Vterpendragon,
& seyd: „Welcome, air of þis lond,
No duelle her nouȝt, for Cristes hond!
For loue of þi fader fre
& for drede eke of þe
1835 þe barouns ben to þe went
& for þi loue al mest yschent;
For Fortiger & eke Angys
Hem han al biloken, ywis,
& þenke hem sle to grunde,
1840 ȝif þou duellest ani stonnde!“
„Owe,“ quap Vterpendragoun, „bi god aboue,
Now y schal se, who me wil loue;
No schal ich neuer worþ bliȝe,
Bot ȝiue ȝe al heizen swiȝe!“
1845 Princes, doukes, erl & kniȝt
Priked her stedes arizt;
It was no nede, hem to hast,
Ac so quarel of alblast
þai flowen pider rizt anon
1850 Wip her lord Vterpendragon.
þer was sone, verrament
ȝouen mani noble dent,
Schaft tobroke[n] & swerd ydrawe,
Mani noble kniȝt yslawe,
1855 & þer fauȝt sir Vterpendragon,
As he were a wode lyoun,

f. 211 d.

1856) As *he were*] Fauȝt þer as ms.

- & his broþer nouȝt forȝat,
He leyd on mani a sori flat;
Sum he cleue to þe bacin,
1860 Til þat he com to þe chin;
He hadde of some þe heued
Fram þe nekbon yweued;
þer was slayn mani men,
Sum on hille & sum in den.
- 1865 Ac þei Fortiger were gode kniȝt
& wele him coupe helpen in fȝit,
þurch þe barouns of þe lond
& oper men miȝti of hond
He was þere ydriuen so neize,
- 1870 Wiþ his men oway he fleize
Vnto his newe castel ymade,
Of whom ich toforn sade.
Aurilisbrosias þer anon
& his broþer Vterpendragon
- 1875 þere hem wroken swiþe wel
Wiþ her brondes of ful gode stiel;
Mani hundred of Sarrazin
þai sent þer to helle pine.
þo Angys al þis sleiȝster seize,
- 1880 Wiþ al his miȝt anon he fleize
Into a castel of lime & ston,
þat man no miȝt him dery non.
þat bihinde was yfounde,
Anon was ybrouȝt to grunde.
- 1885 þan Vterpendragoun þere
Folwed after Fortiger;
þo þai to þe castel zates come,
Wilde fer anon þai nome;
Onpon þe gates þai kesten it
- 1890 & hem brend in litel fit.
Fortiger & wiif & child
Brent þer in þat fer wild,
& al, þat þer was yfounde,
Was ybrent in to þe grunde.

f. 212 a.

¹⁸⁶¹⁾ þe h.] yweued ms. ¹⁸⁶²⁾ yreued ms. ¹⁸⁶⁵⁾ Fortiger]
ger von spätere hand hinzugefügt.

- 1895 Men seyt, zere & oper to
Wrong wil an hond go,
& euer at þe nende
Wrong wil wende:
þus ended sir Fortiger,
1900 þat misbilcued, a fewe zer;
þei he wer strong of mizt,
To nouȝt him brouȝt his vnriȝt.
Sir Vterpendragoun
Wip his folk went anon,
1905 For to bisege þe king Angis;
Ac in a castel he lay of priis,
þat wip no gin, y ȝou plizt,
Noman per in com mizt.
Al so þai in þe sege lay,
1910 Fiue barouns com on a day,
þat hadde ben wip Fortiger,
& seyd to Vterpendragoun per
Al, hou Merlin was ybore
& hou messangers him zede fore,
1915 Hou he was brouȝt bifor þe king
& hou he couȝe tellen al þing,
Hou þe dragouns vnder mold
Ben þe kinges dep, it schold,
& hou Fortiger him wold haue nome,
1920 Ac he nist, where he was bicome,
& seyd: „Sir, verrament,
3if he were here in present,
Bi his conseyl ze schuld anon
Angys ouercomen & slon!“
1925 Her of awondred Vterpendragon
& sent messangers anon,
For to finde Merlin swiþe;
þai wenten forþ wip chere bliþe.

f. 212 b.

On a day þis messenger
1930 Sett hem alle to þe diner;

¹⁸⁹⁹⁾ ended s. F.] auf rasur geschr. ¹⁹⁰⁴⁾ folk] danach
folk, von späterer hand durchgestr. ¹⁹¹⁸⁾ Merlin ms.

- A begger per com in
Wip a long berd on his chin;
A staf in his hond he hadde
& schon on his fet badde;
- 1935 Wip his scholder he gan roue
& bad gode, for godes loue.
Pai seyd, he schuld nouȝt haue,
Bot strokes & bismare.
þe eld man seyd anon:
- 1940 „Ze be nice, euerichon,
bat sitten here & scorn me,
In þe kinges nedes bat schuld be,
For to finde Merlin child;
þe barouns ben witles & wilde,
- 1945 bat senten men him seche,
bat nouȝt no couþe knoweleche;
To day he habþ zou oft mett,
No knewe ze him neuer þe bet;
Wendep hom, bi mi rede,
- 1950 For him to finde no schul ze spede!
Biddep him & þe barouns fiue,
Pai comen & speke wiþ him blive,
• & siggeþ, Merlin wil hem abide
In þe forest here baside!“
- 1955 þo he hadde seyd hem pis,
Pai nist, where he bicoin, ywis.
þus telleþ þe letters blak:
It was Merlin, wiþ hem spak.
- 1960 þe messangers were abobbed þo,
Pai nisten, what þai miȝten do;
Hom þai went anon rizt
& to þe prince þai teld þer sizt.
Vterpendragoun had meruaile
- 1965 & al, pat herden it, saunfaile,
þai hadden wille & talent fin,
To sen & speke wiþ Merlin.
He bad Aurilisbrosias gent,
- 1970 To þe sege take entent,
þat Angys no miȝt oway,
Noþer bi niȝt no bi day,

f. 212c.

Ar he war of him awreke,
For he wald wiþ Merlin speke.
Aurilisbrosias bileft stille,
To kepe Angys in þe castil,
1975 & sir Vterpendragon
To þe forest went anon,
Where þat Merlin dede him se
In o day in þre ble:
In o day an hogges herd,
1980 þat þe prince þe way lerd,
& eft a chapman, þat bar his pac
& long wiþ þe prince spac
& seyd, of Merlin openliche
He wald him telle neweliche,
1985 & afterward a fair swain,
þat þe king com ogain
& seyd him, þat ich niȝt
He schuld of Merlin han a siȝt.

þo it was wel fer in niȝt,
1990 Merlin com to him, y plizt,
In þe gise of a swain,
þat he hadde arst ysain,
& seyd, so we finde in boke,
To þe prince: „God þe loke!
1995 Icham Merlin, leue sire,
Wiþ whom to speke pou hast desire!“
Vp stirt Vterpendragon
& biclept Merlin anon
& bad, he schuld wiþ him bilaue,
2000 & al his wille he schuld haue.
Merlin seyd, were so he ware,
To his wil he war al zare.

Merlin told him in þat cas:
„Y com fram Aurilisbrosias:
2005 Bi mi conseyl he hap þis niȝt
Angys slayn, y þe plizt!“

1980) priue ms.

1982) priue ms.

- Vterpendragon made joie þan,
So dop þe foule, when it dawy gan;
Al þat þer was, so made blis
2010 & amorwe went hom, ywis,
& founden Angys yslawe,
His heued vp set, his bodi todrawe.
Al his folk so was schilt,
& neuer on þer nas spilt.
- 2015 Sir Vterpendragon þere
Asked Aurilisbrosias, hou it were.
„Certes,“ seyd Aurilisbrosias, „to niȝt
A swain com to me ful riȝt
& hastiliche warned me,
2020 þat Angys com, me to sle;
Vp ich stirt & him met,
& to þe grounde ichim stet;
Y not, who him on brouȝt
No what deuel he here souȝt,
2025 Ac wiþ mi swerd scharp of egge
His liif y dede him þere legge!“
þo spac Vterpendragon
To his broþer swiþe anon:
„Broþer,“ he seyd, „þat was Merlin,
2030 þat so þe halp in nede þin,
þat here stont now bi me!“
& he. him ponked wiþ hert fre
& proferd him, al his þing
To ben vnder his zemeing.
2035 Al so þai spac wiþ Merlin,
A bod com fram þe Sarrazin,
þai wold ȝeld þe castel,
3if þai mosten wenden wel
To her lond wiþ outen dere;
2040 Merlin ȝaf hem answere,
þat þai schuld wende anon
Bi þe princes leue, ichon;
& so þai deden, bi godes sond
Alle þai wenten to her lond,
2045 & alle þe lond þo com anon
& maked her op to Vnderpendragon.

- & þo þe op was ymade
Bi comoun dome, bi comoun rade,
Vterpendragon coroun nam
2050 & king of Ingland bicam.
þe fest of þe corounment
In Winchester was, verrament,
& held it ful seuen niȝt,
þe fest noble, a pliȝt.
2055 Ac ich ȝou telle, þat Merlin
To Aurilisbrosias hadde hert fin
& loued better his litel to,
þan al þat oper bodi þo;
Ac ich ȝou telle, naþeles,
2060 A swiþe gode kniȝt he wes:
He forsoke scheld no spere
Neuer, oȝaines kniȝt to bere;
Wiþ swerd he couþe kerue wel,
Boþe in yren & in stiel.
2065 Ac, for soþe, afterward
Vp him com a chaunce hard,
Of Danmark Sarrazins,
þat were of Angys lins,
þat hem souȝt gret helping
2070 About hem of mani king;
So michel pople wiþ hem com,
þat it no miȝt telle no man;
Wiþ fele schippes & gret ynowe
Vp þai comen at Bristowe.
2075 Merlin þis wist anon
& seyd to Vterpendragon
& to his broþer al so,
& teld to hem boþe to:
„Y ȝou telle, saunfayle,
2080 Vp ȝou is comen a strong batayle
Of Sarrazins of michel priss,
For to awreke þe douke Angys;
In þis lond bi our day
So michel folk nas neuer, y say;

²⁰⁴⁷⁾ þe] danach zwei buchst. ausradirt.
fin] auf rasur geschr.

²⁰⁵⁶⁾ Aur. —

2085 Ac þour on, wiþ outen les,
Worp yslawe in þat pres;
Ac ich zou telle, who so it is,
Schal wende in to heuen blis;
þer fore no fors no makeþ,
2090 Ac gode hert to zou takeþ!

þour folk departeþ atvo,
Oȝaines hem ȝe gin to go!
Vterpendragon hem schal asayle
On þe lond half, saunfayle;
2095 Aurilisbrosias, y telle þe,
þou schalt wende bi þe se,
& þer þou þe conteyn so,
þat þou hem wirche deþes wo!“
For no þing he nold say,
2100 Whiche of hem schuld day.
As he hem bad, þai deden so,
Her folk departed atvo;
Vterpendragon wiþ mani man
Anon þe Sarrazins ȝede oȝan,
2105 & al so sone, so he hem mett,
Wiþ swerd & launce he hem gret;
Mani hapen þer was, for sop,
þe heued cleued to þe top,
þe nekbon dassed atvo,
2110 þe arm þe bodi smiten fro,
Wiþ swerd þe body atvo ydast,
þe bodi out of þe sadel cast.
þe boke it seyt, nouȝt y no lye:
þer was don swiche cheualrie,
2115 þat no tong telle no miȝt
þe haluendel wiþ tale riȝt.
Aurilisbrosias to þe se went,
To whom Merlin hadde gode talent.

f. 213 b.

Merlin sent þan anon
2120 To sir Vterpendragon

2088) fors] forth *ms.* 2112) þe sadel] þe stark *ausradi. t.*
2118) gode talent] *auf rasur geschr.*

& bad him, orpedliche he schuld keþe,
For he no schuld þere poly deþe.
þo Vterpendragon herd þis,
His hert bicome ful of blis;
2125 Wip wretþe & wip talent fin
He smot opon a Sarrazin;
He & al his felawered,
þer þai deden noble dede.
Al þat euer wald ariue,
2130 þai binomen þat day oline;
Vterpendragon so hard hem held,
þat þai wip strengþe lete þe feld,
& Aurilisbrosias hem held so hard,
þat he hem brouzt oȝanward;
2135 & þo þai noure fle miȝt,
Wip Aurilisbrosias þai gun fizt,
& so fele about him were,
His liif þai binomen him pere.
Ac þo Vterpendragon vnderstode
2140 His broþer deþ, he wex ner wode;
þo he bisouȝt his doukes fizt
& him bistired þo as a kniȝt,
þat of þritti pouȝand & mo
No lete þai füe oway go.
2145 Of our wer slawe þan anon

f. 213c.

þre pouȝend & ten & on;
þre mile wayes oþer to
No miȝt no man step no go,

Noiþer on hille no in den,
2150 Bot he steped on ded men.

þe blod ouerran þe cuntraye
Ouer al in þe valaye.
So it fel to þe niȝt:

Vterpendragon com fram þe fizt,
2155 Doukes, kinges & barouns,
Orped squiers & garsouns
Hom went to her in.
Bi rede amorwe of Merlin

2130) *þat*] om. ms.

2136) *Wip*] i verklext.

- Aurilisbrosias out þai souzt
2160 & richelich in erþe him brouzt.
þan he was helden a douhti kniȝt
& ful wele held his lond to rizt.
Here he liued seþpen zeres fele
In miche pride & gret wele;
2165 Fer & neize, wide & side
His fomen durst him nouzt abide;
Bi Merlins red euer he wrouzt,
bat in to gret power him brouzt;
He ouercom king Claudas,
2170 bat so strong & stern was;
þurch his miȝt al so he wan
þe douhti king Harman,
& of him he hadde first Gascoyne,
& Normondye & Boloyne
2175 & al þe marche to Paito
& Chaumpeine & eke Ango.
þis ich king Harman
To wiue had a fair wiman;
Sche hizt Ygerne, wiþ outen no,
2180 þe fairest lif, þat liued po;
þe douke Hoel of Cornewaile
Spoused hir after him, saunfayl,
þurch whom seþpen his liif he les:
3e schul seþpen here in pes.
- 2185 3ete hadde Vterpendragon
Wonne to him þe king Ban
& Bohort, his broþer, al so:
Better bodis no miȝt non go.
King Ban hadde to his demeyne
2190 þe cite of Beuoit of lasse Breteyne, f. 213 d.
Wiþ cites & borwes, castels & pleyns,
& Bohort hadde þe cite of Gaines
Wiþ al þe rizt, þat longed per to,
& þus þai hadde schift atvo.

²¹⁶¹⁾ helden] e *aus o corr. oder umgekehrt.* ²¹⁹⁰⁾ of lasse]
of ii. d. z. geschr.

- 2195 & afterward, wiþ outen fable,
Our king bigan þe rounde table,
þat was þurch Merlines hest,
Of kniztes, þat men wist best
In þis warld þurch out,
2200 þat table schuld sitte about;
At þat table non sitt miȝt,
Bot he were noble & douhti kniȝt,
Strong & hende, hardi & wise,
Certes & trewe wiþ outen feyntise;
2205 Her non oper schuld faile
No neuer fle out of bataile,
Whiles he on fot stond miȝt,
Bot ȝif hem departed þe niȝt.
At bataile & at bord al so
2210 Bi hem selue þai schuld go,
So monkes don in her celle;
Bi hem selue þai eten, ich telle;
Wher wer were alder mast,
þai were þider sent on hast.
2215 þis table gan Vter, þe wiȝt,
Ac it to ende haue he no miȝt,
For þei alle þe kniztes vnder our lord
Hadde ysiten at þat bord,
Kniȝt bi kniȝt, ich ȝou telle,
2220 þe table no miȝt nouȝt fulfille,
Til he wer born, þat schuld do al,
Fulfille þe meruails of þe greal.

I
t was opon þe pentecost,
In time, þat þe holy gost
2225 Among þe tvelue apostles cam,
So sparc of fer, & in hem ran,
Our king Vterpendragon,
Lete bede wel mani a man,
Doukes, kniztes, erls & king,
2230 To Cardoil to his gestening;
Swiche was his won, a plizt,
To helden ful seuennizt;

- For þe loue of Ygerne,
 2310 In whas loue he dede berne.
 Anon after þo leuedis alle
 Were ofsent in to þe halle;
 þe king toke Ygerne bi þe hond,
 þe fairest leuedi of þis lond,
 2315 & sett hir bi him on þe benche,
 Win & piment he dede senche.
 Oper kinges & doukes heize
 Token oper leuedis sleize,
 To gider hem set & made solas.
 2320 þe king bisouzt Ygerne of gras,
 þat sche schold ben his lef;
 þe leuedi seyd: „I nam no þef,
 To breke mi treupe ozain mi lord;
 Raper ich wald hing bi a cord;
 2325 No schal y neuer, for loue no ȝift,
 Wip mi bodi don vnriȝt!“
 Oper wise for no preier
 þe king nold sche yhere.
 þe king spac no more þo,
 2330 Sumwat elles he þouȝt to do;
 þo þai were al at aise,
 Ich went to his in a paise;
 Ac ich zou telle þo at arst,
 þe king neize for loue brast;
 2335 Ac no man nist of his pin,
 Bot his conseyler Vlfin,
 þat bad him, nouȝt care beginne:
 He schuld wele hir loue winne.
 Tintagel & eke Ygerne
 2340 To her in went ful ȝerne;
 þe leuedi toke þan þe kniȝt
 & in to chaumber went ful rizt;
 Toforn him a knewes sche fel
 & seyd: „Lord, ȝif it be pi wille,
 2345 I pray, þat þou wost hennes wende:
 þe king is about, me to schende;

f. 214 c.

²³³²⁾ in] danach at aise, t aise unterpunktet. ²³⁴⁵⁾ I pray | om. ms.

þe worþship, þat he dop to þe,
Al is forto schende me;
He haþ me of vilanie bisouȝt,
2850 Me to aforce, is in his þouȝt!“
þo þe douke þis vnderstode,
For wretþe he wex neize wode;
He hadde in toun .v. hundred kniȝtes,
He hem ofsent anon riȝtes
2855 & told hem þis vilainie
& seyd, he wald hom an heize;
He bad hem trosse & make ȝare,
Ar day he wold homward fare,
For he hadde leuer dye in fiȝt,
2860 þan schond poli & vnriȝt.
His kniȝtes to him zeuen asent
& trossed swiþe, verrament;
Bi þat it was liȝt o day,
þai weren al ywent oway,
2865 þe douke, þe leuedi & his kniȝt. f. 214 d.
þe king seye þe day liȝt,
þat niȝt he hadde litel yslape;
He stirt vp al in rape,
His chaumberlain him com to,
2870 His cloþes on for to do;
þo he was cloþed, he com adoun,
Sikeende & romende vp & doun.
Afterward com in anon
Barouns & leuedis, mani on;
2875 To chirche þai ȝede, more & lasse,
For to heren þer her messe;
Ac al þai loked swiþe ȝerne
After Tintagel & Ygerne.
þo þe messe was ysonge,
2880 þe king spac wiþ his tonge:
„Where is þe douke Tintagel?
Icham adrad, him is nouȝt wel!“

2853) .v.] auf rasur geschr. 2855) vilainie] das dritte i
corr. aus e. 2861) asent] a corr. aus?

- „Certes, sir,“ quāp a kniȝt,
He is went homward to nizt
2385 Wip wiif & kniztes to his lond!“
„Eye,“ quāp þe king, „þat is me schond:
þef! he hap broken mi statout!
He schal abigge, wip outen dout!“
His statout was & his lawe,
2390 þat non no schuld in seuen dawe,
þat were of priis oper of noblay,
Fram þat fest wende oway,
Bot it were bi þe kinges wille;
& who so dede, he schuld spille.
2395 þo þe king vnderstode
þe douke ywent, he was neize wode;
Of þat despite pleynt he made
& to his folk seþpen he sade,
þat he was digne, to dye anon,
2400 þat swiche despite hadde ydon.
þe king him diȝt in a stounde
& þe kniztes of þe table rounde;
þe noblest men, þat were oliue,
& riche kinges two & fwe,
2405 Noble kinges of þis lond,
Al wonnen vnder his hond,
Wip mani erl, baroun & kniȝt
Armed went anon rizt,
þe douke Tintagel to nime,
2410 So þe kinges wipperwine.
Ac þe douke Tintagel
þis, bifore wist it wel;
He hadde sent fer & neize
After frendes & sondes sleize,
2415 Fiftene pouſand kniztes hende,
þat schuld his lond help to defende.

f. 215 a.

2386) schond] n corr. aus? 2405) kinges] danach VII,
unterpunktet. 2409) to] ü. d. z. geschr. 2414) frendes] r
ü. d. z. mit dunklerer tinte nachgetr. sondes] nach e ein
r mit dunklerer tinte ü. d. z. nachgetr. 2415) hende] wahr-
scheinlich später hinzugef.

Napeles, ozain þe king
þai no hadde power in fizing.
At cite, borwe & castel
2420 þai were astored swiþe wel.

þe king com wiþ his barnage
& tounes brent in gret rage;
He bilay him swiþe long
& men slouȝ; it was wiþ wrong.
2425 þe douke him selue, Tintagel,
Lay in a swiþe strong castel;
Our king Vterpendragon
Him asailed & ek his men
Wiþ heweing & wiþ mineinge
2430 & wiþ mangunels casteinge.
Ac Tintagel, þat hende kniȝt,
His castel wered wele, a pliȝt;
& pennes ouer miles þre
Lay Ygerne so fair & fre
2435 In a castel of roche of ston;
Man no miȝt hir dery non.
Jurdains & eke Bretel,
Boþe were wiþ Tintagel,
& al, þat miȝt armes bere,
2440 To helpen him, his castel to were.
þe king him hadde wel long ylay
& was ful of wretþe & tray,
þat he no miȝt him nim anon,
& sike he was in euerich bon
2445 For loue of þe cuntasse;
Gode he no coupe more no lasse.
On a day it bifel so,
Vterpendragon was swiþe wo;
Vlfin he tok, his chaumberlain,
2450 & went, to plaien him on þe plain.
An beggere þere he mett,
þat þe king wel fair gret,

2420) astored] re *schr verkratzt.* geschr. 2439) armes] r ü. d. z.

- * For godes loue þat bad him gode.
þe king answerd wip dreri mode:
2455 „Beggere,“ he seyd, „so mot y liue,
Y no haue here nouȝt þe to ziue!“
„Sir,“ quap þe beggere þo,
„Tel me þan of þi wo,
Whi þou makest swiche chere?“
2460 þe king seyd: „Vlfin, no miȝtow here
Of þis begger aposeing,
þat dar so speke to a king?“
Vlfin þe begger biheld on
& him knewe wel sone anon
2465 Bi his semblaunt & winking,
þat he made opon þe king,
& seyd: „Sir, par ma fay,
þis is a begger of noblay;
þou miȝt be þer of ful fawe:
2470 It is Merlin, þat þou schalt knawe!“
His semblaunt turned anon Merlin,
þe king þo hadde joie fin;
Of his hors sone he liȝt
& kist Merlin anon riȝt,
2475 So dede Vlfin al so;
Michel ioie he made þo.
Merlin seyd to þe king:
„Al y knowe þi glosing:
Y wot, þou louest par amour
2480 Ygerne, þat swete flour;
What wiltow zeue me? Ar to morwe
Y schal þe lese out of þi sorwe!“
„Merlin,“ quap þo þe king,
„Help me now in þis þing,
2485 & þou schalt haue, whatow wilt ȝerne:
Do me to haue swete Ygerne!“
„Wiltow me ziue,“ quap Merlin,
„Al pe bizete, þat schal be þine,

²⁴⁶¹⁾ aposseing, das zweite s unterpunktet, ms.
²⁴⁸⁶⁾ Do]
d aus t corr. me] mit dunklerer tinte und verweisungszeichen am
rande nachgetr.

- & þou hir haue ar day?"
2490 "3a," quap þe king, "par ma fay!"
"Now," quap Merlin, "þi pais þou held,
& ar day þou schalt hir weld!"
þe king was swiþe bliþe þo,
To his pauiloun he gan go;
2495 At þe soper þai were glade,
Michel ioie & mirþe þai made.
Ar it day were, Merlin hete
þe kinges men arm hem skete
& bisett þat castel,
2500 Where þe douke was, Tintagel,
& tauzt hem gin & eke way,
þe castel to win ar ani day.
þai went al to þis asailing,
Bot Vlfín & Merlin & þe king
2505 At hom bileued & bispake,
Hou þai miȝt of loue take.
Merlin bad Vlfín & þe king,
Riden wiþ him, wiþ outen duelling;
So þai deden & rideñ ȝerne
2510 Toward þe castel, þer was Ygerne.
þo þai þe castel were neize,
Merlin kidde, þat he was sleize:
Herbes he souȝt & fond
& gnidded hem bitvix his hond;
2515 þe king he smerd viis & liche
& made þe king Tintagel liche;
Him seluen he made like Jurdains,
þat was þe lordes chaumberlains;
Vlfín he made liche Bretel
2520 & went þo to þe castel;
On þe gate loude þai bete,
Seriaunce com & hem in lete;
þai wende, it were her seygnour,
& ladde him in wiþ gret honour,
2525 For swiche was cloþ, bodi & fas;
To hir chaumber he nam his pas;
þe king zede after þo wel swiþe,
Was he neuer are so bliþe.

f. 215 c.

To þe king þo spac Merlin:
2530 "Spede þe now on nedes þine:
Ar þou arise of hir bed,
þou worþ swiþe sore adred!"

þe king þer of nouȝt no schrof,
Ac to Ygerne bed he drof;
2535 Ygerne wende, it were her lord,
& him afenge wiþ fair acord.
þe king no made nouȝt long soiour,
bat he no plaid wiþ bat flour
So oft, so his wil was,
2540 bat ich nizt, bi godes grace;
þer was bizeten hem bitven t. 215 d.
King Arthour, bat noble stren.
þer after in a litel prawe
A cri þer com, her lord was slawe;
2545 þo com Merlin to his bed:
"Arise vp, for it is nede,
& þine men þou schewe þe to:
Men seyt, þou art to dep ydo!"
Vt striit þo þe king,
2550 He no made þer no duelling.
So we finden on þe boke,
He kist þe leuedi & leue he toke;
In to halle he com wel swiþe,
Al bat folk of him was bliþe,
2555 For þai wende, for soþe, þere,
þair owhen lord bat it were;
þe messenger was foule yschent,
bat to hem brouȝt bat present,
& oft ycleped foule leizer.
2560 Wiþ gret oþes he gan him swere
& seyd, he was in þe plas,
þo þe castel ynomen was,
& al bat folk he herd waile
For þat erl of Cornwaile.

2565 þe king asked his destrer red
& seyd, he wold kiþe, he nas nouȝt ded.

He priked him forþ out atte gate :
For soþe, it was al most to late,
For of þe way litel þai ware,
2570 þo þai herd, wiþ gret care
þe doukes man Tintagel
Com fleinde fram þe castel.
þo þe leuedi herd þis,
Wo was hir liif, ywis,
2575 For hir lord Tintagel :
Sche was bigiled, sche wist wel ;
In hir pouȝt wele it ran,
On hir was bizeten a barn :
What for sorwe, wat for schame,
2580 Wers was neuer gentil dame !

So we finde in our boke :
Merlin þo went to a broke ;
þe king wiþ water per he wesche,
His owhen stat he hadde, ywis ;
2585 & seþpen he wesche hem boþe to, f. 216 a.
Her Owen stat þai hadden al so.
þo þai wenten al þre
To þe kinges meyne.
Rizt so þe day bigan dawe,
2590 þai fond Tintagel yslawe ;
þer of, for soþe, our king
Joie made, wiþ outen lesing.
Long þer afterward, verrament,
Was ymade acordement
2595 Bitvene Ygerne & þe king
þurch heize mennes conseyling ;
An þo was iugged, wiþouten faili,
Bi heize mennes conseyl,
þe king was iugged, Ygerne to spouse ;
2600 þer of Ygerne was ioiouse.

King Nanters of Garlot
þer nam Blasine, god it wot,

2601) Garlot] e, unterpunktet und a überge. chr.

Ygerns douhter bi Hoel;
Hir lord was bifor Tintagel,
2605 In whom he bizat Galaas,
þat strong & hardi & noble was.

King Lot þer nam Belisent,
Al so Ygerns douhter gent,
In whom be seþþe bizat Wawein
2610 & Guerehes & Agreuein
& Gaheriet, þat was so fre,
For better kniztes no miȝt non be.
King Vriens þe pridde nam,
þat was king of Schorham,
2615 In whom he bizat Ywayns,
Hende & noble & kniȝt certeyns.
þese þre sustren were bi Hoel
& oper mo bi Tintagel,
þat elles where were to loke,
2620 So we finde writen in boke.
Al four made spouseing
To gider & swiþe fair gestening;
þer was justes & turnamens
Swiþe noble, verramens.
2625 þe fest lasted fourtenniȝt
To al, þat euer come, y plizt.

þo þe fest was ydo,
Merlin com þe king to
& seyd, he hadde do þe dede
2630 Of gode conseyl & wise rede,
& seyd: „Sir, bipenke pou þe,
What pou next zeue me:
þe child, bizeten in þi quen,
Ichil þe telle, hou it mot ben:
2635 Hir wombe greteþ, pou miȝt to niȝt
Fele, hou it stireþ þat litel wiȝt.

f. 216 b.

2630) wise] danach of, unterpunktet.
verse steht ein abschnittszeichen, unr.

2617) Nach diesem

- When þou it felest in hir wawe,
Bid hir, sche be biknawe,
Who so haþ bi hir lay:
- 2640 þe soþe sche wil sone say.
þat schaltow hir hot, ywis,
So sone so it born is,
It be yborn to þe gate
& zouen, whom men findeþ þer at;
- 2645 þer man schal yfinde me,
To song þat child, þat is so tre.
þou hast a baroun in þi lond
Of gentil blod & mizti hond;
þat is Antour, þi baroun heye;
- 2650 þat is a man of gret noblay,
In þis lond nis swiche blode
No milk þat haþ half so gode.
þou hast bizeten a noble stren,
& sche is wiþ child, so is þe quen:
- 2655 Pray Antour wiþ wordes milde,
þe milke he ziuie to þi childe;
& zif he þer of ziuie graunt,
Our lord y take to waraunt,
þi child worþ þe noblest man
- 2660 Of al þis world an for an,
Ac to þi quen be nouȝt biknawe,
þat þat child be þine awe!“
þe king swore bi Crist, his sire,
He nold neuer tel it hire;
- 2665 Al he dede, so Merlin bad.
þe quen agros & was adrad
& seyd: „Lord, wiþ child ich am:
Not ich neuer, who is þe man;
Bizeten it was þat ich prawe,
- 2670 þat mi lord was yslawe:
So mot ich proue, & y the,
Y wend, mi lord it hadde ybe;

²⁶³⁷⁾ feleþ ms. ²⁶⁴³⁾ yborn] zwischen y und born ein
buchstabe ausradirt. ²⁶⁵¹⁾ swiche] danach b, unterpunktet.
²⁶⁵⁰⁾ he] sche, sc unterpunktet, ms.

Do wiþ me, what þi wille is,
þe soþe ich haue yseyd, ywis!"

f. 216 c.

- 2675 "Dame," he seyd, "no drede nouȝt þe.
Al þe gilt y forȝue þe
Wiþ þat, at, when þou child hast.
þou do nim þat child on hast,
Do bere it to þe gate
2690 & ȝiue it, whom þou findest þer at.
þat y no here þer of tidinge
Neuer eft more, wiþ outen lesing!"
"Sir," sche seyd, "bleþeliche
It schal be don, sikerliche!"

- 2685 þe king þer after amorwe aros
& osent sir Antour of gret los;
þo he was comen, þe king him nam
& al his men ladde him fram
& gan his priuete vnhele,
2690 & bad, þat he it schuld hele;
He seyd, he hadde bizeten a child,
& teld him, hou, wiþ tale milde;
"Late," he seyd, "þi wiif it loke
Of hir milk & ȝiue it souke,
2695 & þou schalt haue riche mede,
? Brod londes & heize stede!"
þe king vnneþe al þis bizat;
þe quen childed after þat
A fair knaue, a gentil bizate,
2700 þat was born to þe gate;
An old hore man it was bitake,
So we finden in þe blake:
It was Merlin, þat him afeng,
Forþ he ȝede wiþ outen lesing,
2705 To a chirche he went wiþ honour
& dede þat child cristen Arthour.
After he went swiþe
& bar it to sir Antoris wiue;

2680) findeþ ms.

2690) bad] om. ms.

2701) Anold ms.

2703) Merlin] sehr verlöscht.

A child bed he hir fond
2710 & tok it hir in þe hond
& bad it hir loke wiþ mild mode:
„þi mede schal be riche & gode!“

Merlin went anon oway,
No seize noman him after mani a day;

2715 Antors wiif child hete Cay,
Sche dede it fram hir oway
& lete souke Artouret:
þat milk was wel bisett,
He wex fair & wele yþei
2720 & was a child of gret noblay;
He was curteys, hende & gent
& wiȝt & hardi, verrament,
Curteyslich & fair he spac,
Wip him was non iuel lac;

f. 216 d.

2725 His fader he miȝt oft ysen,
Ac him no knewe neuer þe quen,
No Artour no miȝt neuer wite,
þat þe king him hadde bizete,
While þe king was libbeing,

2730 So ich in þe Brout yfinde;
. Ac his fader, wele he wende,
Were Antour, þe kniȝt hende.
His moder starf, so god wold,
& richeliche was brouȝt in mold;

2735 Afterward long þe king
In bedde fel in gret sekeling
& was ycomen rizt to his fin;
Rizt þo bifor him stode Merlin;
þe king quiked anon rizt,

2740 þo he had of Merlin siȝt;
He asked, where he hadde yben,
þat he no miȝt him fer ysen;

2712) &] ü. d. z. geschr. 2716) oway] auf rasur von späterer
hand geschr. 2727) N ms. 2734) richeliche] hel auf rasur geschr.
2739) king] in sehr verlöscht. 2741) where] r auf rasur geschr.

He seyd: „Fer hennes, saunfail,
Now is to comen mi trauail:
2745 þou schal be dede sone, ywis,
& wenden in to heuen blis;
þi sone after worþ king
Bi godes grace & min helping,
Bi wos day worþ don alle
2750 þe meruails of þe sen greal.“
þe king her of lete ful gode
& þonked god wiþ mild mode.

Merlin fram him went oway,
þe king starf þat ich day;
2755 For him wepen lowe & heize
Swipe sore wiþ her eize;
þe holy bischop, þat biȝt Brice,
For him dede þe office;
In erþe he was, sikerliche,
2760 Layd swipe nobeliche.
After his enterement
þai gan make a parlement,
To whiche parlement was yfet
Al, þat hadde power gret,
2765 Of pis lond al about;
þider com wel gret rout
Of kinges, erls, baroun & kniȝt,
Princes, doukes, mani, y plizt.
Non no wist hem among,
2770 þat Arthour of þe king sprong,
Bot sir Antor & sir Vlfín
& þe gode clerk Merlin;
Ac for in spoushade he nas biȝete,
No man no most it wite.
2775 Pis parlement last mani a day,
To chese a king of gret noblay
To þe heize & to þe lawe,
To gouern hem in her lawe;

f. 217 a.

²⁷⁴⁷⁾ worþ] r ii. d. z. geschr. ²⁷⁶⁷⁾ erls] s verkkext.
²⁷⁷³⁾ spouse ms.

Ac þai no miȝt nouȝt acord,
2780 For ich of hem wold be lord.
þis last half ȝer so,
þat þai no miȝt comen at on þo.

On Cristenmesse euen þe bischop Brice
Kid, þat he nas nouȝt nice;
2785 Per he was among hem alle,
þis wise he gan hem calle:
„Lordinges,“ he seyd, „ze no may acord,
For to chese ȝou a lord;
þer fore y pray for loue of Crist,
2790 Wircheþ now bi gin & list!
It is a wel gode time, a pliȝt,
To chirche gop al to niȝt
& pray to Crist so gode & fre,
A king ous sende, þat bihouesum be
2795 To þe riȝt oȝains þe wrong,
He graunt to chesen ous among,
& þat we haue per of tokening
To morwe at our seruise ending!“
& þat it so miȝt ben,
2800 Euerichon seyden: ‘amen!’
þus per ȝede more & lasse
A niȝt to chirche, amorwe to masse,
& maden solempne bisecheinge,
For to haue a riȝtful kinge,
2805 & þo þe seruise don was, f. 217b.
Outward þai wenten her pas;
Tosor þe chirche dore þai founde
A ston stonden on þe grunde,
Long & heize, for soþe to say,
2810 þer in a swerd of gret noblay.
King & douke, baroun & kniȝt,
Ich hadde wonder of þat sȝit;
þe bischop com & it seyȝe
& þonked Jesu Crist on heize.

2786) gan] *danach* hem, *unterpunktet.* 2800) &] *hinzugef.*
unr., ms.

- 2815 Ichil wele, pat \ge it wite,
On \pe pomel was ywritte:
‘Icham yhot Estalibore,
Vnto a king fair tresore.’
On Inglis is pis writeing
2820 Kerue, stiel & iren al \pe ping.
 \pe bischop seyd to hem anon:
„pis swerd who drawe \of be ston,
He schal be our king ymade
Bi godes wille & our rade!“
- 2825 \pe iau al her to concentement.
King Lot proued, verrament,
Out it to drawe anon $\ri\z$,
Ac he no mizt for alle his mizt;
King Nanters no king Clarion
- 2830 No mizt it drawe out of \pe ston,
No no gentil man of priis
No mizt it ones stiren, ywis.
 \pe ider com ich noble blod,
& to candelmesse \per it stode;
- 2835 Al pat was born in Ingland,
On pis swerd cast his hond,
Ac, for liif no for depe,
 \pe ai no mizt it stir vnnepe.
 \per it stode til ester tide;
- 2840 \pe ider to comen men ful wide
Fram pis half se & eke $\bi\z$ onde,
& nouzt \pe ai sped, bi godes sond.
& \ze ete it stode to pentecost,
 \per com \pe ider mani an ost,
- 2845 To turnaien in pat tide
Al most fast \per bi side.
Kay, his sone, sir Antour
Him made kniȝt wiȝ gret honour;
Pis Kay it was, pat nas nouzt late,
- 2850 For to souken his moder tate,

f. 217 c.

2815) Ichil] danach wil, unterpunktet. 2816) pomel] o verklext.
2819) pis] danach pis, ausgestr. writeing] r mit dunklerer tinte \ddot{u} .
d. z. nachgetr. 2820) iren] danach &, unr. ms. 2840) \pe ider] ide
auf rasur geschr. 2844) anost ms. 2845) in pat] auf rasur geschr.

Ac Arturet, for soþe, it seke,
þat bicom mild & meke.
Kay was swiþe noble kniȝt,
Ac he stamered a litel wiȝt,
2855 þat, he it hadde in nortoure
þurch þe norices course.
Arthour had serued Lot
Swiþe long, wele y wot.

Ac þo Cay was kniȝt ymade,
2860 Sir Antor ȝaf to Kay rade,
For to ofsende Arthour oȝein,
For to make of him his swain,
For he was hardi, trewe & trest,
Of al pis lond & ȝong man best.
2865 Kay was swiþe wele ypaid;
Al was don, þat Antor seyd.
Arthour com hom & was wiþ Kay,
& went hem to þat turnay;
þer Kay contend him, a pliȝt,
2870 So a wele doinde kniȝt;
Boþe at side & at ende
He feld kniȝtes swiþe hende.

þo he com amidward,
About he leyd on so hard,
2875 þat his swerd brast atvo,
Anon he bad Arthour þo:
„To mi leuedi swiþe wende,
Anoþer swerd bid hir me sende!“
& so he dede wiþ outen abode,
2880 Swiftliche hom he rode;
His leuedi finde he no miȝt,
Oȝain he went anon riȝt.

& to þe swerd in þe ston
Wel riȝt he gan for to gon,

2855) it] ü. d. z. geschr. 2863] trewe] das zweite e auf rasur geschr. 2870) doinde] de auf rasur geschr. 2877) wende] hende ms.

- 2885 Noman was þer, verrament,
Ac alle weren at þe turnament.
Arthour tok þe hilt bi hond,
þe swerd out drawe he gan fond,
Ac for nouȝt out it cam;
2890 In his hond he it nam,
His hors he lepe vp anon,
To þe turnay he com son
& seyd: „Hauē þis swerd, sir Kay! f. 217 d.
þi leuedi finden y no may!“
- 2895 Kay þis swerd wele knewe, ywis,
To Arthour he seyd: „Where hadestow þis?“
„Certes,“ quap Arthour, „her bizonde
In a ston ich it fond!“
Arthour no seize it neuer ar
- 2900 No wist neuer, why it stode þar.
Sir Kay seyd þo to Arthour:
„Telle it to no man, þar amour,
þat pou þis swerd out drouȝ,
& þou schal haue gode ynouȝ!“
- 2905 Arthour seyd: „Certes, nay!“
Forþ went anon sir Kay
& ledde his fader, sir Antour,
To þe chirche of seyn sauour
& seyd: „Ichauē þis swerd out drawe:
- 2910 þat ich be king, it is lawe!“
Sir Antor biheld þat sword
& seyd at þe first word:
„þou gabbest me, bi god aboue:
3if þou say soþ, eft þou it proue!
- 2915 For bifor þis heize men
þou most it pelt in ozen,
& bot þou miztest drawe it out,
þe wold schame berd & snout!“
- þai wenten boþe to þe ston
2920 & Kay pelt it in anon,

²⁹¹⁵⁾ þis] *danach ein buchst. ausradirt.*

Ac þei he war strong & wiȝt,
Drawe it out he no miȝt.
þo bispac him sir Antour:
„Telle me, sone, par amour,
2925 Who it was, þis swerd out drouȝ?“
& þo stode sir Kay & louȝ:
„Sir,“ he seyd, „bi godes sond:
Arthour toke it me in hond!“
Antor cleped Arthour þo
2930 & dede him to þe ston go,
& boþe swiþe & eke soft
In & out he pelt it oft.
Antor was her of ful bliþe
& drouȝ Arthour to chirche swiþe
2935 & seyd to him priueliche þo:
„Arthour, listen now me to!
Seþpen þou were born, verrament,
Ich haue ȝouen þe norisement.“
& þer he teld him al þe cas,
2940 Hou he bizeten & born was,
Hou his fader was þe king,
& hou, þurch his bisecheing,
„Kay, mi sone, a norice y toke,
& þou mi wiues tate soke.“
2945 þo seyd Antor: „Min course,
Mi sone þou art purch norture;
It nis no rizt, þat þou me werne,
Riztfulliche þat y wil ȝerne,
Ich pray þe, graunt me a bone,
2950 þat ich þe wil axi sone:
Ich þe wil help, sone Arthour,
King to ben wiþ michel honour!“
þo bispac Arthour, þe hende:
„Crist of heuen me defende,
2955 þat ich þe wern ani þing,
Of what þou makest axing!“

f. 218a.

2921) þei he] auf rasur geschr. 2931) boþe] danach ein
buchstabe ausradirt. 2946) norture] nach t o, unterpunktet.
2950) axi a sehr verlöscht; nach axi ein buchst. ausradirt.

- „God þe forzeld!“ seyd sir Antour;
„Now y þe pray par amour:
þi steward make mi sone Kay,
2960 So long so þou liue may!
In nesse, in hard, y pray þe nowe,
In al stedes þou him avowe,
& y schal þe help in þis nede,
þurch godes help þat þou schalt spede!“
- 2965 þo bispac him sir Arthour:
„Y graunt þi wil, sir Antour,
þat Kay, þi sone, be mi steward;
Y schal him avowe in nesse & hard!
When ich euer faile Kay,
2970 Crist me forȝete þat day!“
Forþ zede Antor anon rizt
& sir Arthour made knizt;
First he fond him cloþ & cradel,
þo he fond him stede & sadel,
2975 Helme & brini & hauberioun,
Saumbers, quissers & aketoun,
Quarre scheld, gode swerd of stiel
& launce stef, biteand wel.
þer he ȝaue him anon riztes
2980 To his seruise fourti kniztes.
A morwe þai went to turnament,
& so þer dede, verrament,
þat ich day sir Arthour,
þe los he bar & þe honour.
2985 A morwe Antor, þat was nouȝt nice,
Went to þe bischop Brice
& teld him, he wist a knizt,
Boþe gent & noble, a plizt:
„þat schuld be our king wiþ lawe,
2990 For he may þat swerd out drawe!“

f. 218 b.

þe bischop was her of bliþe
& sent after Arthour swiþe;

²⁹⁶³⁾ þe] e mit dunklerer tinte auf rasur geschr., danach zwei buchst. ausgeradirt.

- Toforn al þe heize of þe lond
Arþour tok þe swerd in hond;
2995 He drouȝ it out & pelt oȝen:
Wonder hadde mani men,
For no man stiren it no miȝt,
Bot he on, y ȝou plizt.
King & erls, wiþ outen dout,
3000 þer gun him anon rebout,
For to prouen his maner;
Ac euer he was of milde chere,
No couþe her non better deuise,
þan he hem answerd in al wise.
3005 Sir Antor him halp al so,
þat he was king chosen þo;
& þer was boden to his gestening
Mani prince & mani king;
Al, þat euer com wold,
3010 At seyn Jon tide com schold.

- Merlin com hem bitven,
Sir Arþour, þe prince, to sen,
Of whos come miche blis
Sir Arþour made, ywis.
3015 Swiþe anon hete Merlin,
Men schuld ofsende þe douke Vlfin,
Sir Jordains & sir Bretel,
þat hadde yben wiþ Tintagel.
Al þre þai comen swiþe,
3020 Merlin was þer of wel bliþe;
Merlin seyd: „Y wil, ȝe wite,
Hou þat Arþour was bizete!“
þer he told hem ende & ord,
Of his bizete eueri word,
3025 Whar of Vlfin wittnes bar f. 218c.
& seyd, certes, þat he was þar,
& Antor bar witnesse þer to
& seyd, þe king him seyd so.

2997) stiren] e auf rasur geschr.
aus? 3026) certes] r ü. d. z. geschr. 3025) wittnes] u corr.

- þo loued Jordains & sir Bretel
3030 Sir Arthour wiþ hert lel
For loue of Ygerne fre,
Her leuedi þat hadde ybe;
His men þo þai bicomem swiþe,
To help hiñ vp deþe & liue.
3035 þis barouns & eke Merlin
Wenten to þe bischopes in
& al him teld fair & zerne,
Hou Arthour was bizeten of Ygerne;
þe bischop þonked god so gode,
3040 þat he was of þe kinges blode.

Merlin seyd: „Listen meruaile:

- þou is comand strong bataile;
Kinges sex at þis fest
þer schul arere michel chest,
3045 Whare fore ze schul þan wite wel
Boþe in iren & in stiel
& loke, þat ichon held wiþ oþer,
As ich man schal wiþ his broþer;
For ich zou bihot, al þe honour
3050 Schal bileue wiþ zou & wiþ Arthour.“
þar þai biheten, þat non nold
Oþer fail for no gold;
þe bischop seyd, his helping
He schuld haue in al þing.
3055 What helpeþ it make tale long?
þai hem poruaid alle among
Swiþe redi alle þing,
þat schuld to þat coroning.

Mirie it is in time of June,
3060 When fenel hongeþ abrod in toun;

³⁰³⁰⁾ Arthour] r ü. d. z. geschr. ³⁰⁴²⁾ strong] o corr.
aus? ³⁰⁵¹⁾ biheten] bi, e corr. in i oder umgekehrt. ³⁰⁶⁰⁾ toun]
tou auf rasur geschr.

Violet & rose flour
Woneþ þan in maidens bouri.
þe sonne is hot, þe day is long,
Foules make miri song.

- 3065 King Arthour bar coroun
In Cardoile, þat noble toun.
King Lot, þat spoused Belisent,
Com to þis coronment,
He held þe lond of Lyoneis,
- 3070 Man wel strong & curteys,
Wip. fwe hundred noble kniztes,
Hardi & strong & leue to fiztes.
King Nanters com, god it wot,
þat held þe lond of Garlot,
- 3075 Swipe noble man & wiȝt,
& wele coupe fende him in fizt;
He hadde yspoused Blasine,
Arthours soster fair & fine;
Seuen hundred kniztes, y telle þe,
- 3080 He brouȝt wip him of meyne,
Of noble destres & stede,
þat swipe gode were at nede.

f. 218 d.

King Vrien com per to,
þe pridde suster hadde, al so;
3085 þe lond of Gorre he held, ywis,
He was ȝong man of noble pris,
.xx. þousand he brouȝt & fwe,
No better kniztes nere olius.

per com zete king Carodas;
3090 þe king of Strangore he was,
A swiȝe miȝti man of mounde
& knizt of þe tabel rounde;
þei he fer hadde yride,
.vi. hundred kniztes he brouȝt him mide,

3064) Fouleth ms. 3078) dine ms. 3081) noble] danach st,
unterpunktet. destres ms. 3087) þousand] danach &, unterpunktet.
3088) kniztes] t ü. d. z. geschr. 3091) miȝti] das zweite i spät
mit schwärzerer tinte nachgetr. 3092) tabel] danach ein buchst.
ausradirt.

3095 þat wele couþe juste in feld
Wip stef launce vnder scheld.

3ete þer com king Yder,
King of þe marche, of gret pouwer,
Wip him he brouȝt þriddi score
3100 Wiȝt kniȝtes him bifore.

þer com king Angvisant,
King he was of Scotlant;
Of al þe sex he was richest,
Of grete power & ȝongest;
3105 .v. hundred he brouȝt wiþ him, ywis,
Wiȝt & strong kniȝtes & al Scottis;
& mani oþer bi souþe & bi est
þider com to þat fest.
King & baroun, y ȝou say,
3110 Welcomed hem wiþ gret noblay;
Biforn hem al þe bischop Brice
Arthour crouned & dede þe office. ! x
þo þe seruise ydon was, : f. 219 a.
To mete þai turned her pas;
3115 þai founde al redi cloþ & bord,
Vp first ȝede þe heizest lord;
Men hem serued of gret plente,
Mete & drink of gret deynte.
þer was venisoun of hert & bors,
3120 Swannes, pecokes & botors;
Of fesaunce, pertris & of crane
þer was plente & no wane;
þer was piment & clare
To heize lordinges & to meyne;
3125 þai hadden al so noble seruise,
So ani man couþe devise.
þo þai hadde yeten alle,
Heize & lowe in þe halle,
To ȝeuuen ȝiftes, sir Arthour aros,
3130 To heize men of grete los,

³¹¹⁴⁾ hir pas, hir p *auf rasur geschr.*

& to haue of hem vimage,
So it was rizt & her vssage..
As he was fair doinde þis,
King Lot, king Nanters & oþer of priss
3135 Of his ziftes spite hadden
& his coroun anon wiþradden.

Vp þai stertern wiþ gret bost,
Euerich king wiþ al his ost,
& seyd, an herlot for no þing
3140 No schuld neuer ben her king,
& þouȝt wiþ gret deshonour
For to misdo sir Arthour.
Ac Arthour men bitven prest,
Forþ com Merlin in þat chest
3145 & seyd, he nas harlot non,
Ac nobler þan her ani on;
þer he teld al hem bifore,
Hou Arthour was bizeten & bore;
þe wisemen of þat lond
3150 þonked Iesu Cristes sond,
þat her king schuld ben
Of Vterpendragouns stren.
þe barouns seyd to Merlin:
„He was founde þurch wiching þin:
3155 Traitour,“ þai seyd, „verrament,
For al þine enchauntement
No schal neuer no horess stren
Our king no heued ben,
Ac he schal sterue rizt anon!“
3160 Toward þe king & gun gon.
þe king was armed swiþe wel,
& alle his frende in iren & stiel
Oȝain wiþstonden nobliche
& al out driuen, sikerliche,
3165 Wip swerdeſ & kniues sone anon
Out of halle þe kinges fon;

f. 219 b.

³¹⁴⁷⁾ he] e auf rasur geschr. ³¹⁴⁹⁾ of þat lond] auf
rasur geschr. ³¹⁵⁸⁾ barouns] s ii. d. z. geschr. ³¹⁶²⁾ &] om. ms.

þe sex kinges were wel wroþe
& al her barouns sworen her oþe,
No schuld þai neuer tviis eten,
3170 Er þai of Arþour were awreken,
& swiþe telt her paþiloun
A litel wiþ outen Cardoil toun.

þe bischop stode on þe castel wal
& gan to preche to hem alle
3175 & seyd, Arþour was kinges stren,
Of king bizeten & born of quen;
þe king it wist in his liue,
Blisced his child & bad him priue
& tok him to sir Antour
3180 To norice wiþ gret honour;
3if þai wisten neizer blod,
To make him king, it nar nouȝt gode;
„Ac, for he is king & kinges sone,
Y cors al mididone
3185 His enemis wiþ Cristes mouþe
Bi est, bi west, bi norþ & souþe!“
& ‘prut!’ þai seyden euerichon.
Merlin went adoun anon
& Arþours frende anon riȝt
3190 He told, heize & lowe, y plizt;
Four þousand among hem he fond,
Hardi & noble & wiȝt of hond,
Ac alle it were, for soþe, fotmen,
Bot fiftene score & ten;
3195 þe oper were so gret rout,
þat þai wreize þe cuntre about.
Merlin bad hem no þing drede:
„Bot alle doþ bi mi rede!“
Wiþ him þai went to þe gate anon,
3200 Wele atired euerichon.

Merlin made enchaȝtement
& kest gret encumberment

f. 219c.

³¹⁸⁷⁾ *ðe] t (!) ms.*

- Into þe pauilonis, wild fer,
þat brent briȝt so candel cler,
3205 & seyd to hem euerichon :
„Now sle swiþe ȝour fon !“
Forþ þai went on hors gode
To þe pauilouns, þat on fer stode,
& on her fomen smiten anon ;
3210 O liue þai reftten mani on ;
Wip scharpe speres & swerdes kene
Tventi score & fiftene
O liue dawe þai brouȝten þere,
Er þai wist, where þai were,
3215 For her witt was o way go
For þe fer, þat brent so,
& þe oper her wit binam fulliche,
þat com on hem so sodanliche ;
þer were so fele, napeles,
3220 þat litel sen þe slauȝter wes ;
Ac þurch his encumbrement
þai flowen alle, verrament,
Til þai com fer oway,
A mile þennes in o valay ;
3225 þer wipstode þis sex kinges
Oȝain Arthour wiþ fiztinges ;
& her folke wenten oȝen,
Mo þan ten þousand of men,
Fram þis contek þat were ascaped,
3230 Sore adrad & awaped.

þe kinges gadred hem to gider alle
& seyd, gret schame hem was bifalle,
þat Arthour wiþ a litel punay
Hadde ydriuen hem oway.

- 3235 Euerich to oper þus made his mon,
3if þai were of Arthour on
Awreken, alle þai hadde wonne ;
Alle þai swore bi mone & sonne,

³²¹¹⁾ swedes ms.

Hye schulden abigge þat ich striif,
3240 & went ozain als biliif.

Nanter, þe king of Garlot,
Biforn he went, god it wot;
He was a wele limed kniȝt,
Hardi & strong & wise in fiȝt;
3245 A stef launce he bar an hand,
Wip spores he smot his stede strong;
Arthour seize, where he cam,
A stef launce anon he nam,
His fet in þe stiropes he streiȝt,
3250 þe stirop tobent, þe hors aqueiȝt;
þe stede he smot & he forþ glode,
Ozaines þe king Nanters he rode;
Nanters him mett amid þe feld
& hitt Arthour on þe schelde,
3255 þat his launce gan to riue
& tobrast on peces fiue.

f. 219d.

Arthour smot so Nanters þo,
þat his scheld brak atvo,
& of his hors so him cast,
3260 þat al mast his nek tobrast;
þo king Lot seize þis,
Hou his nevou was feld, ywis,
— He was on of þe strongest man
Of al þis lond an for an —
3265 A launce he tok of gret valour
& smot his stede ozain Arthour;
Euerich gan oper wip launces take,
þat al to peces þai gun crake;
Wip so gret ire to gider þai mett,
3270 þat her bodis to gider stet.

So astoned was king Lot,
He lese his sadel, god it wot,
& ouer þe croupe of his stede
To grunde he fel, þat he gan blede;

- 3275 Arthour aforced him to dere,
Ac michel folk com him to were;
þer come swiþe michel route,
To slen Arthour, al aboute;
Arthour drouȝ his swerd anon,
3280 þat he drouȝ out of þe ston;
A kniȝt he toke wip þe egge,
þat him clef heued & rigge
Into þe sadel, so seyt þe bok.
Al he hirt, þat he toke;
3285 So sore he leyd on al aboute,
þat þai his dintes gun doute.
þis to kinges weren arisen,
þat were first of him agrisen;
þai & her feren four
- f. 220a.
- 3290 Wip four launces smiten Arthour
Al at ones, þat was no glewe,
& Arthour stede adoun þrewe,
þe king bi neþen, þe stede aboue:
For soþe, sir Arthour was a swowe.
- 3295 Sir Antour al þis ysay,
Bretel, Vlfin & sir Kay;
þai com swiþe to þis rideing,
Fortho helpen her king;
Kay ful rizt bigan to bere
- 3300 To king Angvisaunt a spere;
He smot him purch out þe scheld
& his hauberk felefeld,
& purch his scholder an ellen long,
& of his hors to grounde he þrong,
- 3305 & zete he feld, verrament,
King Carodas wip þat dent:
þat was a dint of gret mounde,
þat tway kinges þrewe to grounde!
Vlfin & Nanters met þo,
- 3310 þat her launces brosten atvo;
To gider wip bodis þai metten,
þat boþe to grounde þai stetten;

3296) Vlfim *ms.*

3302) hauber *ms.*

- þe hors hem lay anoward,
þat hem þouȝt chaunce hard.
- 3315 Antor wiþ launce þe king Yder
To grounde bar of his destrer;
Bretel & king Vrien
Her launces brust hem bitven.
þer whiles king Lot wiþ gret rout,
- 3320 To sle Arthour he was about.
Kay, his steward, yseize þis;
He was neize of his witt, ywis;
Wiþ his swerd he gan him stere,
His ȝong lord for to were;
- 3325 Wiþ pure strengþe of swerdes dint
King Lot he feld, verrament,
& was about, him to slen,
Ac oper stirt hem bitven.
þer kidde Kay, þat he was wiȝt,
- 3330 For he no feined neuer of fiȝt,
Til þat Arthour, y ȝou plizt,
Was opon his stede diȝt;
& þo he was opon his stede,
Wiþ swerd he gan about rede;
- 3335 Sum he binam scholder & arm
& sum þe liif, it nas non harm;
Non no durst abide more
His stroke, for he smot so sore.
Her ȝe schul vnderstond,
- 3340 þat men o fot of þis lond
Helden wiþ king Arthour
& dede him wel gret honour,
Wiþ axes, staues, & wiþ bowe
Dede so, þat alle þe oper flowe,
- 3345 & þis kinges flowen also;
Arthour after hem gan to go,
& so he rode, wel fele he feld,
þat no more no tale told.
He ouertok þe king Yder
- 3350 & wold him heued wiþ his swerd cler;

f. 220 b.

³³⁴⁰) [þis] [þ von auffallender form, corr. aus? i corr. aus e.

³³⁵⁰) him]

Ac a litel forbi he smot,
His hors he hit, god it wot,
þe nek he karf adoun to grounde:
Doun fel Yder, bi godes mounde.
3355 Ozain turned þo kinges fiue
& halp him oway wiþ þe liue;
Ac ich zou swere, in þat rideing
þai lauȝt woundes wel sore biteing.
Yder þai keuerd, napeles,
3360 & þo he brouȝt on hors wes,
þai flowen al so swiþe anon,
As her steden miȝten gon,
& swore al wiþ wordes flegge,
King Arthour it schuld abigge.
3365 King Arthour þo went oȝen,
To gider he gadred al his men
& departede wiþ hem þe tresour,
þat he wan wiþ gret honour;
& þo he þonked þe king of glorie,
3370 þat him hadde zouen þe victorie,
To ouercomen his fomen.
In to Cardoil he went oȝen
& held fest noble & gent
Wiþ his meyne, verrament;
3375 Al, þat euer wald þider gon,
Curteyseliche were ressainted anon;
þis fest last fourteniȝt,
þat was riche & noble, a plizt.

f. 220 c.

þo þe fest was ydo,
3380 Merlin com þe king to;
To Londen he bad him heize
& þer schewe his curteisie,
& when he com þer, saunfayl,
He wold him schewe gret conseil,
3385 Ac nouȝt, ar he had fest ymade
To al þe lond & made ful glade.

3367) deparde ms. 3375) Of al ms. 3382) curteisie] *auf rasur geschr.*

King Arthour dede his *conseyl*
& went to Londen, saunfail,
Where þe king, sir Arthour,
3390 Was afong wip gret honour.

Sone after seyn Jones misse
þe king lete bidden more & lesse
Into Londen to his fest;
Swiche he made & held onest
3395 þurch þe *conseyl* of Merlin;
His seriauntes po þurch him,
Merlin tok to ich mester,
þat sleize were & of power.
po drouȝ bi half þe clerk Merlin
3400 þe king Arthour & eke Vlfín
& Bretel & sir Antour
& Kay, þe steward of valour,
& seyd: „Listen to me now,
For soþe, ichil telle þou:
3405 xi. kinges & doukes on
Han ysworn, Arthour to slon;
Swiche is her parlement
Now in þe marche, verrament;
Oȝaines hem ȝe no haue no miȝt,
3410 Bot ȝe hauen help to fizt;
Y wil þou telle, what do ȝe mote,
ȝif ȝe wil finden bote:
Mi lord Vterpendragon
Wan vnder him þe king Ban
3415 & his broþer Bohort al so;
No better bodis no mowe go,
þai were sworn to Vter, mi lord:
To hem ich rede sende word,
To lesse Breteine, for it is nede,
3420 þat Vterpendragon is dede;

3390) gre ms. 3393) to] *danach londei*, unterpunktet.
3396) He seriaunted ms. 3397) tok] *danach po*, unr., ms.
3399) clerk] cle *verklext*. 3400) Arthour] *auf rasur geschr.*
3407) is] *danach now*, unr., ms.

f. 220 d.

3e mot hem sigge, verrament,
þat he vnto þis parlement
Wip outen abod wel swiþe come,
To don vimage Arthour, his sone;
3425 þai wil comen anon, y wot,
& help þe oȝain king Lot
& elles where wiþ her power,
Zou worþ to hem wel gret mister
Her afterward, par ma fay,
3430 Ichil zou tel som day.
þis message, sir Vlfin,
þou most bere bi conseil min,
& þi fere schal be sir Bretel;
Loke, ze ben atired wel
3435 Wip gode armes, on gode stede,
þer to zou worþ a litel nede,
Ar ze comen oȝain to ous:
Now heizeþ zou for loue of Jesus!¹⁴
Al þis hem liked wel,
3440 & sir Vlfin & sir Bretel
Wele hem atired, sikerliche,
& went forþ wel hastiliche.
þo þai com þe se bizounde,
A gret wildernisse þai founde
3445 Bitven Fraunce & Breteyne,
þai seize mani mounteyn & pleine.
þo þai seize a litel hem abone
Seuen kniȝtes yarmed come,
Of wiche to her steden smiten
3450 & to hem ward gun priken
Wip loude cri, & bad hem zeld;
Bretel tok his launce & scheld,
þat o kniȝt sone he mett
& wiþ his scharp launce him gret;
3455 He bar him purch þe prote anon,
þat doun he fel ded so ston.

³⁴²⁷) elles] e corr. aus? wiþ] om. ms. ³⁴⁵⁶) doun] ded ms.

þat oper he mett ozainward,
A dint he zaf him so hard,
þe launce ran þe brini þurch,
3460 þe kniȝt fel ded in a forwe;
In his falling brast þe spere,
Bretel bar it no ferþere.
Oper to per come glide,
Vlfin gan ozain hem ride
3465 Opon a stede stef & strong
Wip a launce gret & long;
þat on he bar þurch scheld & hat,
þat neuer seþpen mete no at;
þe oper ozain Vlfin brac his spere,
3470 Ac he no miȝt Vlfin dere;
Vlfin him zaue a dint of wo
þurch out þe membre & sadel also;
Stede & kniȝt ouerþrewe anon;
þe kniȝt brast his nek bon,
3475 Vlfines launce tobrac.
þe pre come þo gret rac;
þe oper foure, forto wreken
þe pre, gun her launces breken
& her noiper hirt nouȝt;
3480 Bretel kidde, þat he was auȝt,
His swerd he drouȝ, þat on he hit,
His heued fram þe bodi he kit.
þat oper oftoke sir Vlfin
& so him hit on þe bacin,
3485 þat he him cleue to þe top,
So ous seyt þe Brout, for sop.
þe oper kniȝt, her lord þat was,
Wel swiþe went ozain his pas;
3if he abod ani longere,
3490 Wele he seize, it was his lere.
þis ich kniztes four & pre
Wip Claudas hadde ybe,

f. 221 a.

³⁴⁵⁷⁾ mett] auf rasur geschr.; danach t. unterpunktet.
auf rasur geschr. ³⁴⁷¹⁾ din ms.

³⁴⁶²⁾ it]

Wip Cladas hadde werred oȝan
þe king Bohort & þe king Ban;
3495 Cladas was þo ouercome
Priueliche & went to Rome,
Him to puruay sum socour,
To wreke him of his deshonour.
þer while þo kniztes, cert,
3500 Were ywent in to desert,
To libben bi her robrie;
Ac þer hem fel gret vilanie.
þer after Vlfis forþ him rode
& eke Bretel, wip outen abod;
3505 No lete þai neuer jornaying,
Til þai com to Ban, þe king;
& þo he com bifor Ban,
þus his wordes he bigan:

„Jesus Crist, heuen king,
3510 þe loke, sir Ban, þe king,
& þi meine so gent & fre,
þat ich here about þe se!
þe barouns of Breteine þe more
Tiding þe sent, þat rewep hem sore:
3515 Vterpendragon, þi lord, is ded
& is departed purch godes red;
King is made his sone Arthour
& þe gretep wip gret honour
& bad þe & þi broþer gent
3520 Com to his parlement,
For to wite & vnderstond
Of þe lawes of his lond!“

f. 221 b.

King Ban wip noble cher
Welcomed þo messanger
3525 & seyd, her wil do he wold
& his broþer al so schold.

3509) Shus(!) ms. 3519) þi] his ms.

- þe messangers þo he made
Wele at ese; wiþ gret ferrade
Bohort þer after swiþe he sent
3530 Bi on aſent, & swiþe went
In to þis lond wiþ mani fair,
Forte se þe kinges air.
In euerich toun fram Portesmouþe
To Londen of gret valoure
3535 Men made song & hopinges
Ozain þe come of þis kinges.
No was wonded for drie no wete,
þat in lond eueri strete
Was bihonged, ich say for soþ,
3540 Wiþ mani pal & riche cloþ;
Euerich man of ich mester
Hem rideñ ozain wiþ fair ater;
In euerich strete damisels
Karols ledden fair & fels.
3545 þo þai were to court ycome,
þai were hendeliche welcome;
Him selue þe king Arthour
Hem com ozain wiþ gret honour,
Curteiseliche & hem gan calle
3550 & anon ledde hem to halle
Wiþ her broþer Gvinbaut,
Noble clerk, so dieu me saut;
In þe sterres he was þe best deuine
In al þe warld, wiþ outen Merlin.
f. 221c.
3555 þer atwot þe clerk Merlin
At þe fest þe douke Vlfin
& Bretel, þat was his felawe,
Hou þai hadde þe kniztes yslawe;
Ac al þat euer herden þis,
3560 Wonder hadde þer of, ywis,
þat he told her bataile,
& þer no com nouȝt, saunfaile,
& namliche Bohort & Ban
& Gvinbaut, þe þridde man.

3538) in lond] irlond ms.

- 3565 þere þo men mizt yhere
þe queintise of þe spere,
Of þe sonne, of mone & ster,
When þe welken turned of herre,
& of mani priue werk
- 3570 Bitven Merlin & Gvimbaut, þe clerk.
Her after sone Merlin swore
& sir Vlfin & sir Antore
& sir Kay & sir Bretel
Tofore þe king on o messel,
- 3575 þat Arthour was Vter stren
Bi Ygerne, þat was his quen.
þer afterward sone, for soþ,
þe kinges swore Arthour hold oþ
& deden him also swiþe omage,
- 3580 So it was rizt & vsage;
& þo held Arthour fest, a plizt,
þat last ful fourtennizt;
Of ich riches & deinte,
Certes, þer was gret plente;
- 3585 þo was þer made a turnament,
þat was swiþe noble & gent,
Of bacheler & zong knizt,
Swiþe strong & swiþe wiȝt.
þo, þat were of zond half,
- 3590 Ozain þo weren of pis half.
þe best was Lucan, þe boteler,
A zong knizt of grete power,
Wiþ outen þe steward Kay,
He was a knizt of gret noblay;
- 3595 Grimfles, Maruc & Gumas,
Ich of hem wel noble was;
Placides & eke Driens,
Holiás & Graciens,
Marlians & Flaundrius,
- 3600 Sir Meliard & eke Drukius,
& al so Breoberuis,
þese born oway þe priis;
Noman no herd of fairer

f. 221 d.

3603) herd] h corr. aus?

Tournament no nobler.

- 3605 *þo al þis mirþe was ydo,*
Merlin com þe king to
& to hem seyd: „Bieu segnours,
3e ben yswore to king Arthours,
3e mot boþe wiþ him ride
3610 *To Leodegan of Carmalide;*
For bi mi rede he schal spouse
Gvenour, his douhter precious;
Sche is boþe fair & wise,
Of al þe lond sche berþ þe priis;
3615 *Hir fader Leodegan*
Is a swiþe noble man,
Ac king Rion, wiþ outen lesinges,
Him werref opon wiþ tventi kinges:
þere ȝe mot him help, ywis,
3620 *Forto win los & pris!“*
„Certes,“ quaþ king Ban, þe gent,
„þer to we han gret talent,
3if king Cladas in our lond
þer whiles nold ous wait no schond;
3625 *For he ous haþ werred long*
Wiþ vnriȝt & michel wrong.“
„Nay,“ quaþ Merlin, „drede ȝou nouȝt:
3if þou lesest þer fore ouȝt,
For þe mountaunce of pani on
3630 *þou schalt han hundred ozan!“*
„To þat couenaunt,“ quaþ Ban, þe king,
„We beþ redi in al þing,
Anon to go wiþ king Arthour,
To his manschipe & his honour!“
- 3635 Merlin seyd: „Bi seyn Jon,
Arst ȝe mot anoþer don:
.xi. kinges & a douke
Beþ hiderward, wiþ outen dout,
To slen Arthour & his man,
3640 In þe forest of Rokeingham;

³⁶¹⁹⁾ ȝe] auf rasur geschr. ³⁶²¹⁾ king] g auf rasur geschr.

³⁶⁰⁷⁾ sengours ms.

þere ze mot help him were f. 222a.

Vnder scheld wiþ swerd & spere!“

„Allas!“ quap Ban, „for Cristes sond,

We no haue no folk of our lond!“

3645 Quap Merlin: „So god me spedē,

No schal zou faile non at nede!“

þer it was forboden anon,

Ich man bi way for to gon,

Noþer mile tene no fiue,

3650 Opon pain of her liue;

þis was don for non oþer þing,

Bot for a-spies andwaiteing,

Where þurch alle weren yhent,

þat fram þe barouns weren ysent,

3655 & non com ozain, verrament,

To wray þe kinges parlement.

3ete Merlin went to Rokingham,

Vlfin & oþer wiþ him he nam,

Mani pauilouns & telt,

3660 & dede per in fleschies & selt

& oþer store of mele & win,

& tok it to lok Sir Vlfin

& bad, he no schuld lete passe

Noþer þe more no þe lasse,

3665 þat mitz bere ani tiding

To þe barouns of her king

No of his parlement,

No þai no deden, verrament.

þo zede Merlin to Ban, þe king,

3670 & tok of him his kinges ring,

& to king Bohort al so;

To lasse Breteine he zede þo

Ouer þe se in on niȝt,

Fele iurnes, y zou plizt,

3675 For in þe Brut ich it lerne,

To Leonce of Paerne,

þat was kinges Banes steward,

A wiseman wiþ hore bard,

³⁶⁵⁷⁾ Rokingham] zwischen a und m ü. d. z. ein abkürzungszichen für a oder ar, unr.

- & to Farien, wel noble kniȝt,
3680 Bohortes steward þat was, a pliȝt,
& schewed hem her lordes ring
& bad, þai schuld him socour bring.
Leonce and eke Farien
To gider brouȝten her men,
3685 Fourti þousand þat were told,
On stede in armes swiþe beld.
.xv. þousende þai leten þere,
Her lond to kepen & to were,
And .xxv. þousend wiþ him toke,
3690 So we finden in þe boke,
Wiche ouer se þe clerk Merlin
Brouȝt & loged bi Vlfin.
To kinges court he gan þo fare
& asked, zif þai weren zare,
3695 For her fomen were neizehond.
King Ban seyd: „For godes sond,
Whi no hastow brouȝt me socour?“
Merlin seyd: „Al rady to zour honour!“
þo þai dizt hem, swain & kniȝt,
3700 & wenten þider þat ich nizt.

t. 222b.

- þo þai þider weren ycome,
þai ordeind & told her þrome;
Fourti þousand men þai founde,
To batail men of gret mounde.
3705 Michel ioie made king Ban
& Bohort al so of her man;
For þai deden þere finde
.xxv. þousinde.
Arthour hadde þousandes fiftene
3710 & na mo, al so y wene,
For al þe barouns & þe kinges
Were in þe marche, wiþ outen lesinges,
Wiþ al þe men, y zou say,
þat þai miȝt hem puruay.

³⁶⁹⁶⁾ King] g corr. aus? ³⁷⁰²⁾ þai] om. ms.

3715 To slen Arthour, lasse & more,
Al þai hadde to gider swore;
Ac, for sope, non of hem
No wist of Arthoures men;
Ac we finden in þe boke,
3720 þat þai hadde þer bispoke,
On Arthour wiþ her route
þai wold happen al aboute
& hem to taken in þe forest,
When þai seïzen time best.

3725 To þis tresoun for to don
Com þe king Clarion,
þat was king of Norþ-Humberlond,
Wiþ seuen þousand kniȝtes strong.

3730 King Brangores, þat held Strangore, f. 222 c.
þider com, bi godes ore,
& brouȝt wiþ him fие þousand kniȝt,
In bataile þat were strong & wiȝt.

3735 Cradelman, king of Norþ-Wales,
Hardi man & wise of tales,
Sex þousend þider he brouȝt,
Of liue or deþe þat litel rouȝt.

3740 A king þer com of an hundred kniȝtes,
His name was cleped bi riztes,
For he no ladde neuer lasse rout,
þan an hundred kniȝtes, about;
He was king wel fer bi norþ,
A wel strong man & michel worþ;
Kniȝtes he brouȝt four þousinde,
Men no miȝt non better finde.

3745 King Lot, þat held londes two,
Leonis & Dorkaine al so,

³⁷²⁹⁾ Brangores] b, mit schwärzerer tinte auf rasur geschr.
³⁷⁴⁶⁾ Leonis] nach e i, unterpunktet.

He brouȝt seuen þousend kniztes,
Swiþe hardi & stronge in fiztes.

- 3750 Ʒete þer com king Carodas,
þat of þe rounde table was;
Seuen þousand he brouȝt also;
No better kniztes no miȝt go.

- Nanters, þe king of Garlot,
þider com, god it wot,
3755 Vp Arthour, þat was wrop & grim,
Sex þousinde he brouȝt wiþ him,
Stronge kniztes & noble, saunfaile,
þat wise & hardi were in bataile.

- 3760 Ʒete þer come king Vrien
Wiþ sex þousand of wiȝt men,
Wele atired on gode destrers,
Wiþ outen fotmen & squiers.

- 3765 Ʒete þer com king Yder
Wiþ fwe þousand of gret power.

- 3770 Ʒete þer com king Angvisaunt,
þe riche king of Scotlaunt,
Wiþ sex þousende kniztes beld
Boþe in toun & eke in feld.

- 3775 Ʒete þer come þe douc Sestas,
Erl of Canbernic he was;
Arundel was hoten þo
Cambernic, wiþ outen no;
He brouȝt wiþ him þousandes fwe, f. 222d.
Non better nere olius.

- 3780 Alle þese priueliche
To Rokingham com, sikerliche,
& loged hem in þe forest,
Stille, wiþ outen ani chest,

3748) stronge] r u. d. z. geschr. 3754) wot] wo auf
rasur geschr.

Wip al, þat þai procoure mist,
3780 Boþe of baroun & of kniȝt.
Ac Arþour was wel stilly
Wip his folk neize hem bi;
Noþer baroun no king
Nist nouȝt of his being.

3785 Pe ferþ niȝt after her soiour
Merlin bad pe king Arþour
& Bohort & king Ban,
Hem atiren & her man
& com wip him anon riztes
3790 & kiþe, ȝif þai were noble kniȝtes.
Boþe in iren & in stiel
þai hem armed swiþe wel
& wip Merlin went, y say,
Ar day þre mile way.

3795 In þis time Lot, þe king,
In bed was in gret meteing;
Him þouȝt, water, winde & rain
In her teld was hem ozain,
Her paþilouns ouerþrewe þe þonder.
3800 He ofwoke & had wonder;
His sweuen he teld his feren hard,
þai him axed, whiderward
Him þouȝt, þat his sweuen bar;
þe soþe anon he teld þar.
3805 Þiderward wel swiþe an hye
þai senten spies, forþo aspie.
þis spies anon forþ stetten
& wip Merlin sone metten
& wip Arþour, king of los;
3810 Of þat meteing hem agros.
Merlin hem seize & bad hem bide;
Fleand oway þai gun ride

3798) f. umgestellt im ms. 3798) teþ ms. 3800) ofwoke]
nach of he, ausradirt.

- & euer grad: „Traisoun, traisoun!“
þe oper her of herd þe soun
3815 & hem atired, verrament;
Ac Merlin cast enchauntment,
þat her pauilouns, on & alle,
To þe grounde gun to falle,
&, so ich in þe boke yfinde,
3820 þe mest part he made blinde.
King Arthour & Bohort & Ban
Opon hem smiten onan,
& eke alle her ferrede
Wip hors fete on hem trede,
3825 Wip speres stong, wip swerdes korwe
Ten þousende kniztes bi þe morwe,
Ar ani of hem miȝt hem stere
Oper sen abouten, hem to were.
Ac, naþeles, þis .xi. kinges
3830 Flowen o way wip michel genge
A litel pennes in til a lowe;
A loude horn þai gun blowe,
Of her kniztes & gaderd hem so
To gider þritti þousende & mo.
- 3835 Ich king *had* to his dale
þre þousand gret & smale,
Her hors girten & sadels rizt
& made hem redi forto fizt.
On þe hille þai gun ten,
3840 Arthour & his folk to sen;
þo seize þai seuen baners,
- Of whiche Lucan, þe boteler,
Of þe first maister was,
For swiþe hardi man he was.
- 3845 Grifles ladde þe secounde,
A wiȝt man of gret mounde;

3818) gun] auf rasur geschr. 3826) bi] i ü. d. z. geschr.
3831) penntes ms. 3835) had] xv ms. 3841) þo] o mit
dunklerer tinte aufgefrischt.

þe pridde folc ladde Bretel,
Strong kniȝt & doinde wel.

þe ferþ baner ladde Kay,
8850 þe kinges steward of noblay.

þe fift baner ladde Vlfin,
A noble baroun gode afin.
Ich hadde of pis to his baner
þre pouſand of gret power.

— 3855 Arthour on hors sat stef so stok
& gouerned þe seuend flok
& ladde wiþ him four pouſinde
Wizt men & wel doinde.

þe oper no miȝt ben ykidde,
3860 Bi hinden hem þai weren yhidde;
King Lot, king Nanters & king Vrien f. 223 b.
& king Carodas wiþ his men,
þis foure bi hinde were
& lete þe oper al forp fare,

3865 & in þe sonnes vpriseing
Bigan, certes, þis rideing.
þer miȝt men se þe baners rotен,
þe stedes forþ wel zern schoten;

þo þai first oper metten,
3870 Ich oper wiþ launces gretten;
Mani in sadles held hem stille,
& mani al so of hors felle;
Mani brac his spere þare,
Mani oper purch out bar.

3875 Kai þan felled þe king Yder
Wiþ his spere of his destrer;
þe king of hundred kniȝtes
Kay doun feld anon riztes.

Kay vp stirt & king Yder,
3880 A fot fouȝten wiþ swerdeſ cler;

3848) Strong & doinde kniȝt wel ms.

3865) þe] þ oorr. aus?

On boþe half so com her men
& swiþe stirten hem bitven.
þer come Lucan, þe boteler,
& bar Eustas of his destrer;
3885 Eustas, þe douke of Arundel,
Bi Yder stode & werd him wel.

Grifles feld þe king Clarion;
þe king of hundred kniztes com
& hit Grifles bi þe side;
3890 Of his stede he gan doun glide;
Vp strit Grifles & stode bi Kay
& fauȝt so a kniȝt of noblay.
Forþ com Vlfín & eke Lucan
& feld king Cradelman,
3895 & wiþ oþer kniȝtes mo
Riden he þese kniȝtes to,
þe douke Grifles & þe steward Kay
On hors þai brouȝt, par ma fay;
þo þai were mounted, y sigge, a pliȝt,
3900 þai kedden her noble miȝt:
þan þe king of þe hundred kniȝtes
Kay doun feld anon riztes,
& þre kniȝtes al a rawe
He binam per her liif dawe.
3905 Arþour wiþ his miȝti hand
Feld king Brangors & king Anguisaunt.
þo were a fot seuen kinges,
Gret slauȝter was at her rideinges,
þat þai no miȝt nouȝt keuer her destrers
3910 For her alder powers.

f. 223 c.

King Lot & king Carodas
& Nanters, þat bi hinde was,
& eke þe king Vrien
Wib twelf þousand of strong men,

3892) knizt] iz auf rasur geschr. 3896) þese] om. ms.
3904) her] er auf rasur geschr. 3914) poustand] s ü. d. z. nachgetr.

- 3915 þe hors of baundoun lete þai frem
& come flingand wiþ al her men;
So Arthours folk þai metten
& of her steden mani stetten;
In þat ich hard meteinges
3920 Al þai socourd her kinges
& brouȝten hem on her steden;
þe better þo þai miȝt speden.
þer wer fele of hors yfled
& kniȝtes yslawe vnder scheld;
3925 Ac þer schewed king Arthour
At þat batayl gret vigour;
Of his men mani feld ware,
Now he was here, now he was tare,
& chalanged his men bi riȝt
3930 & wiȝtlich bigan, for hem to fizt;
Wiþ his swerd of gode egge
Sum he clef to þe rigge,
& sum he smot þe nek atvo,
& sum he smot þe schulder fro. •
- 3935 þe oþer kinges were wiȝt also,
Arthours folk þai deden wo;
.xxx. pouȝtand, for soþe y wene,
Fouȝten þer ozain sextene;
Lucan, Grifles & king Arthour
3940 Vlfin, Bretel & sir Antour,
þis ich seuen, saunfail,
þe cark hadde of þe batayl.
þe folk descomfit hadde men sen,
No hadde her miȝt þe better ben;
3945 Ac in al þis surcarking
Merlin com to Ban, þe king,
& seyd: „Sir, time it is,
þou help king Arthour, ywis!“
Al so swiþe þan Ban, þe king,
3950 Went forþ wiþ outen letting.

f. 223 d. -

3915) frem] r corr. aus e.

- Farien, a kniȝt of gret power,
He was douke of þe first bane³⁹⁵²⁾;
Maruc loked þe secounde,
A kniȝt of swiþe gret mounde;
3955 Of þe pridde maister was
þe noble king Belias;
þe ferþ ledde Bleoberiis,
A baroun of wel noble pris;
þe fif ladde Gracian,
3960 Strong baroun & noble man;
þes fiue, so y finde,
Led of men fiftene pouſinde;
þer ich of hem hastiliche
Went hem forþ, hardiliche.
3965 Bohort afterward cam
Wiþ four pouſand of noble man;
In þis world wele to fizt
No were yhelden non better kniȝt.
Al so þai maden þis wailing,
3970 þe oþer com on hem smiteing
Wiþ her speres & feld to grounde
Mani, þat þai þere founde.

- In þis time king Lot
Went out of þe plas, god it wot,
3975 & king Nanters & king Vrien
Wiþ mani noble of her men,
& king Carodas, þe wizt,
& king of þe hundred kniȝt.
Iese so michel pite seizen,
3980 þat þai wepe wiþ her eizen
For þe slezster of her man
& sore þe dede of king Ban,
& Bohort al so, his broþer:
þere no schuld go no noþer;
3985 Adoun þai lizt & her hors girten,
Wiþ outen stirop þer in stirten;

3952) bane *ms.*

3964) When *ms.*

Euerich of hem nome in his hond
A launce boþe stef & strong;
King Nanters, king Lot, king Karodas,
3990 þis men armed wip gret ras;
King Ban þai hitten alle at ones,
Adoun þai prewe him on þe stones;
King of þe hundred knaiztes & king Vrien, f. 224.
King Bohort þai rideñ ozen
3995 & hitten him boþe at a dent
& feld his stede, verrament;
Ac Ban vp stirt & Bohort al so
& wele hem wered o fot bo;
þe oper hem were about to dere,
4000 Ac manliche þai gun hem were.
King Arthour seize doun king Ban,
Swipe wo him was for þan;
His stede he smot þider anon,
A kniȝt, þat was about, king Ban to slou,
4005 On þe helme he smot, for soþ,
þurch helme & palet to þe toþ
& pelt doun þat bodi dede
& tok þat stede gode at nede.
King Ban þan purch fine miȝt
4010 On þat stede lepe, a plizt;
þo he þe stede was opon,
He zaue a nedel of his fon.
Anoþer king Arthour hitte,
þe bodi to þe nauel he kitte
4015 Fro þe scholder, y tel ȝou;
It was a dint of gret vertu;
Arthour pelt adoun þat buke,
þat hors he lad Bohort, þe douke;
þo þai on hors seten boþe,
4020 þai were aschamed & eke wrop;
So we finden on þe boke:
Who þat ani of hem oftoke,
Of liue no hadde þai no bote,
Ac to þe dep went, god it wot.
4025 What gette it, al to tellen here?
Arthur & Ban & her fere

- So michel pople toforn hem slowe,
þat her enimis hem wiþdrowe
& gun to fle to on brigge,
4030 þat þai toforn dede ligge.
þer spac Morganor on hast,
King Vriens sone o bast,
— He was on of þe best kniȝt,
þat miȝt held swerd in fiȝt —
4035 He seyd: „Sir, listneþ alle:
O our folk we moten calle
Bi on horn, þat y schal blawe,
Oper þai worþ alle yslawe
& destroied of our fon!“
4040 þe kinges seyd: „þat is wele don!“

f. 224 b.

- Morganor þo gan to blowe,
þat folk so gun his horn knowe,
Swiftlich al þai gunnen flen
& to þe kinges socour ten.
4045 þo þai comen to þe brigge,
Ich on oper gan to legge;
Ac, al so wolf þe schip gan driue,
Arthour smot hem after swipe,
& king Ban & her men
4050 Slouȝ of hem þousendes ten.
þer þai hadde mani slawe,
Ac Merlin gan hem wiþdrawe
& seyd, ozain wende þai schold,
þe siluer to part & þe gold
4055 & mani oper riche þinges,
þat þer hadde left þe riche kinges.
Arthour þouȝt gode afin
þe riche conseyl of Merlin:
þe oper oway þai leten flen
4060 & gan ozain wiþ his folk ten.
Of gold, of siluer & noblesse
þai founden grete riches;

4034) *danach folgende zwei Verse:* He was on of þe best kniȝt,
þat miȝt weld swerd in fiȝt ms.

Arthour it ȝaf Bohort & Ban
& bad it part among her man;
4065 So þai deden wiþ gret honour
To hem & to þe king Arthour.

After þat gentil parting
To Londen went Arthour, þe king,
& king Bohort & king Ban
4070 & alle her noble man;
Fourten nizt Arthour held fest
Swiþe noble & swiþe onest.
þo þe fest ydon was,
Merlin teld Arthour þat cas;
4075 „Arthour,“ he seyd þis þinges,
„No drede þe nomore of þis kinges;
Now þai han ymade it touȝ,
Sone hem worþ to don ynouȝ,
Er þan com þe trinite.

f. 224 v.

4080 Ich wald ȝiuen o cite,
Wiþ þat þai hadde made acord
& þat þou were made her lord,
For here is comand to þis lond
Gret hunger, & here gong
4085 Sex hundred Sarrazins,
Fortho awreke þe douke Angis;
þis lond þai comen al about,
Of hem no þarf þe noþing dout;
Her schal com a bachelrie,
4090 Of þe to haue cheualrie
& of þe to ben made kniȝt,
& for þi lond þai wil fizt;
þai schul don mani agrise,
Of hem þi los schal arise,
4095 þou schalt hem alle knowe wel
& of þe kinges wite eueridel.

4072) onest] davor wizt, unterpunktet. 4079) E ms. 4096 wite]
danach wel, unterpunktet.

- þai schullen hauen in her lond
Of wer to don ful her hond;
& ich zou sigge, Bohort & Ban,
4100 Sendep hom al zour man,
Zour lond to loke & ouersen,
Bot it swiþe fewe ben.
Arthour schal alle his tounes
Astore wip flesche & venisouns,
4105 Wip corn & mele & men strong,
Ozain her fon to werre long;
& þou, Arthour, me schalt abide
Bitven Inglond & Carmelide
In þe toun of Brekenho,
4110 Til ich me self þe com to!⁴¹⁰⁰⁾
þis was do, wip outen doute:
Arthour his tounes stored aboute
Wip corn, mele, flesche & fische
& wip men strong, ywis.
4115 þe douke þo, wip outen fable,
Of Cardoil hadde ben constable;
Of Londen, bi Merlines rade,
He was þo constable ymade.

- Leonce he sent hom of Paerne,
4120 Ban & Bohort swiþe ȝerne
& þe douke al so Pharien
& þe baroun Gracien,
Wip her ost þe lond to loke,
So we finden on þe boke.
4125 King Arthour, Bohort & Ban
Wele wip sex score of her man
Went hem to Brekenho,
So Merlin hem seyd to,
Bitven Inglond & Carmelide,
4130 Merlines com forto abide,
þat þo fro hem was ywent,
þai nist whider, verrament.

f. 224 d.

⁴¹⁰⁰⁾ & sendep ms. ⁴¹¹²⁾ his] danach ein buchst. ausradirt.
⁴¹¹³⁾ Der hs. zufolge wäre diese zeile einzurücken. ⁴¹²⁰⁾ Desgl.

þo þai hadde þere a while abiden,
On a day out þai ride[n]
4135 & seize com bi on lowe
An eld cherl wiþ aruwe & bowe;
þe cherl bent his bowe sone
& smot a doke mididone,
& wiþ a bolt afterward
4140 Anon he hitt a maulard.

þis foules he nam þo,
Ozain þe king he gan go;
Arthour him asked, as y zou tellc,
3if he wold þo foules selle.
4145 þis old man seyd, par ma fay,
He wold hem ziue for monay;
þe king him axed, so most he liue,
Hou he wold þe foules ziue;
þeld man seyd: „Sir king,
4150 Nouzt þou schust make hucking,
Ac þou schust hote hem bere forþ
& tviis ziue me þe worþ,
For ich þe wold soner ziue
þis to foules, so mot y liue,
4155 þan þou a pani of þi gold,
þat liþ bidoluen depe in mold!“
Wiþ þis word, þe foules to,
Sir Kay he tok hem bo.

To þat eld seyd Arthour:
4160 „Who teld þe of mi tresour?“
„Certes,“ he seyd, „þe clerk Merlin,
For swiþe late y spac wiþ him!“
þe king nold him leue nouzt,
þeld man seyd, him no rouzt,
4165 „For, king,“ he seyd, „þou hast of me,
& y no haue nouzt of þe!“
Bretel & Vlf[n] him vnderstode
& seyd anon wiþ milde mode:

f. 225 a.

4136) Aneld ms. bowe] b corr. aus d.

4153) Fo ms.

4170 „Sir, god þe zeld þis foules to :
ȝiftes þou hast him zeuen mo,
& ȝete þou schalt wiþ godes mizt
Mo presantes & ȝiftes him dizt!“
þer þai wisten bi Vlfin,
þat þis eld was Merlin.

- 4175 Merlin him schewed to king Arthour,
& he him kist wiþ gret honour,
& Bohort & Ban & oþer swiþe
Of his come weren bliþe.
A damisel of gret valour
4180 Was po comen to king Arthour,
To knowe him lord & don omage,
þat sche no hadde afterward damage;
& alle hir kniȝtes deden al so,
þat wiþ hir were comen poȝ
4185 Lizanor þat may was hot,
Erl Siweinis douhter, god it wot.
þo Arthour hir hadde yseize,
Bi hir he wald haue yleize;
So he dede purch Merlin,
4190 A child he biȝat hir in,
þat wex seþpen of gret mounde
& kniȝt of þe table rounde.
þere þai soiournud euerichon,
Til þat lenten were half agon.

4195 Lete we hem þer stille be
& of þe kinges telle we,
.xi., þat flowen are,
Hou þai bicomen & whare.

In time of winter alange it is:
4200 þe foules lesen her blis,
þe leues fallen of þe tre,
Rein alangeþ þe cuntrē;
Maidens leseþ here hewe,
Ac euer hye louieþ, þat be trewe.

- 4205 þe kinges, þat descomfit ware,
Al day & al niȝt hadde yfare
On hors, armed, wiþ gret hete,
Wiþ outen drink, wiþ outen mete,
Til þai com to Norhant,
- 4210 A fair cite of gode waraunt.
Norham was þat time, y wene,
A prout cite & strong & kene;
Ich ȝou telle at on word:
King Vriens was þerof lord.
- 4215 þis kinges alle pider comen ware
& hadden sorwe & gret care,
For her kniztes were so yslawe
& her kin brouȝt o liue dawe;
Swiche diol þai hadden dayes to,
- 4220 Nold þai mete to mirþe do.
Vp him stirt Bandamagu,
A kniȝt of gret vertu,
& seyd: „Kinges, leteþ ben:
ȝour diole is rewþe for to sen;
- 4225 ȝe habbeþ frendes fer & wide,
To hem ȝe schulleþ nouþe ride
& ȝour diol to hem speke,
þurch whom ȝe worþ awreke!“
þurch his speche comfort þai nome,
- 4230 þe þridde day & to gider come,
& euerich oþer ȝauð swiche solas,
So þai miȝten in þas cas;
þat day þai maden hem at aise,
To bed anȝt þai ȝeden in paise.
- 4235 þe ferþ day euerich aros,
& sone days hein agros,
For to hem com a messanger
& gret hem wiþ rewelich chere
& seyd, in to Cornnewaile
- 4240 Sarrazins were comen, saunfaile,
- f. 225 b.

4216) care] a corr. aus?

- & hadde neize strued al pat lond
Wip wilde fere & wip brond
& þe lond of Dorkaine also
Ystroied & don michel wo;
- 4245 Nambires þai hadde bilay
& destrued al þe cuntry
Boþe wip fer & wip sword;
Spard þai noþer knaue no lord.
þer was so michel pople of hem,
- 4250 þat tellen hem no miȝt men.
þo þe kinges yherd pis,
In her hertes nas no blis;
Al her flesche bigan to quake.
So þe feuer hem had ytake;
- 4255 Ich of hem seyd: 'allas!' f. 225 c.
- þat ani of hem ybore was.
þe wailing, þat þai made,
To day no miȝt ich ful rade,
Ac swiche sorwe made, a pliȝt,
- 4260 Ich of hem fourtenniȝt,
þat litel mete com hem among,
Bot waileway & wepeing strong.
At þe fourtenniȝtes ende
- King Brangore wiȝt & hende
- 4265 Com him forþ in to þe halle
& ofsent his feren alle;
To hem alle þan spak Brangori:
"Yblisced be þe king of glorie
Of his grace & of his sending!"
- 4270 What helpeþ ous swiche morning?
Fond we ous to bistere
& our lond sum del to were:
We no haue pouer Arthour oȝen
For king Bohort & king Ban
- 4275 No for Merlin, þe gode clerk,
þat can so michel schandliche werk:
We no haue deserued, of Arthour
To haue nonskinnes socour,
To helpen ous oȝain Angys kende.
- 4280 þat þenkeþ ous forto schende,

& we haue ylorn our miȝt,
Nouȝt wiþ wrong, ac al wiþ riȝt,
Pat wold haue our lord kende
Yslawe purch lore of þe fende.

- 4285 Of king Leodegan help worþ ous non,
For of Yrlond þe king Rion
Him hap awerred to ȝer & more
Wiþ twenti kinges, bi godes ore,
No of king Pelles of Listonei
- 4290 No worþ ous help, par ma fay,
For þe ward of Pelleore,
His broþer, liþ sike & sore
& schel be seke, fort þe meruaile
Of þe greal be don, saunfaile,
- 4295 No forþer of þe king Alain
No worþ ous noiþer help no main,
For he liþ sike & sike schal ben
For þe best kniȝt of stren:
Y haue seyd, wherfore it is, f. 225 d.
- 4300 Pat he bicom sike, ywis —
No of þe king of þe Marais
Nor Maga of Sorailes
No may þer com help to ous,
For him awerreb Galaous,
- 4305 No of þe king Bremeins
No of þe king Adameins
No of þe king Clamadas
No may ous com no solas,
For alle hem werreb Galeus,
- 4310 þe riche king so vertouous.
Lokeþ now, hou we may spedē,
For we habbeb̄ wel gret nede!"

þo bispac Cradelman,
King of Norþ-Wales, a wise man:
4315 „þe best conseil, pat y can:
Part we alle our man,

4294) saunsaile(!) ms.

4308) ous] hem ms.

- & hire we alle þo,
þat we wiþ catel may ago,
& ich man wende to his cite.
4320 þat we wene strangest be,
& kepe we þe strait wais
Ouer alle in þe cuntrays
& robbens hem her sustenaunce
Wiþ skec, & don hem combraunce
4325 & waiten hem al þe qued,
þat we mowe, bi mi red!“
þo bispac sir Lot, þe king:
„Gode ware al þis conseiling,
Ac ich wot, when Arthour seþ,
4330 þat we of þe payens awerred beþ,
Anoþer half he wil ous anoie
& wiþ schond ous destroie!“
þe king of þe hundred kniȝt
Seyd: „Drede ȝou nouȝt, y ȝou pliȝt:
4335 Arthour wiþ Bohort & Ban
Beþ toward Leodegan
& help him oȝain Rion
& hem warnisen euerichon
Boþe cite & castel
4340 Wiþ mete & men swiþe wel,
þat hem no stondeþ no doute
Of þe payens no of her route;
Of him no haueþ non drede,
For it is soþe, þat ich ȝou sede;
4345 Mi conseyl is, ze don anon,
So þou seydest, king Cradelman!“
þis conseyl þai deden þo
& senten after mani mo,
Kniȝtes, swaines, man, þat wold
4350 Winnien siluer oper gold,
For to loke, wiþ outen asoine,
Al þe marches of Galoine
& of Cornwaile þe pleines
& eke þe place of Dorkains

t. 226 a.

⁴³⁴⁹⁾ swaines] *damach ein buchst. ausradirt.*

4355 & of Gorre al so, ich say,
& eke þe entres of Galeway.
Alder first Yder, þe king,
þre þousand hadde of billeueing,
þat yslawe no were nouȝt,
4360 Ozaines Arthour þan þai fouȝt,
& .viii. þousand of purchas
He hadde al so, bi godes gras,
& to þis strong cite Nante,
Wip alle þis men he wante,
4365 & zete he hadde þousandes þre
Of þe cite, bi mi leute.

þis Ider loked wele þe wayes
Wip his folk in þat cuntryes,
& payens he ouercam
4370 Oft & her mete binam
& so wele in armes dede,
þat men him blisced in eueri stede.

King Nanters, þe wizt man,
So went forþ in to Hussidan,
4375 His owhen cite, þat was of priis,
Wip þre þousand, him billeued, ywis,
In þe bataile, þer he was,
Wip seuen þousand of purchas,
& fif þousand in toun he fond,
4380 Orped men & gode of hond.
þis loked wele þe papes
& þe paiens oft deden scapes,
Boþe o lif & eke tresour
þai dede þe paiens misauentour.

4385 King Lot went to Dorkaine
Wip þre þousand billeued wip paine,
þer he was at þe bataile,
& wip fwe þousand of purchas, saunfaile,

f. 226 b.

4359) were] *danach* no were *unr.*, *ms.* 4372) him] hem *ms.*

& four þousand he fond in his toun,
4390 Wiȝt men & of grete renoun;
& zete for his wiȝt pruesse
& hendeschip & largesse
þre þousand after him come,
Gode bataile forto done.

4395 .viii. þousand þo hadde Lot,
þat wele him holpe, god it wot,
þe waies & þe papes zeme
& of þe Sarrains hem reme,
4400 & often deden hem gret greuaunce
& robbed hem her sustenaunce.

þo went king Clarion
To Norþ-Humberlond anon,
To his cite, þat hete Arlende,
Wip þre þousand, þat were hende,
4405 þat him bileued at þat fizt
Ozain Arthour, þe gode knizt.
.viii. þousand he hadde of purchas,
þat wele deden in eueri plas;
þe wayes þai deden wele awayt
4410 & þe papes, þat were strait,
& oft deden þe Sarrazins
Grete schame & grete pines.

After went anon riȝtes,
þe king of þe hundred kniztes,
4415 Aguigines was his name,
He was a knizt of gret fame;
He went him to Malaot,
A riche cite, god it wot;
þe cite on leuedis was
4420 & stode in a wel gret pas,
Where þe Sarrazins com & ride;
þre þousand he brouȝt him mide,
Ascaped from deþes hond,
þat leuedi marched on his lond;

⁴³⁹⁸⁾ him ms. ⁴⁴⁰³⁾ Arlende] a sehr verloschen.

- 4425 Per fore sche com to his socour
& fond kniȝtes of grete valour,
Ynouȝ to loken her lond,
& so þai deden wiþ miȝti hond.
After went Cradelman,
- 4430 To Norþ-Wales þat he cam
Wiþ þre þousand of his kniȝtes,
þat were ascaped fram þe fiztes;
He purchast seuen þousinde,
So ich in þe boke yfinde;
- 4435 Four þousand he fond at hom,
þat were bliȝe of his com,
For vneȝe fram hem fiue mile
Woned a wiche, hete Carmile;
Hir broþer hiȝt Hardogabran,
- 4440 A swiȝe riche soudan;
Of wichecraft & vilainie
& eke of nigramancie
Of þis warld sche coupe mast,
Wiþ outen Arthours sone a bast;
- 4445 Morgein, for soþe, was hir name,
& woned wiþ outen Niniame,
þat wiþ hir queint gin
Bigiled þe gode clerk Merlin.

f. 226 c.

- 4450 His Carmile in þat cuntray
Hadde a castel of gret noblay;
Of þat castel hadde socour
þe Sarrazins & gret recour,
Whar purch þe king Cradelman
Was soure carked & alle his man;
- 4455 Ac swiȝe wele, noþelas,
þe marche he loked & eke þe pas;
Ac Carmile, par ma fay,
Bi Merlines liif day
No miȝt do wiþ hir wicheing
- 4460 In Ingþond non anoiing.

4441) vileine ms.

4442) nigramace ms.

- King Brangore þo went forþ
To Estrangore, wel fer **bi** norþ,
& woned þat wiche bi side:
þe more noize him gan bitide;
4465 þre housinde wiþ him he nam,
þe sleiȝt þat were ascapèd fram;
Sex housinde he hadde of purchas
& fwe, of his cite þat was,
þat loked þe cuntry
4470 & often dede þe panimes tray.
bis Brangores of valour
Ludranef douhter þemperour
Bi þat time hadde yspoused,
A leuedi gent & preciouſe;
4475 Ac þe king of Hungri & of Blaske f. 226 d.
Hir hadde first to wiue ytake;
Bi hir form husbounde
Sche hadde a child of gret mounde,
þat was yhoten Sagremor,
4480 In ward wiþ þemperour;
þat was air of þemperie
& of Blaske & of Hungrie.
3e schul here afterward, hou Segremor
Com to kniȝt of king Arthour,
4485 Where purch þemperour, sikerliche,
Him hadde ygraiped richeliche
& hadde him sent to Costentinenoble,
To Ingland ward wiþ mani noble.

- 3ete went forþ king Carodas,
4490 þat of þe rounde table was,
To Galence, his cite,
A cite riche of gret plente;
Wiþ him he hadde þre þousand kniȝt,
þat were ascapèd fram þat fizt,
4495 & þer he fond foure þousinde
Noble kniȝtes, so ich finde,
& seuen þousand of gret powers
He purchasced, on heȝe destrys,

⁴⁴⁷²⁾ douster *ms.*

⁴⁴⁸¹⁾ þempire *ms.*

⁴⁴⁹³⁾ sonand *ms.*

þat wip swerd & launce & kniif
4500 Binomen mani painems her liif
& wip skekes & wip fizt
þe wayes loked wele, a plizt.
þer after þe king Anguisaunt
Went to Coranges in Scotland
4505 Wip fiue þousand gode kniȝtes
Alle ascaped fram þe fiztes;
Of purchas he hadde þousendes ten,
Swipe wele fiztand men,
Wip outen mani, þat he fond
4510 In his cite & in his lond.
He nas bot tventi mile way
Fram Nambire, þat was bilay
Of mani þousand Sarrain,
Where of he hadde mister fin,
4515 To fele kniȝtes, him to helpe,
To fizt ozain þe Sarrazin welpe;
So þai deden wip chere bliþe
Swipe oft & mani sipe,
On hem schoten bi wayes & papes
4520 & dede þe Sarrains gret scap̄es.

f. 227 a.

þo went Eustas to Aruudel
Wip þre þousand armed wel,
þat were ascaped fram þe batayle,
Wip seuen þousand, sanfaile,
4525 þat wele loked pap & way
Ouer al in þat cuntry.

King Vriens bileued stille
In Norham, sori & eke ille
For depart of his felawes
4530 & for her men, þat weren yslawe;
He hadde in alle þousandes ten,
Boþe wizt & hardy men,
þat anoied bi al her miȝt
þe Sarrazins bi day & niȝt.

4505) þouand ms. 4515) him] der letzte m-strich spätere,
nugf. 4520) sarrains ms. 4526) cumtray ms.

4535 Now ze schul vnderstond:
Fif zer pis last in Ingland,
Pat no corn no was ysowe,
Noiper on doun no on lowe.
Alle pis ich zeres fiue
4540 pis kinges pus ladde her liue
Wip pat pai mizt reue & robbe
Of Sarrazins wip swerd & clobbe;
Pe lowe folk in pe cuntry
Were yslawe for nouzt al day,
4545 & alle yslawe hadde yben,
No hadde sir Wawain to hem sen;
Pat was bo a bacheler,
Jolif & of strong power.
Ac ar ich zou more ping
4550 Of paimeis telle oþer king,
Of Nanters sones & of his feren
Noble ping ze schullen yheren;
His sone was hoten Galathin.

Now listneþ wele for loue min
4555 Of Ygerne, pat ich er of spake,
Hou Hoel hir hadde spoused to make;
On hir he bizat Blasine gent,
& so he dede Belisent.
King Nanters hadde spoused Blasine
4560 & Lot Belisent fair & dine.
Y wil wele, pat ze it wite:
Nanters in Blasine hadde bizete
A fair zong man, Galathin,
Wizt, hende & gentil afin.
4565 Lot bizat in Belisent
Four sones swipe gent,
Gveheres & eke Wawain,
Gaheriet & Agreuein.

f. 227 b.

⁴⁵⁵⁰⁾ tellen ms. ⁴⁵⁵⁴⁾ Das abschnittszeichen steht, statt
hier, bei v. 4555.

Galathin in þis time

4570 Com to his moder Blasine
& asked, ȝif it were soþ,
þat men seyd soupe & norþ:
„ȝif mi nem be king Arþour,
Telle me, dame, paramour!“

4575 Blasine þo bigan to wepe
& seyd: „Sone, so god me kepe,
Mi broþer king Arþour is,
In on wombe we weren, ywis;
Bot he is Vterpendragons stren,

4580 þer fore þi fader him wold slen,
& nere þi fader was slawe *in fizt*,
Nouȝt wiþ wrong, bot al wiþ rizt.“
þer sche him teld anon
Arþours bizete of Vterpendragon

4585 & alle þe destaunce, whi & whar fore
Arþours dep þai hadden yswore,
& seyd: „Sone, were pou wiis,
Or so þou þe heldest of priis,
þou scholdest bi day & bi niȝt

4590 Wiþ queyntise & al þi miȝt
Fond, for to maken acord
Bitven Arþour & þi lord!“
Galathin swore wiþ wordes bold,
He nold neuer oȝain *hold*,

4595 & seyd, he wold of him afong
Helme & swerd & launce strong
& of him be dubbed kniȝt
& wiþ him be in pays & fizt.
A messanger he sent anon

4600 & badde him, swiþe to Wawain gon
& sigge him wiþ wordes bonaire,
He com to þe newe faire
Of Brocklond, to speke him wiþ
Mani word of loue & griþ.

4605 þis erand bar þe messanger;
Wawain answerd wiþ glad chere,

⁴⁵⁷⁰⁾ Blasine] *auf rasur geschr.* ⁴⁵⁷⁸⁾ wombe] b corr.
^{aus?} ⁴⁵⁹⁴⁾ hold] *om. ms.*

þat, ȝif he hadde liif of manne,
He wold speke wiþ him þanne.
In time, þat þis sond cam,
4610 Gawinet fram hunting nam;
þre grehoundes he ledde on hond
& þre raches in on bond.

f. 227 c.

His moder biheld him & wepe sore
& seyd: „Sone, now þi nore,
4615 þou leſt þi time wiþ vnriȝt,
þou hast age to ben kniȝt;
þou schust leten þi folye,
þi rage & þi ribaudye;
þenke on þi nem Arthour,
4620 Kniȝt þat is of mest valour,
& fond, to make gode acord
Bitven him & Lot, þi lord!“
þer sche told him bifore,
Hou Arthour was biȝeten & bore.
4625 His bretherē seyd, he hadde wrong,
For it was al on him ylong,
þat þai here time lorn so,
& bot he wald wiþ hem go,
þai wolden fare to king Arthour
4630 & him seruen wiþ honour.

þo bispac him child Wawain,
Whom Crist ȝaf boþe miȝt & main:
„Swete dame & breþern þre,
Wiþ gret wrong ȝe blamen me:
4635 Seþpen ich euer born was,
Nist y neuer are þis cas,
Ac, seþpen þus fer comen it is,
Y bihote þe king of blis,
No schal y neuer armes afong,
4640 Bot of king Arthours hond!“
His þre breþer on hast
þer biheten anon þat hast.

⁴⁶³⁴⁾ wrong] r ü. d. z. geschr. ⁴⁶⁴¹⁾ breþer] danach þer, unr., ms.

þo bispac Wawain curteys:
„Madame, purvaieþ ous harnais,
4645 & we nil neuer blinne,
What we may þe acord winne!“
„Sone,“ sche seyd, „sikerliche,
„ȝe schullen haue neweliche
Hors & armes & alle þing,
4650 þat bihoueþ to zour dubbeing!“
þer after sone, bi godes sond,
Galathin went to Brocklond;
Ozain him com Wawain, þe fre,
Wip his gentil breþer þre,
4655 & in her to gider coming
þai maden ioie & gret kisseing.

f. 227 d.

þo seyd Wawain to Galathin:
„Certes, gentil nevou min,
No hadde it be for loue þine,
4660 Ich & al breþer mine
Were ywent to our em Arthour,
To seruen him & make amour
Our fader & him bitven,
þurch help of heuen quen!“

4665 Yherd be Crist,“ quap Galathin,
„þat is desire & wil min:
For þat ich selue þing
Ich made after þe sending;
To gider, y pray þe, wende we!“
4670 Bleþeliche!“ quap Wawain, þe fre.
þer þai setten ioifulliche
Day, to wende, sikerliche;
& ȝif þai no hadde to gider ywent,
Inglond hadde ben yschen.

4675 Mirie is þentre of May,
þe foules make muri play;
Maidens singgeþ & makeþ play,
þe time is hot & long þe day;

- þe iolif niztingale singeþ, .
4680 In þe grene mede floures springeþ.

King Lot & þe leuedi Belisent
Hadde puruayd her sone gent
Fif hundred on hors wel,
In armour of iren & stiel,
4685 Erls sones & barouns boþe,
Alle in sout of o cloþe;
Ac of hem, bot neizen, kniȝt
þer no ware, y zou pliȝt.
He blisced Gawaynet
4690 & Gueheres & Gaheriet
& Agreuein, þat was so hende,
& on godes name bad hem wende.

On þis maner dede Blasine,
King Nanters leuedi dine:
4695 Hir sone Galathin f. 228a.
Sche graiped in atire fin;
To hundred feren sche him fond
& blisced him wiþ hir hond;
Of þis to hundred were .xx. kniȝtes,
4700 Swiþe noble & gode in fiȝtes.
Galathin & Gawainet
To gider com, þer þai hadde sett,
& wenten forþ in her way
Toward Londen, for soþe to say;
4705 þai wenden haue king Arthour founde
In þe noble toun of Lounde;
þe pridde day in her journeie
þai were Londen swiþe neie.

þai seizen hem com swiþe ner
4710 Seuen hundred charged somer
& seuen hundred cartes al so,
& fiue hundred waines after go,

⁴⁶⁸⁰) foules ms. ⁴⁶⁸⁷) bot] t corr. aus? ⁴⁶⁹⁸) hir] his ms.

Ycharged alle wip ale & bred,
Wip fische & flesche & win red,
4715 Robbed of men of þe cuntry,
To leden to her ost oway;
For þe poudre of þis charging
No miȝt men se sonne schining.

þre þousand, seyt our boke,
4720 þat robberie went to loke.
þis robberie þan hadde ydon
A king, hiȝt Leodebron,
& þe king Semgran,
Swipe fel & wicke man,
4725 & þe king Mandelec,
þat euer waited scape & skec,
& þe king Seruagare;
Of Yrlond al þai ware;
þis four hepen kinges
4730 Went, to loken þis robbeinges,
& were so wroþ, þat king Arthour
Hadde ywarnist toun & tour,
þat þai þe cuntry aboute Lounde
Slowen & brent to þe grounde;
4735 Men seize þe fer fer away
þennes ouer a iurnay;
Man & wiif & children bo
No hadde þai no pite to slo;
þe folk schriȝten so heize & loude, f. 228 b.
4740 þat it schilled in to þe cloude.
Wawain seize & herd þis fare
& asked men, what it ware,
& þai him teld sone anon,
So ich toforn haue ydon.
4745 Wawain asked, where was þe king;
þai seyd, þurch Merlins conseiling
He was went to king Leodegon,
To help him wer ozain king Rion.

⁴⁷²⁸⁾ Semgram ms. ⁴⁷³³⁾ þai] om. ms. ⁴⁷³⁹⁾ schirsten ms.
⁴⁷⁴⁰⁾ it] danach ein buchst. ausradirt.

- Quaþ Wawayn: „Bi mi leute,
4750 We nil suffre now þis pite!
Seþpen king Arthour is out of lond,
We wil þe painemes wiþstond
& sauue his lond, we beþ his men,
Til þat he com hider ozen!“
4755 þat folk abouten him gan ten
& asked, wat folk it miȝt ben;
þai seyden, whos sones þai were
& wherefore þai comen þere;
þe folk, þat was of þis lond,
4760 þonked Iesu Cristes sond.
Chasteleins sones & vauasours
Seþpen wele deden wiþ king Arthours,
& fele men of þis lond
þer fallen to þis children hond,
4765 Fif hundred of wiȝt man.
Wawain hete on hast þan
Euerich man him arme wel
Boþe in yren & in stiel,
& suwen him, for her sleiȝt
4770 He wald awreke anon rizt.
Now hadde he a þousand & hundred to,
Of wiche four score & no mo
Hardi & wele doinde kniztes,
þat him suwed anon riztes
4775 In four parties, so y finde,
& dede hem oȝain þre þousinde
& acontred þat carroy.
It was passed þe midday
& þo fel fro Wawain
4780 Sumdel of his miȝt & main.

For of his strengþe þe maner
Sumdel ze may lern & here:
Bitven auensong & niȝt
He no hadde bot o mannes miȝt,

f. 228 c.

4749) waway ms. 4769) her] our ms.

- 4785 & pat strengþe him last
Fort arnemorwe bi þe last;
& fram arnemorwe to þe midday
He hadde strengþe of kniztes tvay;
Fram midday fort afternone
4790 He nadde strengþe bot of one;
Fram afternone to auensong
So to kniztes he was strong;
þis was þe manere of Wawain,
Of his strengþe & of his main.
4795 In þe time of midday
On þe paiens he smot, *par fay*,
Wip an ex scharp & strong,
þe bite was to fot long;
Whom he miȝt take & hitt,
4800 þe heued he clef *oper* of kitt;
He hem tohewe, ich ȝou swer,
So flesche dop þe flesche heweere;
He & his hors fram heued to taile
Blodi weren al, saunfayl,
4805 Of þe paiems, þat he slouȝ
Wip gode rizt & no wouȝ.

- Alder next him was Galathin,
þat him halp wiþ miȝt fin;
What Sarrazin so he mett,
4810 Wel soriliche he hem grett,
þat, wom euer þat he hitt,
þe heued to þe chinne he slitt,
Oper þe scholder *oper* þe heued
Fro þe bodi was bireued,
4815 *Oper* legge *oper* fest
Oper what he miȝt take best;
Who so euer he atrauȝt,
Tombel of hors he him tauȝt.

- Wawaines broþer Agreuein
4820 Per him kidde a noble mayn,

⁴⁸⁰⁸⁾ fram] r über a geschr. ⁴⁸⁰⁷⁾ him] i aus e corr.

For .xx. kniztes al a rawe
þer he brouȝt o liue dawe.

þe pridde broþer, Gueheres,
Smot him in amid þe pres,
4825 On alle half about he smot
& mani slouȝ, god it wot.

þe ȝongest broþer, Gaheriet,
No child no miȝt fiȝt bet,
þan he dede, verrament;
4830 þer he bisett mani a dent;
þurch armes out euerichon
He clef þurch flesche & bon;
Fourti Sarrazins & mo
þer he dede to helle go;
4835 Þer men, þat mid him were,
Deden nobleliche þere;
þai slouȝwen & brouȝt to grounde
Mani paien in litel stounde.

f. 228 d.

Ac, certes, ozain Wawain
4840 Non no miȝt kiþe his main,
For armes non, ywrouȝt wiþ hond,
Ozain his dent no miȝt stond;
þat he tok, he al torof,
So dust in winde & aboute drof;
4845 þer he him contende so manliche,
þat in litel while, sikerliche,
Child Wawain & his felawe
bis þre þousand brouȝten of dawe,
Bot tventi paiems, þat gun ascape,
4850 Fleand oway wiþ gret rape,
Of wiche ten com bihind
To on ost of seuen þousinde,
Wiþ loude voice & to hem gradde:
„Harou, painems, ȝe ben to badde:

⁴⁸²⁹⁾ þan] n mit dunklerer tinte aufgefrischt. ⁴⁸⁴⁰⁾ his]
s ü. d. z. geschr. ⁴⁸⁴¹⁾ arme ms. ⁴⁸⁵⁰⁾ & fleand ms.
⁴⁸⁵¹⁾ wiche] danach þe, unr., ms.

4855 Cartes & somers ous beþ binome
& alle our folk is ouercome
& yslawe euerich man,
Bot we & oþer ten,
þat here bineþe fram ous zede,
4860 More socour to bring hem midde!“
Euerich payem þo was sori
& criden a grisely crie:
„As armes, for Mahouns sake,
þat þis traitour were ytake!“
4865 þat armes hadde, ron þer to,
Ac som no hadde non þo,
Ac þai hem hadde laid for hot
In þe cartes, god it wot,
Wiche þe children hadde sent
4870 To Londen, verrament;
Alle þe cartes & somers
Were sent þider wiþ men of powers.
þis paiens, wiþ outen let,
Ozains þis children set;
4875 Ozain a þousand coine seuen,
þat was no þing delt euen,
Ac þe help of our drȝt
Wiþ Wawain & his gan aliȝt;
No herd men neuer so fewe in lond
4880 Noblicher so fele wiþstond.
þer aros noble bataile
A boþe half, wiþ outen faile,
Ac Wawain swiþe noble was,
For þer he met king Thoas,
4885 A wiȝt geaunt, gret & strong,
Of fet fourtene he was long,
A king he was of Yrlond;
Wawain his ax left an hond,
On þe helme he him hitt,
4890 þat to þe brest he him slit.

f. 229 a.

Galathin mett king Samgran,
An vnsely hoge man;

4880) fele] fewe ms.

4880) of] danach þo, unr., ms.

Wip his swerd he him hitt,
þat his heued of he kitt;
4895 Wawain broper Agreuain
Amid þe pres kidde his main,
For a left half & a riȝt
He leyd on & slouȝ doun riȝt.

þer com þe king Gvinbat
4900 & ȝaf Gueheres swiche a flat,
þat he fel adoun to grounde;
Ac he stirt vp in a stounde
& so smot a Sarrazin,
þat he clef his bacin
4905 & eke his heued to þe top,
& on his hors lepe, for soþ.
Gaheriet seize Gvinbat,
þat his broþer ȝaue swiche a flat,
& Gvinbat him com seize
4910 & gan to fleize swiþe oway,
For þe strokes, he seize him ȝeue,
He no durst abide, so mot y liue,
For, þo Gaheriet was ymade kniȝt,
In euerich place & eueri fiȝt
4915 He kidde ner as miche main,
So dede his broþer Wawain. f. 229 b.
Gvinbat fleize out of þe place,
Gaheriet on hors his trace
Folwed out fram þat ost
4920 Wele þe schote of an alblast;
So we finden on þe bok,
In o valay he him oftok,
In wiche valay þe oþer ten,
þat scaped Wawain & our men,
4925 Hadden brouȝt þousandes eiȝt,
Of our men to make sleiȝt.
Gaheriet no lete nouȝt for þat,
þat he no folwed king Gvinbat,

⁴⁹⁰⁰) flat] t *ausradirt*.

& folwed him, wip outen doute,
4930 Al on amidward þe route
& smot him so on þe helme cler
& þer of carf a quarter,
& þe scheld purch ato
Wip þe scholder & arme al so.

4935 King Gvinbat in þat stounde
A swon fel adoun to grounde;
Gaheriet þo turned his bridel
& swiþe wald ozain ride,
Ac þe paiems about him come
4940 & wold him han ynome,
Ac þer he carf wip swerd & smot
Mani to þe deþ, god it wot.
He nas nouȝt tventi winter eld,
Ac in armes he was beld;
4945 Sum wip swerd so he hitt,
þat to þe chin he him slitt;
Of mani he smot þe neck ato
& wounded & dede michel wo;
Non durst him neize, verrament,
4950 For doute of his hard dent.
þo þai him dede gret vilanie,
His hors slouȝ biforn his eȝe;
Gaheriet a fot stode
& werd him wip hert gode,
4955 Boþe he slouȝ hors & man
Him aboute fiue & ten;
So sore he hitt, so sore he smot,
Non durst him neize, god it wot:
þer þai þrewen on him anon

f. 229 c.

4960 Stones & kniues mani on,
Swerdes, staues & launces long
& wounded him swiþe strong
& tviies feld him on þe ston:
Allas, help no hadde he non!
4965 On him þai schoten attelast
& deden of his armes on hast,

- For to haue anon yreued
His bodi fram his gentil heued.
In þat time a gentil swain
4970 Wel gode scour com to Wawain :
 „Wawain,“ he seyd, „þi broþer y say
Riden ȝonder to ȝon valay,
Folwand on heþen king ;
Me þenkeþ, he makeþ long duelling ;
4975 Go we þider, for our leudi,
Y herd per gret noise & cri :
Y dar legge heued min,
þat per ben mo Sarrazin,
þat beþ comand hiderward
4980 & han þi broþer in hondling hard !“
 „Allas !“ he seyd, „icham yschen,
Be mi broþer so yhent :
As lef me were, to ben of dawe,
As mi broþer were yslawe !“
4985 & seyd to Galathin :
 „Gode nevou, broþer min,
ȝond bineþen, icham adred,
þurch his folye he is misled !“
Quaþ Galathin : „Lete be þi striif,
4990 & wende we þiderward bi liif :
While we speki & makeþ tale,
He may lachi deþes bale !“
þer þai smiten al about,
þai four dassed out of þe rout.
- 4995 Galathin & eke Wawain,
Gveheres & Agreuein,
Sum oper of þe best
After þese four prest ;
þo þai seizen, ich ȝou say,
5000 .viii. þousand in o valay,
Of wiche her maister king,
Was yhoten Gvinbating,
Anoper hitȝ Medalan,
Boþe wiȝt & hoge man ;

f. 229 d.

- 5005 Wawain swiþe among hem smot,
His broþer to seche, god it wot;
His ex he houe swiþe heize,
Galathin was him wel neize;
þai laiden on hem about
5010 & toschiften al þat rout;
Sum þe scholder & som þe regge
He cleued wiþ swerdes egge,
Of sum þe midel ato he girt,
Mani he slouȝ & mani he hirt;
5015 Abouten hem swiche sleizt þai made,
þat y no may it nouȝt al ful rade.

Gveheres & Agrevein
Schewed al so her main;
Mani þai hitten & smiten þurch,
5020 þat fellen ded in þe furch;
No fined þai neuer swiche a sleizt,
What þai to Gaheriet com rizt
& pitouseliche him ligge founde
Deueling opon þe grounde;
5025 Mani on about him were,
His armour of þai gun to tere.

þo was Wawain so wroþ,
His owhen liif was him lop;
þer he smot sore, a plizt,
5030 Boþe a left half & a rizt;
On he smot, þat þe dent prest
þurch helme & heued to þe brest;
Anoper on þe schulder he bitt,
þat to þe ribbes he him slitt;
5035 Anoper he toke aboue þe scheld,
þat his heued fleize in þe feld:
þus he serued mani a rawe;
Al so dede his felawen,
So fele þai slowen, hors & man,
5040 þat tellen alle y no can.

⁵⁰³⁴⁾ þe] danach bi, ausgestr.

- þos, þat Gaheriet held þo,
Alle hem bifel sorwe & wo;
No durst no abide lenge,
Ac flowen oway all on renge.
5045 þo Gaheriet seize Wawain,
He lepe vp wiþ al his main;
His armes he tok vp anon
& swiftliche dede hem opon
& toke a swerd in his hond gode;
5050 A fot mani he schadde blode.
A destrer þo ladde Agreuein
& toke it Gaheriet bi þe rein
& seyd: „Worþ her on hastiliche!“
& seyd: „þou dedest foliliche,
5055 þo þou folwedest hunting
Ani man in þis gret þring!“
Vp on þe stede Gaheriet
Lepe anon, wiþ outen let;
Alle his felawes weren bliþe,
5060 Out of þe route dasten swipe,
Anon þai gun hem wiþdrawe,
What þai com to her felawe.

f. 230 a.

- þese Sarrazins þo gun vnplie
Her baners & after heiȝe;
5065 To nimen þis children anon,
Mahoun þai sworn euerichon;
Vnder hem alle so was, y finde,
Almest fiftien þousinde;
Our was litel more þan on,
5070 Ac Crist hem halp, wele to don,
Our were gode bodis alle,
þe Sarrazins þai gun to talle;
A boþe half þai laiden on,
So fast so þai miȝten don.

5044) all] ll auf'fallend kurz, corrigirt aus? 5050) he]
danach zwei buchst. ausradirt. 5054) dest ms. 5063) Das ab-
schnittszeichen steht, statt hier, bei v. 5065. 5065) þis] auf rasur geschr.
5073) laiden] danach ein buchst. ausradirt. 5074) so] þo ms.

5075 Listneþ now, gret & sinale,
Hou ȝou seip here þis tale!
þe vplondismen, þat hadden ladde
Cartes & somers, so Wawain badde,
To Londen wel *safe* þai come;
5080 þe citisains fair in hem nome
& asked hem, for heuen king,
Whennes com þat noble þing.
Alle þai telden, hou Wawain
& his feren purch noble main
5085 Hadden met toward Lounde
& þre þousand leyd to grunde
& þe Sarrazins hadde yschent
& to Londen þat catel sent,
& seyden to þe constable þo,
5090 þat was yhoten sir Do,
þat Sarrazins seuen þousinde
Hadde asailed hem bihinde.

f. 230 b.

Sir Do went to Algate
& dede blowe an horn þer ate;
5095 Of þat cite þe alderman,
Ich wip his ward cam;
þo þai were þider ycome,
Seuen þousand were in her trome.
þo spac sir Do, þat was kniȝt
5100 Trewe, hardi & eke wiȝt:
„Loke,“ he seyd, „leue frende:
Her bisiden ben childer hende,
þat han þis ich dawe
Mani cursed painem slawe,
5105 þat hadden robbed þis cuntray
Of al þis ich fair pray;
þis children han hem yschent
& þis present hider sent:
We were coward & vnhende,
5110 Bot we holpen þo children kende;

5079) *safe*] wele ms.

- It bep Galathin & eke Wawain,
Gveheres, Gaheriet & Agreuein;
þurch þe grace of Crist Jesu
& þis children, y telle zou,
- 5115 Bitvene Arthour & þe xi. king
May be pes & acording.
As armes," he seyd, „paramour,
& dasse we to her socour!"
Wip outen abod sone anon
- 5120 Her armes þai deden on;
Euerich of þe alderman
His baner biforn him nam,
& þe constable, sir Do,
His baner toke al so.
- 5125 Of þe seuen pouſand to þai lete,
For alle chaunce Londen to kepe,
& wiþ hem toke pouſandes fiue,
Swiþe gode in fizt & striue;
Her steden swiþe þai bistriden
- 5130 & toward þe children swiþe rideſ.
Lete we now ben her cominge
& speke we of þe children fizting;
þis children fouȝten, so y finde,
Oȝain fiftene pouſinde
- 5135 & no hadde bot four score kniȝtes
& fif hundred of squiers wiȝt
& tventi al so, þat schulden ben
Kniȝtes, when þai miȝt her time sen,
& þre hundred of þe cuntray,
- 5140 Boþe on fot & hors, y say;
þat was a pouſand an hundred las;
Nas þer namore in þat cas.
Ac Gvinbating & Medelan,
To vnsely hardi man,
- 5145 Wip .viii. pouſand in a þrome
On our folk dasseand come
Wiþ strong cours & gret hete,
So þai hem wald nim & prete.

f. 230c.

5139) þre] þere ms.

Gvinbating, an hoge spere
5150 Ozain Wawain he gan to bere;
Wawain it seize sone on hast,
His scheld per ozein gan cast,
His scheld perced Gvinbating,
Ac his strong hauberk no þing;
5155 þe launce brac atvo, a plizt,
Wawain nouȝt stired, ac sat vprizt,
His ax he hef wiþ boþe his hond,
To hit Gvinbating, ich vnderstond;
On his helme he him smot,
5160 þe ax glod, god it wot;
Of þe gode ax þe scharpe egge
Fel doun on þe hors rigge
& tocarf it euen ato,
& to þe grounde, wiþ outen no,
5165 þe kniȝt donward gan butten
Amidward þe hors gutten,
&, no hadde Wawain þer o fot ylawe,
He hadde þer king yslawe.
þo þe Sarrazin yseize þis,
5170 þer com man hundred, ywis,
Her lord to ben bitven
& Wawain to nimen or slen.
þe Sarrazin her lord vpnome
& on hors sett him sone,
5175 & sir Wawain þai asailed strong,
His hors þai slowen wiþ wrong;
Him to nim þai deden strengþe,
& non durst him neize his ax lengþe,
Ac þai him þrewe wiþ swerd & spere, f. 230 d.
5180 Him to nimen & him to dere.
At þat rideing slouȝ Galathin
Swiþe mani Sarrazin;
So dede al so Gveheres,
Mani heuded in þat pres;
5185 Agreuein dede al so,
Mani slouȝ & deden wo;

5152) oȝin ms.

5169) sarrazin] a corr. aus?

So dede þe child Gaheriet,
Noman no miȝt fizt bet.
Miday passed & none cam,
5190 Wawain strengþe double gan ;
þo he seyd & swore: „Parde,
To day no schul ze nimen me!“
Wip boþe his honden his ax he hef
& fele he slouȝ in stounde bref;
5195 In blod he stode, ichil avowe,
Of hors & man in to þe anclowe,
þat he hadde him selue yslawe
Wip outen sleiȝt of his felawe.
þo seiȝe he, wip gret main
5200 A paiem smot to Agreuein,
þat he fel on his hors nek,
Him to heueden he gan to bek ;
Wawain wiþ his ax helue
Lepe þo fet ten & tvelue
5205 & ouer al, þat bitven hem was,
To help his broþer in þat cas ;
þat ich painem wele he knewe,
þat on his broþer nek hewe ;
þe paiem seye, he miȝt nouȝt flen,
5210 His scheld he kest him bitvene,
& Wawain smot on þe scheld,
þat it clef & fel in þe feld ;
3ete decended þat ich dent
þurch þe armes, verrament,
5215 & þurch out flesche & bon & blode,
þat at þe girdel stede it stode ;
þat dede bodi he put adoun
& lepe anon in þe arsoun
& seyd: „To day ich zeld zour rentes
5220 Wip hard woundes & dep dentes ;
Mi strengþe is doubled, bi god aboue,
& þat ze schul zete to day proue !“
& slouȝ to grounde al doun rizt
Boþe a left half & a rizt ;

f. 231 a.

5211) smot] somt ms.

5225 So he smot in al pat route,
Pat grete hepes him lay about
Of mani paiem miscreaunt:
þe Brut þer of is mi waraunt.

Agreuein al so wip his sword

5230 Of Sesox smot þe nek ford;
þat seize Gvinbating, þe qued,
þat Sesox, his nevou, was ded,
Wreken him he wold fond;
A strong launce he tok on hond
5235 & smot Agreuein, so god it wold,
þurch þe hauberk fele fold
& purch þern hel vnder þe arm,
He hadde neize zounen him deþes harm,
þat Agreuein & his destrer
5240 To grounde he kest wip gret power.
Gaheriet, Gveheres & Galathin
þo biconie sori afin,
For ich of hem wende, certein,
þat dede were Agreuein,
5245 & wenten swiþe to þat rideing;
Galathin smot first Guinbating
Wip his sword ful but,
þat on his arsoun dounward he lut.
Gveheres him dede more harm,
5250 For he smot of his riȝt arm;
Forþ com swiþe Gaheriet,
He him þouȝt to hit bet,
For he him tok aboue þe scheld,
þat his heued fleize in þe feld.

5255 Galathin wit fot him stett,
Out of his sadel he him pett,
& Agreuein tok þat destrer
& fleize þer on so a speruer,

5237) þern] *danach c ausradirt.* 5238) neize] n corr. aus R.
5242) afin] *danach e, unterpunktet.* 5248) dounward] n om. ms.
5253) aboue tok ms. 5255) wit] i corr. aus?

& abouten hem þai redder
5260 & her noble strengþe kedden;
þo non of hem no wist þere,
Whare Wawain was bicomen no where.
Al þe ost of Guinbating
Flowen tō Medelan, þe king,
5265 & þo wiþdrouz him Agreuein,
What he seize child Wawain;
Al fíue, to gider þai zede,
& our folk þo zede hem mide.

f. 231 b.

þo þai loked hem bi side,
5270 & sir Do þai seize com ride,
Whom þai knewe bi þe vplondismen,
þat bi fore were went hem fram;
Hastiliche þo þai alizt
& on her stedes her sadles ditz.
5275 þis fíue pouſand fram Lounde
To hem com in a stounde.

þe children were of socour bliþe,
Onon her hors þai lopen swiþe
Wiþ hem & rideñ sarreliche
5280 Her fon toward, sikerliche;
Oȝain hem com þe paiems fling
For þe dep of Guinbating;
Launces þai broken mani on,
Afterward drouz her swerdes anon;
5285 For pouder, þat ros hem bitven,
Non no miȝt oþer ysen.
þer was noble contenaunce
In bataile of remembraunce;
Wawain him conteind þan so,
5290 þat men of Londen & sir Do
Wonder hadde, hou man on
Swiche pruesse miȝt den.
So mani paiems, saunfaile,
Were yslawe at þat bataile,
5295 þat þe blod ran in þe valaie,
So water out of a laie.

þer com þe strong king Medlan
& feld Do, þat gentil man,
þe helme hadde him bireued,
5300 For to smite of his heued;
No man no mist him binim,
þat vnsely wiþperwin,
Bot Wawain, þat bi him cam,
& he him of his tolling nam;
5305 þat he was gode kniȝt, he kidde,
Bifor him þe way he ridde,
What he com to Medelan,
þat vnsely hoge man;
Wawain on þe helme him smot,
5310 þe ax sank depe, god it wot,
What he com to þe brest;
þe paiem fel wiþ iuel rest.
þe Sarrazins seizen þis
& gun fle wel swiþe, ywis;
5315 Wawain þan & his nevou
& his broþer, y telle zou,
& her feren & sir Do
& þe gode men of Londen al so,
Driuen hem fiue mile way,
5320 & mani of hem, for soþe y say,
þai slouȝ, þousandes prettene,
þat nold no more don hem tene,
Wiþ outen al þe oper heþen man,
þat þai slouȝwen tofor þan.
5325 þo þis sleiȝt was ydo,
To Lunden al þai comen þo;
Men hem oȝain comen of þe toun
Wiþ wel fair processiouñ;
Of þe cartes alle þe priis
5330 Bifor Wawain þai brouȝt, ywis,
& sir Do him bisouȝt, cert,
So he wald, he schuld it part.

f. 231c.

5318) men] om. ms. 5321) Of hem þai ms. 5328) wel]
e aus i corr.

- Wawain seyd to sir Do:
„Wo worþ me þan, wo!
5335 Ac to hem, þat habben nede mast,
Departeþ it now on hast!“
Wawain was þe better ay
þer fore ypraised, par ma fay;
þis þing was deled & diȝt
5340 So hem þouȝt best, a pliȝt.
þer after þis children of mounde
Soiournd wel long in Lounde,
þat no Sarrazin hem miȝt
Noiþer deri bi day no niȝt.
5345 Sir Do made hem gret solas
& alle, þat euer in Londen was.
Lete we hem þer soiour
& wende ozain to king Arthour!

- Marche is hot, miri & long,
5350 Foules singen her song;
Burious springeþ, mede greneþ,
Of euerich þing þe hert keneþ.
Arthour went to Brekingho,
Merlin, Ban, Bohort al so,
5355 & her feren fiue & þritti; f. 231 d.
Was þer no more compainie,
Bot in alle fourti & to,
Alle chosen, so mot y go,
Bi clerk Merlines conseyl,
5360 þe wiȝtest, þat he wist, saunfail.
Forþ þai wenten al in paise,
What þai com to Carohaise,
A riche cite of al þing;
þer was Leodegan, þe king,
5365 þat was king of al þat lond
& hadde Carmelide in his hond,

⁵³⁴⁴⁾ Noiþer] i ü. d. z. geschr. ⁵³⁴⁶⁾ Bei diesem verse ist
ein abschnittszeichen. ⁵³⁵⁵⁾ þritti & fiue ms.

& made swiþe gret pite,
For he was bilayn in þat cite
Of king Rion & kinges fiftene,
5870 þat al born corounes schene,
þat hadden him & al his man
Ouercomen bifor þan,
No he no hadde men, þat miȝt
Him to awreke, y ȝou pliȝt,
5875 & conseild him þat ich stounde
At kniztes of þe table rounde
& at barouns of þe lond,
Hou þai miȝt hem were fro schond.
Amid þe strete in þat cite
5880 þe king þer stode wiþ his meine
On a palmesonnes aue,
Sum conseil of hem to haue.

Riȝt þo entred king Arthour
& Ban & Bohort & sir Antour
5885 & her feren, wiþ outen doute,
Al þai comen in on route;
Alle it were ȝong man,
Bot it were þe king Ban
& Bohort & Vlfin þe bel
5890 & sir Antour & sir Bretel;
þis were noble kniztes fiue
& alle of midel liue;
þe oper al were bachelers,
Sittand on heize destrers.

5895 Merlin seyd: „þe king is ȝounde:
Lizteþ al to þe grounde,
ȝe schullen wende on on ring,
ȝour hors schul þe gromes bring;
& þou, sir Ban, þe king,
5900 To Leodegan so ȝeue greteing
& sey þe wordes him to,
þat we bispeke at Brekenho!“

f. 232 a.

5889) vilfin ms.

- Hou þai went & on wiche maner,
Now ȝe may al yhere;
5405 Of swiche bodis noble & wiȝt
Tofor men me þink it riȝt,
Her names to tellen ȝou in sawe,
Hou þai wenten al on rawe.
First wenten þre wiþ gret honour :
5410 Ban & Bohort & king Arthour;
King Arthour ȝede bitven, a pliȝt,
& king Ban him ledde bi þe hond riȝt;
Bohort him ladde nobleliche
Bi þe left hond, sikerliche ;
5415 Alle þe oper com after þo,
Joinand bi hond to & to;
þe ferþ so was Antour,
Kayes fader of gret valour ;
On his hond ȝede sir Vlfin,
5420 At euerich nede gode & fin ;
þe sext kniȝt so was Bretel,
Of gret noblay, strong & lel ;
On his hond ȝede þe steward Kay,
þe seuend kniȝt of gret noblay ;
5425 þe .viii. Lucan, þe boteler,
A gode kniȝt of gret power ;
Erl Does sone, þat loked Lounde,
þe .ix. was, ich vnderstonde ;
Grifles so was tiþe,
5430 Wiȝt he was & noble swiþe ;
Marec so ȝede on his hond,
On of þe best of al þat lond ;
þe .xii. Drians of þe Forest sauage,
A strong kniȝt of heiȝe parage ;
5435 Belias, þe lord of Maiden castel,
On his hond ȝede fair & wel ;
The .xiiii. so was Flaundrin,
A noble kniȝt of gentil lin ;
On his hond ȝede Lamuas,
5440 An hardi kniȝt, þe fiftend was ;

5408) swiche ms.

5405) bodis] is corr. aus?

- þe .xvi. was Amores þe broun,
A stalworþ kniȝt vnder hauberiouн;
Ancales þe rede zede him bi, f. 232 b
þe .xvii. kniȝt strong & hardi;
- 5445 þe .xviii. was Bliobel,
A kniȝt doand swiþe wel;
þe .xix. was Bleoberiis,
Of gret los & michel priis;
Canode þe .xx. was,
- 5450 He no fleize neuer for no cas;
Aladanc þe crispe was .xx. & on,
Non better bodi no miȝt gon;
þe .xxii. was Islacides,
Wiȝt & strong in eueri pres;
- 5455 Lampades was .xx. & þre,
A noble kniȝt, gent & fre;
þe .xxiiii. kniȝt was
A noble kniȝt, yhote Ierias;
Cristofer of þe roche norþ
- 5460 þe .xxv. was, for soþ;
þe .xxvi. was Aigilin,
A wiȝt kniȝt of gentil lin;
þe .xxvii. was Calogreuand,
A gentil kniȝt of noble hand;
- 5465 þe .xxviii. was Angusale,
Of no man no held he tale;
Wiȝt Agrael was .xx. & niȝe,
Ful of wiȝtschip & curteisie;
þe .xxx. was Cleades, þe fondling,
- 5470 Man seize neuer better zongling;
þe gode kniȝt Gimires of Lambale
þe on & þritti was bi tale;
þe .xxxii. was Kehedin,
Fair & wiȝt & gentil fin;
- 5475 þe þre & þritti was Merangis,
A gode kniȝt of noble priis;
þe .xxxiiii. was Goruain,
An hardi kniȝt of michel main;

5445) bliovel ms.?

5460) xxv] x corr. aus v.

- þe .xxxv. was Craddoc,
5480 An hardi kniȝt in ich floc;
þe .xxxvi. was Claries,
He was ful wiȝt in eueri pres;
þe .xxxvii. was Blehartis,
Bold of dede, of speche wiis;
5485 þe .xxxviii. was Amandauorgulous,
A kniȝt of dede vertuous;
þe .xxxix. Osoman, cert, f. 232c.
His surname was: hardi of hert;
þe .xl. was Galescounde,
5490 þer nas no kniȝt of more mounde;
þe .xli. was Bleherris,
King Bohortes godsone, ywis;
þe .xlvi. Merlin was par,
Bifor Arthour þe zerd bar;
5495 þis alle ȝede hand in hand,
As y ȝou seyd bifornhand.

Leodegan & al his ginge
Gret wonder had of her cominge;
Kniȝtes, swaines, leuedis beld
5500 Maden crud, hem to biheld;
Wonder þai hadden euerichon,
For non no knewe her non.

Ozain hem ȝede king Leodegan,
& him gret þe king Ban;
5505 Leodegan seid: „ȝou blisse þe rode,
ȝif ȝe beþ ycomen for gode!“
Quaþ king Ban: „So Crist me spede,
Com we nouȝt hider for þi qued
No for þi schame, ac for þi gode,
5510 So ous help þe gode rode!
We beþ souders of fer lond;
Men doþ ous to vnderstond,
þat þou to socour haddest nede,
þer fore we com fram our pede,

5491) Bleherris] i corr. aus e. 5505) seid] auf rasur geschr.
5507) Ban] om. ms.

- 5515 þat is fer hennes, saunfaile,
þe to help in þi bataile
& to serue on swiche maner,
So þou schalt now yher:
We aske þe on godes name,
5520 Noþer to þine harm no þi schame,
Ac þat þou graunt ous now a þing,
& þer of no make werning:
þou no schalt aske name our
No wo we beþ no non of our,
5525 No apose ous of our being,
What we þe wil make scheweing;
& ȝif þe likeþ so our seruise,
Telle it ous now in al wise,
& bot þou like, we seruen þe,
5530 We wille zern fram þe te
To sum oper & serue swiþe,
þat of our come wil be bliþe!“
Leue toke Leodegan,
To asky conseil of his man;
5535 Alle his barouns him seyd, ywis,
It sembled men of gret priis,
Her semblaunt hem bar witnisse;
He schuld of hem nim sikernisse
& afong her seruise
5540 & nouȝt hem lete o non wise.
Ozain com king Leodegan
& þus seyd to Arthour & to Ban:
„Bewe seygnours, me þenkeþ schame,
þat ȝe me heleþ ȝour name,
5545 For ich vnderstond wele, þat ȝe
Ben of more power, þan ich be;
Ac ȝe semble so wizt & fre,
þat ȝe beþ welcome to me,
& ȝour seruise zeld y schal,
5550 ȝif he me sauþ, þat welt al.
Ac arst ȝe schul me make siker,
Wip me held in eueri biker,

f. 232d.

⁵⁵¹⁶⁾ to] t corr. aus þ. ⁵⁵²³⁾ aske] s, mit dunklerer tinte
aus l corr. ⁵⁵⁴⁵⁾ þat] danach be, unterpunktet.

- & zour names telle ze me,
When ze seþ, þat time be!"

5555 His treuþe þer tok þe king Ban
& þer to þaf Leodegan.
þer whiles þe clerk Merlin
Hem hadde ypuruaid a riche in
& ledde hem þider al faire.

5560 Her ost was ycleped Blaire,
Leonele hete his wiif,
A fair buriays & joliif.
Boþe þai wenten oȝain Arthour
& him welcomed wiþ gret honour.

5565 Arthour & his feren wiȝt
Soiournde þer seuen niȝt
In her in, & wiþ þe king
þai maden oft solausing.

þe king þo sent his messangers
5570 Ouer alle to her souders
& sent ouer alle in his lond
Euerich gentil man his sond,
þat þai comen to him alle
To Carohaise into his halle
5575 Attelast bi holy þorsday,
To help him in his medlay,
& who so nold to him come,
As traitouſ he schuld ben ynome,
So ich in boke writen finde,
5580 & him hing bi þe winde;
For so long trewes bitven Rion
Weren & þe king Leodegan.
Ac listnep now: swiche traſoun
Hem come ar þe assensioun!

f. 233 a.

5585 In estre on þe tewisday,
þe eu'en of seint Philip in May,

5555) tok] to ms. 5575) þorsday] s corr. aus [.] 5581) For]
r auf rasur geschr.

Four kinges, gret geauntz,
þat were vnder þe king Riounz,
Went hem out in iren & stiel
5590 Wiþ sexti þousand armed wel;
þe first king hitz Roulyous;
þe oþer hete king Clarious;
þe þridde king hete Sonegurens;
þe ferþ hete king Sorhens;
5595 þise went fram þe gret ost
To Carohaise wiþ gret bost
& robbeden al þe cuntry
Boþe in doun & in valaye;
Man & wiman, al þat þai founde,
5600 þai slowen doun in to þe grounde;
þe cuntry wiþ wild fer
Ouer al þai set on fer,
Ten hundred cartes on on route
Biforn hem brouȝt, saun doute,
5605 Charged wiþ mete & wiþ drink,
þat ani man miȝt of þink;
& .vc. kniȝtes þe pray toke,
For to condue hem & loke.
To Carohaise þe kinges wente
5610 & at þe gates wolden entre,
Ac þe gateward þe gates schetten,
Ac þer oȝain anon þai stetten;
Boþe wiþ launce & wiþ sword
þai dusched & hewen on þe bord
5615 & wenten to þe plaines oȝan,
To quellen wiif, child & man;
Men miȝt hem here schriche
So fer, þat it was ferliche.
þo in þe cite seize þis harmes,
5620 Manliche þai grad: 'As armes!' f. 233 b.
þai went & armed hem euerichon
& to þe gates comen anon,

5587) geauntz] z sehr verlöscht. 5593) Sonegurens] gur
sehr verkratzt und unsicher. 5607) vc] nach v eine rasur.
5622) gates] ga auf rasur geschr.

On gode stede hem rest,
For to abide þe kinges hest,
5625 & þe kniztes of þe table rounde,
Of al þe warld of mest mounde,
Wiche hadde made Vterpendragon,
Ac king Arthour no knewe her non;
Two hundred & to score & ten,
5630 Verrament, þer weren of hem.
Herui þe riuel & Malot þe broun
Were maisters of þe gomfainoun;
So ich in þe Brut finde,
Her gomfainoun was of cendel Ynde,
5635 Of gold þer were on þre coroune;
þo it bar Malot þe broune.
Of þe cite four þousand were þar;
Her maister gomfainoun so bar
þe kinges steward, Cleodalis,
5640 A kniȝt he was of gret priis;
His pensel hadde riche colour,
Alle he was couched wiþ azur,
Of gold þer were four bore heuedes ybete;
þese houed al in þe strete.
5645 þo com king Arthour, Bohort & Ban
Wiþ her feren, eueri man;
So y in boke telle can,
Non nere armed hem oȝan;
A queintise þai hadden riche,
5650 þat non nas hem yliche:
On stedes þai lopen euerichon,
In þe world nar better non;
Merlin rode biforn, ichil avowe,
& bad hem alle swiþe him suwe;
5655 So þai deden, wiþ outen faintise,
On hors in fair queintise.
Merlin bar her gomfanoun,
On gode stede hem rest,

5627) Vterpendragon] das zweite r ü. d. z. geschr. 5641) pensel]
e, urspr. o, von späterer hand und mit dunklerer tinte in e verwandelt.
5642) azur] z corr. aus? 5643) bore h.] re heuedes mit dunk-
lerer tinte auf rasur etwas über der zeile nachgetr.

- Swipe griseliche, a litel croume;
5660 Fast him biheld al þo in þe toune,
For þe mouþe he had grininge
& þe tong out flattinge,
þat out kest sparkes of fer,
Into þe skies þat flowen cler;
5665 þis dragoun hadde a long taile,
þat was wipperhoked, saunfaile.
Merlin com to þe gate
& bad þe porter him out late;
þe porter seyd, he schuld rest,
5670 What he hadde of his lord hest.
„Certes,“ quaf Merlin, „y þe telle:
No lenger resten here y nille!“
He toke þe gate bi þe legge
& slong hem vp at his rigge;
5675 þo he was out & his feren eke,
Fast oȝain þe gate he leke
Wip lockes, haspes & mani pin,
Wip mani bar & mani gin;
þus fast loken he hem fand
5680 & as fast after him lete hem stand.
Alle, þat seizen þis, saunfaile,
Of him hadde gret meruaile,
Boþe þo of þe cite
& eke his feren, bi mi leute!

5685 þo bad Merlin his compainie,
Her stedes priken & swiþe hiȝe;
Wip þe baner dast Merlins
Among to þousand Sarrazins,
þat ledden a wel gret pray
5690 Toward king Rion, y say.
Ich of hem so dede bere
þurch a Sarraín wiþ his spere,
Afterward her swerdes drowe
& þe Sarrazins to grounde slowe;

5663) spakes *ms.*

- 5695 Sum þai cleued to þe brest,
Sum þai binomen fot & fest;
Of mani þai hadde helme & heued
Sone fro þe bodi weued;
þe to & fourti weren zep,
5700 þai leten þer hors gode chep,
Boþe wiþ sadel & wiþ bridel
For nouȝt to haue & oway ride.
þe to þousand todriuen & slawe
þai hadden in a litel prawe,
5705 So man wold in a mile way
Ouer gon his jurnay,
& þat priis ladde at aise
Toward þe cite of Caroaise.
Ac so þai comen bi þe way,
5710 Eft þai metten michel pray:
A þousand cartes al mast
Comand wel swiþe on hast,
Swiche þre kinges wiþ .xvi. þousinde
Comen & condid hem bihindre,
5715 & Merlin seyd wiþ griseli chere:
„Now suweþ me, gode fere!“
Forþ he flang & þai after anon,
So swiþe so þe stedes mizt gon;
þo þai com þe kinges neize,
5720 Merlin hef his heued on heize
& kest on hem enchauntement,
þat he hem alle al mest blent,
þat non oper sen no mizt
A grete while, y zou plizt,
5725 & our fourti smiten hem on
& slowen of hem mani on
& mani .c. of painems hewe,
Ar ani þer oper knewe.
- f. 283 d.
- þo of þe cite seizen þis;
5730 þai seyden, it were men of priis;

⁵⁷⁰⁷⁾ aise] i ü. d. z. geschr.

þo were vp vndon þe gate,
Cleodalis rode out þer ate;
þe steward wiþ fiue þousinde
5735 Opon þe painems gun to windë;
þer was din, þer was cri,
Mani schaft broken, sikerly;
For in þe coming of Cleodalis,
þe paiens mizt sen, ywis,
þer was swiche contek & wonder,
5740 þat it dined so þe ponder.
Pis ich heþen kinges þre
Ato parted her meine,
Seuen þousand to ben þer rizt,
Ozain þe fiue þousand to fizt,
5745 & setten þer þousandes eizte,
Ozain king Leodegan to fizt,
þat hem toward *com* in þat stounde
Wip þridde half hundred of þe table rounde,
Ac bi hem self þe rounde table wes,
5750 þe king Leodegan, naþeles,
Wip him brouȝt þousandes to f. 234a.
& to þe bataile flongen þo.
þe .viii. þousand hem com ozain;
þer was meting of men o main
5755 Wip spere & wiþ scharp sword;
þer les mani man his lord,
þer was sched so michel blod,
þat it ran as a flos.
Leodegan wip his fewe,
5760 Noble main he gan to shewe;
He slouȝ þre ozaines anne
& craked mani hern panne.
þe kniȝtes of þe table rounde
Mani þer slouȝ in litel stounde
5765 & bilimeden & feld of hors
Mani heþen orped cors;
Ac þei her swerdes wele þer bite
& to ded mani smite,

⁵⁷⁴⁷⁾ *com*] om. ms. ⁵⁷⁴⁹⁾ *rounde*] d corr. aus e. ⁵⁷⁶²⁾ *craked*]
k corr. aus?

- It was swiþe litel sene,
5770 For ozaines on þer wer tene;
Ac so sarre was þe þrang,
þat non miȝt com hem omang.
þe Sarwazins hadde gret despite,
þat so hem schent swiche popel lite;
5775 He swore bi Mahoun & Dagon,
Hem no schuld ascape non,
& drouȝ hem wel fer aroume —
þat Crist hem zeue confusioun! —
& baren doun in þat stounde
5780 ȝete fourti of þe table rounde,
& were abouten, hem to dere,
Ac her feren hem gun were,
þat he no hadde power non,
Non of hem for to slon.
- 5785 þat time was Leodegan
Feld adoun & his man;
ȝete an hundred oþer mo,
Leodegan þai nomen þo
& beten him sore & zeuen him wounde
5790 & to an hors fast him bounde
& token fif hundred kniztes,
To lade him forþ anon riȝtes,
& so þai deden, sikerliche,
Defuiland vilanliche,
5795 Toward þe riche king Rion, f. 234 b.
& wenden, her bataile were ydon.
& þo þe king Leodegan
Him seize fer fram al his man
& him aboute socour non
5800 & him loþeliche lade to king Rion:
„Allas!“ he seyd, „þat y was bore:
Mi liif & priis so is forlore,
& Gvenoure, mi dohter gent,
Of vile paiems worþ yschant,
5805 & alle min noble kniztes
Worþ yslawe adoun riȝtes,

5782) unten auf der seite nachgetragen.

& þe leuedis of mi lond
Alle ynomen in payems hond!“
For riȝt gret sorwe & care
5810 A swon he fel, as he ded ware,
To gret mile fram þe bataile
þo he was, wiþ outen faile.

His doulter stode on þe cite wal
& biheld þis misauentour al;
5815 Hir hondes sche sett on hir here
& hir fair tresses al totere;
Sche hir totar to hir smok
& on þe wal hir heued gan knok
& swoned oft & seyd: ‘allas!',
5820 þat hir socour lorn was;
So deden al þo of þe cite,
Maden endeles pite.
þe kniȝtes of þe taþle rounde
Kedden, þai were men of mounde:
5825 Bitven hem þai wolden speke,
Leodegan þai wolden awreke,
Oper steruen þai wolden alle
& renged hem oȝain þe walle,
For þai no seizen no socour,
5830 & schewed þo her vigour;
þridde half hundred oȝain .M. seuen,
Me penkeþ, certes, þat was vneuen;
Ac per þai fouȝten vnder þe toun
& mani Sarrazin leyd adoun;
5835 Hem þai tohewen & hors al so,
þay poled michel pine & wo;
þe citisains þat yseize
& sore wepen wiþ her eize.
Now lete we hem fiztand here,
5840 & speke we of Arthour & his fere!

f. 234 c.

Now seyt our tale, saunfaile,
þat orible is þe bataile

5836) þay] y *aus t corr.*

- Of gret crie & swiþe strong,
Almest pennes füue forlong,
5845 þat Arthour held wiþ fourti & to,
& Cleodalis wiþ four þousand & mo,
Ozaines hem Sornegreons & king Sapharem,
þat seuen þousand hadd wiþ hem.
So fele paiems þer lay slawe,
5850 þat fele hepes þer lay on rawe
Of armed men, of fatt stede,
þat her liif þer les to mede.

- þo seyd Merlin to his ferrede:
„Now me suweþ alle, ich rede!“
5855 Forþ rideñ þe fourti & to,
So swiþe so þe hors miȝt go;
þer bileued Cleodalis
Wele fiztand, & al his.
þo Merlin hadde rideñ a while,
5860 þe mountaunce of to mile,
He seyd to king Arthour & Ban:
„Lo, ȝond men ledeþ Leodegan
Ybounden toward king Rion,
On hard dede for to slon:
5865 After hem now dasseþ swiþe
& oftakeþ hem biliue!
ȝif ȝou ascapeþ of hem ten,
Schal i ȝou neuer held men!“
þai stirten forþ & ouertoke hes
5870 & dassed hem amid þe pres;
þe first slouȝ Merlin, verrament,
To zeuen þe oþer gode talent;
Arthour smot on hem, saunfaile,
So on þe singel doþe þe haile;
5875 So we finden on þe bok,
Al he slouȝ, þat he oftok;
So dede Ban, þe gode kniȝt,
He clef mani on doun rizt;

⁵⁸⁵⁸⁾ Wele] *danach y, ausradirt.* ⁵⁸⁶⁸⁾ i] *danach ein*
buchst. ausradirt.

So dede king Bohors,
5880 He slouȝ þer mani heþen cors;
So deden al po gentil feren,
Her swerdes þai dede in blod steren;
Alle þai laiden doun rȝzt
& made þer swiche a sleȝt,
5885 þat man seize neuer in so litel stounde
So fewe bring so fele to grounde,
For þer no schaped fram hem olius
Of fiue hundred vnneþe fiue;
þer men mȝtten haue frely
5890 Four .c. steden for grameri,
þat zede, drawend her bridel brod
To þe fitlokes in þe blod.
þus Arthour & his felawered
Deliuerd Leodegan fram þe dede.
5895 Michel wonder had Leodegan,
þat swiche a litel poine of man
So fele in so litel prawe
So manliche had yslawe:
Bi þe dragon, þat kest fer,
5900 He wist, it were þe newe souders.
þat he was deliuerd fram his fon,
He þonked Iesu Crist anon.

f. 234 d.

þo liȝt þe clerk Merlin
& sir Bretel & sir Vlfín
5905 & þe king Leodegan vnbounde
& sett him on a stede of mounde
& armed him fineliche wel
& dede on his heued an helm of stiel,
About his nek a scheld strong,
5910 & toke him a launce long
& sett him vp as a king,
þat er lay as a breþeling;
He joined his honden, ioe vus di,
& zalt hem pank & grameri.

5890) grameri] das zweite r ü. d. z. geschr.

- 5915 On his stede þo lepe Merlin,
So dede Bretel & sir Vlfin.

þo seyd Merlin: „Mine kniztes fre,
Prikeþ zour stedes & folweþ me!“
So þai deden, wiþ outen abod,
5920 So aruwe of bowe ich forþ glod.

- Ac þo Gvenoure opon þe walle
þis to & fourti seize com alle,
Bi þe dragon, þat cast fer,
þat fleize in to þe skies cler,
5925 Sche wist, it were þe fourti & to;
Hir fader sche seize com al so,
On hors, yarmed & wele atired
& fram his fon þurch hem deliuerd.
No ask no man of þe gret blisse,
5930 þat sche made þan, ywis,
& al þe men, þat it seizen,
For ioie þai wepe wiþ her eizen.
þis þre & fourti com on hast,
Wiþ norþpen winde so doþ tempast;
5935 þe kniztes of þe table rounde,
þai founden alle felled to grounde,
þat stoden a fot & wered hem
Ozain on euer .xx. & ten.
Bot .xx. of hem openliche
5940 On hors fouȝten nobliche
& ouercarked weren þo;
Her liif, þat was neize ago.
þis .xliii. of gret mounde
So dassed on þe heþen hounde,
5945 þat ich of hem who so mett,
Hastiliche þe heued ofgrett,
& slowen hem doun in to þe grounde,
Mani geaunt in litel stounde.
Euerich dede swiþe wel
5950 Wiþ scharpe swerd of gode stiel;

f. 285 a.

⁵⁹²⁸⁾ fon] n von späterer hand und mit dunklerer tinte nachgetr.

Mani þai smiten þurch, saunfaile,
Fram þe top to þe taile,
Of sum þe side, god it wot,
Wiþ scheld & arme, eueri grot,
5955 Of sum þe midel euen ato,
Of sum þei & legge al so;
Auberk, aketoun & scheld
Was mani tobroken *in* þat feld
& mani paiem wiþ deþes wounde
5960 & mani stede coruen to grounde.
þe king him self þer, Leodegan,
Wele him wrake of his foman.
Ozain þe þre & fourti of our
Non armour no miȝt dour,
5965 No hors of priis no heþen kniȝt,
þat he nas dede anon riȝt.
þer was an heþen king, hiȝt Canlang,
Fiftene fet he was lang;
He & anoper, þat strengest were
5970 Of alle þe paiem, þat were þere,
þis dede his miȝt, saunfable,
To stroie þe kniztes of þe rounde table.

f. 235 b.

King Arthour mett Canlang,
Togider þai made fizing strang,
5975 & so strong was Canlang, verrament,
þat king Arthour miȝt fest no dent
To him haue, bot bihinde,
Bot ones he him hitt kerueinde
Vnder þe scheld þe scholder on,
5980 þurch out armes & flesche & bon,
Vnto þe nouel he him carf,
þe misbileueand paiem starf;
A boþe half his hors he hing,
þat ernne forþ arudand *in* þat bring.
5985 þe paiem seize Canlang so hit,
Agrisen of þat dint out of wit.

5957) aketoun] k corr. aus? 5964) miȝt] i ü. d. z. geschr.
5974) Togider] g corr. aus d.

Gvenour þat dint of Arthour seye
& þonked Iesu Crist on heize
& *seyd*: „*God zeue, þat he mi lord were,*
5990 *þat zong, þat fizteþ so þere!*“
Anon seyden al her men:
„*So were it me, dame, amen!*
For we no seize neuer of his power
Noþer eld man no bacheler!“

5995 King Ban þo mett Clarion,
þat oper strongest of euerichon;
He was *of* .xiiii. fet long
& swiþe gret & swiþe strong;
He hadde mani of our yslawe:
6000 King Ban him mett wiþ outen awe,
So we finden in þe boke,
& ouer þe ere he him toke,
þe cheke he carf, þe schulder al so,
To þe girdel þe dint gan go;
6005 His ribbes & scholder fel adoun,
Men miȝt se þe liuer abandoun.
King Bohort of gent power
Met Sarmedon, þe gomfanoun bere;
On þe schulder he him hit,
6010 þat arm & scholder of he kit;
His scheld & his gomfanoun
& him self per fel adoun.
King Leodegan þo gan crie:
„*For loue of þe quen Marie,*
6015 *Bistireþ zou, min gentil kniztes,* f. 235c.
& leggeþ doun þis paiems riztes!“
þe kniztes of þe table rounde
Alle lopen on hors o mounde
& hewen on þe Sarrazin
6020 Wip gode wille & hert fin.

þe paiems seize ded Canlang
& Clarion, þat was so strang,

5989) *seyd god] om. ms.* 5997) *of] gret ms.*

& þe baneour Sormedon;
þo þai nist, what to don,
6025 Ac, so swiþe so þai miȝt,
Oway floweren anon riȝt.
To þousand com out of þe cite
& feld hem doun wip outen pite,
Wip kniȝtes of þe table rounde
6030 þai hewen hem doun vnto þe grounde.

King Arthour & king Ban,
King Bohort & king Leodegan
& þe fourti liȝt & wiþstode
& gerten her stedes gode
6035 þurch conseil of Merlin, ywis,
& went & holpen Cleodalis,
þe king steward Leodegan,
þat fauȝt ozain seuen .M. man
Wip four þousand & namore,
6040 So ze herden here bifore.
þis fourti & to & on
Onpon þis seuen þousand smiten anon
& hewen on wip gret powers,
On schides so doþ þis carpenters;
6045 It was nede, for Cleodalis
Stode on fot, & mani of his
Aboute him stode sarreliche,
Fram deþ to were, sikerliche.

þer king Arthour & Bohort & Ban
6050 & þe king Leodegan
Paiems wip outen tale slouwe,
A þousand stedes her bridels drowe.
þis þre & fourti fouȝten so,
Forȝeten miȝt it be neuer mo,
6055 For þe blod of kniȝtes dede
& of destres & of stede
Ran hem after al day so ȝerne,
So water out of wel streme.

6030) hen ms.

6051) Paiems] s corr. aus e.

6058) destres ms.

þurch þe pouwer & miȝt of þos
6060 Cleodalis, þat kniȝt of los,
Was ybrouȝt on hors, ywis,
& kniȝtes oper fele of pris.

f. 235d

þe kinges of þo heþen man
Heten Sornegrex & Saphiran;
6065 Aiper of hem was .xiiii. fot lang
& swiþe hardi & swiþe strang,
& hadden swiþe gret despite,
þat hem schent pople so lite;
A schille horn þai gun blawe,
6070 To gider þai gader her felawe.

Kay & Vlfn, þe buteler,
& Grifles, þat was of gret power,
Ich of hem tok a launce long
& dassed þe Sarrazins among;
6075 Kay king Sornigrex hitt
& kest him to grounde in þat flit
& rode on him wiþ his hors
& defoiled his cursed cors,
& had him slawe, wiþ outen letting;
6080 Ac mani com to þis rideing:
Wiþ his launce dan Lucan
þe hert þurch smot of Abadan,
Ac on hors in þis toiling
Was brouȝt Sornigrex, þe king.
6085 þo aros gret batail & strif,
For of þe Sarrazins zete .M. fif
Were ouercomen vnder þe wal,
þider were flowen alle;
þer fore so fel þer were,
6090 þat litel was sene her sleȝster þer.

King Sornigrex, þat was yfeld,
His bodi tobrussed, tobrokeñ his scheld,
For schame he was out of wit;
Our folk he pouȝt for to hit

- 6095 & gred to alle þo Sarains,
þat for loue of Apolins
þai schuld of al his fon
Him awreke sone anon.
Of Sarazins gret þreng
6100 About our Cristen made reng
& hem biclepten in þat place
& leyden on wiþ swerd & mace,
& wiþ axes & wiþ gisharm
Our folk þai deden michel harm;
f. 236a.
- 6105 Ac in þis ich self stounde
Kniztes of þe table rounde,
þat folweden þe paiems fleinde,
Al on hors com flinginde
& seize þe pensel of fourti & to,
6110 þat day þat hadde hem holpen so;
In to bataile to hem þai drowen,
Alle þat þai met, þai doun slowen,
Boþe wiþ launce & swerd briȝt
þo þai metten, þai slouȝ doun rizt,
6115 & purch miȝt þai keuerden so,
þat þai com to fourti & to
& þo so gret sleȝt made,
þat y no may it ful rade.

- At þe oþer half Cleodalis
6120 Fauȝt wiþ Sarrazins of priis,
þat wiþ gret iniquite
Brouȝt hem oȝain to þe cite.
þe strong king Saphiran
It was, þat fauȝt him oȝan
6125 Wiþ neizen þousand, verrament,
& dede him gret encumbrement;
Ac þo ich to þousinde,
þat folwed þe oþer fleinde,
To help þer com Cleodalis
6130 & on þe paiems smot, ywis,

⁶⁰⁹⁵⁾ gred] d aus t corr. oder umgekehrt. ⁶¹⁰⁵⁾ ich] danach
ich, ausgestr. ⁶¹²²⁾ hem] h corr. aus?

In her coming & smiten to grounde
A pouſand paiemſ in þat ſtounde,
& þurc h̄elp of our drizt
Cleodalis halp wele to fizt
6135 & helden gode *contre oȝan*
Saphiran & al his man.
þo nar þo wiþ king Arthour
Bot to & fourti of valour,
& of þe rounde table kniztes
6140 To hundred & fifty wiȝte;
No more þer ner, ſo y finde,
& fouȝten oȝain .viii. pouſinde;
Sornegrex hete her king,
An hardi paiem þurc al þing.
6145 þer hadde ben miche mischeſ,
No had Merlin ſeyd a *conſeil bi hef*:
„Bieu ſeygnours, y nil nouȝt hele,
Of þis paiemſ beþ ſo fele,
þat we no may oȝain hem doure;
6150 Bot to mi *conſeil nimeþ coure*:
Her ben among þis Sarrazins
Ten geaunteſ wel ſtrong afins;
& þai were of dawe ydon,
þe bataile were paſſed ſone.“
6155 þai asked him, wiche þai were,
& he hem tauȝt anon riȝt þere.

f. 236 b.

King Ban, þat was gode & ſtrong,
Tok his ſwerd in his hond,
His ſtede he ſmot & forþ glod,
6160 Oȝain king Sornegrex he rode;
His helme he ſmot bi þe ſide,
þurc helme & palet it gan glide,
Fram þe cheke þe neb he bar,
þe ſcheld fram þe ſchulder par
6165 & þe left arme & þe hond;
Ich vnderſtond, he dede him ſchond.

6133) help] lelp(!) ms. 6138) of] *danach* anour, unter-
punktet. 6135) arme] r ü. d. z. geschr. 6166) ſchond] o
ureopr. e, mit dunklerer tinte in o verwandelt.

þe Sarrazins kest a gret cri
& fleize oway wiþ gret hy.

Bohort met Marganan
6170 & smot þat vnsely man
On þe helme, ichot for soþ,
þat he him cleued to þe top.

King Arthour, so dieu me saut,
Met wiþ amiral, was hoten Sinalaut;
6175 On þe helme he him hitt
& a quarter þer of kitt;
On þe schulder slod þe dent
& kitt it of, verrament,
& þer wiþ ribbes four;
6180 þe painem starf wiþ misantour.

Sir Vlfn slouȝ po Sabalant
& Bretel þe douk Cordant;
þe steward Kay slouȝ Danderiard,
& Lucan þe boteler slouȝ, Malard,
6185 & Grifles so slouȝ Menadap,
& Meragys slouȝ þe douke Sadap,
& Gorueins slouȝ þe douke Maupas,
& Craddok slouȝ Darrilas;
þese were þe geauntes ten
6190 & princes of þe heþen men.
po þe paiems hem ded seize, f. 236 c.
A cri þai gun areren heize
& seyd, it were deuelen, þat þai wiþ fouȝten,
Sikerliche, so hem pouȝten.
6195 þai flowen oway wiþ outen abode,
Our folk swiþe after hem rode
& to grounde slouȝ doun riȝt
Al, þat þai oftake miȝt;
þre þousend þai slowen of þe eizte;
6200 þe oper ascaped anon riȝt

6200) oþer] r ü. d. z. von späterer hand mit dunklerer tinte
nachgetr. 6181—88) Vor jedem dieser verse ist ein abschnittszeichen.

To þe riche king Saphiran;
þo were þai .xiiii. þousand of man
& smiten on Cleodalis,
þat had bot four þousand, ywis,
6205 & þe to, þat comen out of þe cite;
þer men seize wel gret pite,
Hou þe painems & king Saphiran
Defoiled our cristenmen;
A þousand & mo þai slowen,
6210 þe remanant of hors drowen.
Oft Cleodalis was wo,
Ac neuer wers, þan him was þo;
Ydriuen he was vnder þe toun
& loked after þe dragoun,
6215 þat Merlin bar, ac he no miȝt
Nowhar of him han a siȝt,
No þe kniȝtes of þe rounde table
Miȝt he no whar se, saunfable;
He wende, þat dede þai hadden ben;
6220 þer miȝt men gret pite sen:
Now he flowe, now he wiþstode,
For drede he was neize wode.
þe citaisins þan seize þis
& reweliche cri maden, ywis;
6225 Ac þurch Merlin, so ich finde,
Arþour was bileued bihinde
& þe oþer, wiþ outen fable,
þe kniȝtes of þe rounde table,
& adden alle adoun alizt,
6230 Her stedes girt, her sadels riȝt,
& soft & sarre, saunfaile,
Com to þis reweful bataile.
þo on þe walles of þe toun
Seize comand þe dragoun;
6235 þo seyd þe fair leuedis f. 236 d.
To þe steward Cleodalis:
„Cleodalis, þou gentil kniȝt,
Bistir þe & hardiliche fiȝt,

6230) her] he ms.

6238) on] n ganz ausradirt.

For zonder doun in þe valaie
6240 Zou comeþ socour of gret noblay :
We seþ þe dragoun, þat casteþ fer,
& after þe newe souders
& Ledegan wiþ hem, saunfable,
& þe kniȝtes of þe rounde table ;
6245 Alle þai comen ȝerne, a pliȝt :
Now kiþe, þou art a noble kniȝt !“
Cleodalis in alle his liue
Nas neuer ȝete so bliþe ;
þo he & his kniȝten
6250 So wele fouȝten, so þai miȝten.

Arthour & Ban & king Bohort,
þer hem com to gret comfort ;
Wiþ her folk of gret mounde
þre hundred þai bar to grounde ;
6255 Ac a leſt half & a rizt
King Arthour slouȝ doun rizt ,
Wiþ Esclabor, his swerd so gode ,
þat day he schad so michel blode :
Al so dede þe king Ban ,
6260 þer slouȝ mani heþen man ;
Bohort, his broþer, & eke he
Spard noiþer þral no fre ;
Of stiel no yren armes nan
No miȝt doure hem oȝan ,
6265 No may y noiþer telle no rede ,
Hou wele þai deden her ferrede .
Ac þe leuedis on þe tour
ȝerne biheld king Arthour
& hadde wonder of his ȝingþe ,
6270 þat þer kidde swiche strengþe .
þe heþen king Saphiran
Despite hadde of so fewe men ,
So miche folk þat slowen þo ,
Mani geaunce þai cleued ato .

6250) so] s aus þ corr.

6270) strengþe] strerngþe ms.

- 6275 He cleped to him Sortibran
& Senebant & Eugredan,
Molore & eke Frelent
& Clariel, a geaunt gent,
Landon & ek Moras
6280 & Randel, þat noble was;
To hem aloude he gan to speke,
Wip launce his anoie to wreke.

f. 237 a.

- Forþ dassed þe king Saphiran,
þat vnsely hoge man,
6285 Herui Riuel & his hors gent
He frust doun at o dent,
þat hors & man astuned lay;
3ete forþ he dassed, par ma fay,
& þrewe sir Antor of his hors,
6290 þat al þat day him was þe wors;
3ete forper he gan ride
& smot Griffes bi þe side
& kest him to þe grunde,
His launce brac in his wounde,
6295 & Sortibran wip justing cler
Feld Lucas, þe buteler;
Clariel feld Merangys
& sore hirt him, ywis;
Eugredan feld Gorains & Craddoc
6300 & sore agreued our floc;
Senebant þrewe doun Bleoberis
& his hors vnder him, ywis.
þus þe geauntes our kniztes þrewe;
Our men gun it sore rewe,
6305 Non of hem had dedeli wounde,
Ac sone stirt vp in þat stounde
& wiþ scharpe swerdes of stiel
Wered hem manliche wel;
Our folk abuten hem gan þrest
6310 & socourd hem wiþ þe best.

6281) aloude] nach u u, untermunktet.
z. geschr.

6284) hoge] h ü. d.

& zete in þis strong rideing
Com Saphiran, þe heþen king,
& in his hond a launce strong,
þat was boþe gret & long;
6315 Leodegan on þe scheld he hitt
& wiþ strengþe it þurch slit;
His hond he bar heize ferly,
þe launce glod þe king forby,
þat ran þurch þe hors bihinde;
6320 King & hors adoun gan winde.
„Allas!“ þai seyd on þe tounes wal,
„Now we han ylorn al!“
þai wende, þe king yslawe ware,
& maden diol & sorweful fare;
6325 Gvenour made gret diol, ywis,
& so dede al po leuedis,
þat þat ich dint yslawe;
þai wende, þe king were yslawe:
So he hadde for sop yben,
6330 No hadde oþer stirt bitven
& him halp in þat rideing.
þo spac Arþour, þe king:
„Certes,“ he seyd, „þis nis no game,
þe paiems dop ous swiche schame!“
6335 & swore, he wold sterue anon
Oþer him awreke of his fon,
& namlich on Saphiran.
„Nay, lete me,“ quaþ king Ban,
„For þou art to zong & ek to lite,
6340 Ozain swiche a deuel to smite!“
þo seyd Merlin to Arþour
A word of gret deshonour:
„Wat abidestow, coward king?
þe paiem zif anon meteing!“
6345 For schame Arþour was neize wode,
In wratþe brent al his blod;
His hors he smiteþ & he forþ glod,
Ozain king Saphiran he rode.

⁶³¹⁷⁾ bar] *danach ein buchst. ausradirt.* ⁶³²²⁾ we] *w corr.*
aus h. ⁶³⁴⁸⁾ *coward king]* *auf rasur geschr.*

- Saphiran seize, war he cam,
6350 A strong launce in hond he nam,
Toforn him his scheld he grope,
Stef he streizt his stirope,
His stede he smot of gret valour
& rode ozain king Arthour:
6355 A deuel rod ozain a child.
King Ban for drede was nei wilde
& rode after king Arthour,
To helpen him par auentour.
Saphiran wip king Arthour mett,
6360 Wip miȝt gret on him stett,
His scharp launce gan to glide
þurch Arthour scheld & his side;
þe speres schaft al torof,
Arthour nam no ȝeme þer of,
6365 Ac in sadel sat vp rizt,
To mete Saphiran, a plizt;
His launce he bar þurch out his scheld f. 237 c.
& þurch þe hauberk fele feld,
þurch þe wombe & þurch þe chine
6370 þe spere ȝede euen bi line.
Quaþ Arthour: „þou hepen cokin,
Wende to pi deuel Apolin!“
þe paiem fel ded to grounde,
His soule lauzt helle hounde.
6375 Gvèneoure sat on þe cite walle
& þe oþer leuedis alle,
Of Arthour seize justing þis,
On him þai laiden al þe priis.
Anon after þe king Ban
6380 Met þe geaunt Sortibran
& on þe scholder so him hit,
þe side fram þe bodi kitt.
þo com Malore & Frelen
& nomen Ban, þat king so gent,
6385 Bi þe helme wip her hond;
To smite of his heued þai gun fond.

6375) Geneoure ms.

þis yseize þe king Arthour
& smot his stede to þat socour;
Malore in þe heued he hitt,
6390 þe heued fram þe bodi he kitt.

þo þouȝt þe paiem Frelen^t
Awreke his cosyn of þat dent;
To Arthour wiþ main he smot,
His scheld he clef, god it wot,
6395 & of his hauberk a gore
& of his aketoun a fot & more,
Ac he no tok nouȝt his flesche;
Her of Arthour anoid wes;
A dint he smot anon to him
6400 & cleue his helme & eke bacin
& al þe heued to þe brest;
þe paien fel wiþ iuel rest.
þe paiens schirt & made dol,
For þai no hadde þo bot Randol,
6405 A geaunt, þat bar þe gomfanoun;
Alle þe oper were leyd adoun.
þe paiens of dep hadden doute
& alle wenten Randol aboute;
Ac Ban no leued for no doute,
6410 þat he no dassed hem purch out
& Randoil on þe schulder he smot f. 237 d.
Wiþ his swerd, þat wele bot,
purch out hauberk & aketoun
To þe midel al adoun;
6415 þe pensel fel & eke Randol.
þe paiens þer of hadden diol
& gun rere a wel foule qrie,
So dorren don & flesche fleizen,
& for sorwe & drede & eize
6420 þai flowen euerich his weize.
King Arthour, wiþ outen abade,
& alle þe oper, of whom y tofore sade,

6405) þe] he(!) ms.

6415) Randoil ms.

- After þis paiens fling
& mani of hem to dep sting;
6425 Wip scharp swerd of gode egge
þe liif þai dede mani on legge.
Of .xiiii. pou sand, boten fwe,
No aschaped to king Rion ollie,
Wip michel sorwe & michel care,
6430 & þat al forwounded ware;
King Rion al þai teld,
Hou her feren weren aqueld.
Wel wrop was king Rion po
& made diol & michel wo,
6435 & swiftliche he sent his sond
• Ouer al in to Irlond
& in to Danmark al so;
þe messangers forþ gun go,
þat bere letters & tidings
6440 To on & .xx. strong kinges,
To hundred .m. þat schulden bring,
& .l. .m. of heþen genge
& for to zer her spending,
& so þai dede, wip outen lesing.
6445 After þis bataile & scumfite
Our men, bope gret & lite,
To gider gaderd hem comonliche
& comen hom nobleliche
& biforn hem driuen al þe pray
6450 Of .xx. .c. cartes, y say,
& com to Carohaise, þat riche toun.
Wip ioie & wip processiou.
King Leodegan po hete
His men nimen þat pray skete,
6455 þat in þe twenti .c. cartes was, f. 238 a.
Taken it Arthour more & las.
So deden þe kinges kniȝtes;
Arthour nome it anon riztes
& parted it wel curtaisliche
6460 Bi Merlins conseil, sikerliche,

6458—60) auf rasur geschr.

& so miche þaf his ost Blaise,
þat riche him made & wele at aise;
Ac Arthour no Ban no forþ his host
No lenge wip Blasie soiourne most,
6465 Ac to court þai were yfeched ~~raſe~~
& ydon in riche bape;
Gvener wesc he king Arthour
& Ban & Bohort wip honour;
Gvenore, anoper damisel,
6470 & oper maiden fair & fel
Weschen alle her gentil feren.
Here ze schul now yheren,
Hou he oper Gvenour was bizete:
Y wil, þat ze it alle wite.

6475 þo Leodegan spoused his quene,
A burmaiden sche hadde fair & schene,
On fair maner & gentil wise,
þat serued he leuedi of heize prise;
he kinges steward, Cleodaldis,
6480 Seize pis maiden of gret prise
& spac so fair to he king,
þat he wedded þat swete þing.
After a zer oper to, ywis,
þat gentil kniȝt Cleodaldis
6485 Went, per him hete he king,
& left his wiif in he quenes zeming,
& ich zou sigge, par ma fay:
In he quenes chaumber sche lay.
Ich niȝt it was he quenes maner,
6490 To chirche gon & matins here;
Al so he quen herd matines,
he king aros bi wrongful lines
&, what bi loue & what bi striif,
He forlay he stewardes wiif
6495 & bizat a maide of gret mounde,
þat was Gvenour he secounde;

6462²) hem ms.

6465) rare ms.

6476) sche] he ms.

& fram þat time al afterward,
He binam þe wif his steward
& hadde hir fer in on *castel* trist, f. 238 b.
6500 Whiderward, þe steward nist.
Napeles, Cleodalis,
þat gentil kniȝt of michel priis,
Noiper in seruise no in bataile
No feined ozain þe king, saunfaile.
6505 Þis Gvenour was þe oper so liche,
So pani is oper, sikerliche.
þese weschen þis gentil man
& leyd tables after þan;
Leodegan nam zeme wiþ onour,
6510 Alle þe oper born king Arthour.
King Arthour sat, wiþ outen fable,
Midelest at þe heize table;
King Ban at his rizt half sat,
Ac þe oper half king Bohort at;
6515 Afterward her compeinie
Was yset, þritti & neie,
& next hem, wiþ outen fable,
Sat þe kniȝtes of þe rounde table;
After þat ysett were þere
6520 Al þo oper, after þai were.
In halle þai hadden riche seruise:
Where to schuld y þat deuise?
Ac Gveneour, wiþ outen les,
Serued Arthour of þe first ines;
6525 Leodegan, þat wele y say,
Biheld his douhter & Arthour noblay;
So michel on hem he pouȝt,
þat of mete no drink he no rouȝt.
A noble kniȝt, Herui de Riuel,
6530 Vndernam his semblaunt wel
& seyd: „Sir, þi pouȝt lete be
& make pine ostes gamen & gle:
Eten & drink men schal on benche
& after mete in chaumber penche!“

⁶⁴⁹⁹⁾ *castel*] om. ms. ⁶⁵¹⁹⁾ *were*] auf rasur geschr. ⁶⁵²⁰⁾ *þo*]
danach ein buchst. ausradirt. ⁶⁵³²⁾ &] om. ms.

- 6535 þe king þis tale vnderstode
& made his gestes semblaunt gode,
Ac on Gveneour biheld Arthour
& was al nomen in hir amour,
Ac he tempred so his blod,
6540 þat non oþer it vnderstode.
Gvenoure on knewes oft gan stoupe,
To serue king Arthour wiþ þe coupe,
& he seyd to hir, saunfaile: f. 238 c.
„Crist lete me zeld þe bi trauail!“
6545 & sche seyd to him: „Sir, grameri,
It nis nouȝt to zeld, sir, ie vus dy,
Ac swiche a pouand, so y be,
Sir, no miȝt it zeld þe,
þe help & þe trauail & þe honour,
6550 þat ze han don to mi lord, & ȝour socour:
Yherd be Iesus Cristes sond,
þat ȝou sent in to þis lond!“
Gveneour was euer tofor Arthour
& serued him wiþ gret honour,
6555 & bifor eueri gentil man was
Maidens, to serue wiþ gret solas;
þer were trumpes & fipelers
& stiuours & tabourers;
þai eten & dronken & made hem glade;
6560 & þo þai were al glad made,
þe clopes weren vp ydrawe
& þai weschen, so it was lawe.
After mete asked king Ban
To þe king Leodegan,
6565 Whi Gvenour, his doucher precious,
To sum gentil man nere yspouse,
Seþpen he no hadde non airs.
„Certes, sir,“ quaþ Leodegan, „vairs,
3if were ner, so mot y liue,
6570 Sche were mani day yzeue;
Wist ich owhar ani bacheler,
Vigorous & of miȝt cler,

6558) stinours ms.?

6559) droken ms.

6566) were ms.

& he were of gode linage,
þei he nadde non hirritage,
6575 Mi douhter ich wald him ȝiue
& al mi þing, wiþ to liue!“
For king Arthour bat he seyd;
Merlin þo toforn hem pleyd
& cleped vp king Arthour & Ban
6580 & her feren fram Leodegan,
So bat Leodegan miȝt of no þing
More wite of her being;
þer seyd Merlin anon riȝt
To king Arthour al þe sleiȝt,
6585 bat Wawain & his feren of mounde
Hadde ydon biside Lounde,
& al, bat þer whiles schuld falle,
He teld þer biforn hem alle,
Wher purch blipe in bat toun
6590 þai bileft til þe assensioun.
Lete we now here king Arthour
& his feren wiþ gret honour,
& hereþ of þe chaunces ille,
þer whiles in Ingland bifelle!

f. 238 d.

6595 Listneþ now, fele & fewe:
In May þe sonne felleþ dewe;
þe day is miri & draweþ along,
þe lark arereþ her song,
To mede goþ þis damisele
6600 & fair floures gadreþ fele.

King Arthour is leued at Carohaise
& alle his frendes, wele at aise,
& euerich cite, bat was his owe,
Castels, tours, heize & lowe,
6605 He dede warnise wiþ store þan,
bat he no doubted non hapen man.
Ac swiþe gret confussiouns
Bifel þer whiles to our barouns,

6607) gre ms.

þat were ywent ato wel wide,
6610 Euerich to loke his owen side.

In þis time a messanger cam
To þe king, sir Cradelman,
& seyd, so ich writen finde:
„Of paiens .xx. þousinde
6615 Comeþ a boþe half Arundel,
Yarmed swiþe wel!“
Swiftliche þe king Cradelman
Nam .x. þousand armed man;
Haluendel tok Pollidamas,
6620 His nevou, þat gode kniȝt was,
þe oper del him seluen he tok,
So we finden on þe boke.
þai ride[n] forþ anon rizt,
Til þai com to hem, a plizt,
6625 & founden hem on a grene plas,
Ich of hem slepeand was;
Al abouten þai biclept hes
& smiten on, wiþ outen les,
Wiþ hors fete þai ride[n] hem on
6630 & purch stongen mani on;
purch swerd & ax, spere & kniif
þer les mani a man þe liif;
Non hadde mizt, hem to were,
Noiþer wiþ swerd no wiþ spere,
6635 Ac alle, þat euer mizt flen,
Swipe gun oway ten
To a castel, wiche held Cramile,
þennes ouer þre mile,
Heize & strong, a roche opon;
6640 Hir broþer hiȝt Bordogabron:
þer was in wiþ hir þo
.xx. þousand paiems & mo;
.xv. þousand king Cradelman
Slouȝ of þat heþen man;

f. 239a.

⁶⁶³⁷⁾ wiche h. C.] auf rasur geschr.

6645 þe füe þousand flowen oway,
Our folk hem suwed, par ma fay.

þe paiens, þat wib Cramile were,
Her feren þai seize misfare;
'As armes!' gred alle, þat þer was,
6650 Boþe þe more & þe lasse.
.xiiii. þousand lopen on stede,
Armed alle in riche wede,
& smiten on king Cradelman;
þer was miche sleiȝt of man.
6655 þer whiles þe gentil men of Arundel
Wenten out & seseden wel
Gold & siluer & purpel pelles,
Mete & drink & mani þing elles,
þat þe paiens þer hadden late,
6660 þai went to Arundel & schet þe gate
& stowen vp heize on þe walle,
To sen, what miȝt to our bifalle.
Bi þat þai com on þe wal on heize,
Cradelman was scomfite neize;
6665 Doun þai lepen of þe walle,
& 'as armes!' þai gredden alle;
On gode hors þai lepen of priis,
Füe hundred þer were, ywis,
To socour & comen anon
6670 & halp wele Cradelman,
þat hadde lorn of ten þousinde
þe þre þousand, so y finde.
þe paiens of þousindes fourten
þe four hadden lorn, so y wen.
6675 Ac þer swiche bataile aros, f. 239 b.
A boþe half þat hem agros;
Ac our had hadde þer more wo,
No hadde a chaunce ben, þat bifel þo;
For þe king of þe hundred kniztes
6680 Com hem vp þo forþ riztes,

⁶⁶⁴⁷⁾ wiþ] danach zwei buchst. ausradirt. ⁶⁶⁵⁶⁾ deden ms.
⁶⁶⁶⁴⁾ neize] eiȝ sehr verkratzt.

- þat hadde yherd before teld,
Hou þaiens þe cuntry hadde aqueld,
& come priueliche, þaiens to aspie,
To binimen hem her robrie;
- 6685 .x. þousand he hadde gode kniȝten,
þe haluendel he dede dizten
To Morganor, his steward,
In armes stalworþ & hard.
þis dasched on þe Sarrazins
- 6690 Wip gode wille & hert fins;
Eueriche wiþ his strong spere
þurch a Sarrazin gan it bere;
.v. forlong he dede hem recoile
& vnder hors fete defoile;
- 6695 Ich on oper fast hewe.
Ac þe Sarrazins þo it sewe,
Hou þat men her folk hit
& hou fele fel in litel fit,
þai arered a cri of more wonder
- 6700 þan tempest o fer or ponder;
Alle, þat euer fle miȝt,
Oway flowen anon rizt.
Ac our kniȝtes & our barouns
Hem tauȝt so her lessouns,
- 6705 þat of fourten þousand fram deþ
No ascaped bot þre vnneþ;
Of hem ran as michel blod,
So in riuer, when it is flod;
þer lay of þaiens mani tasse,
- 6710 Wide & side, more & lasse;
Mani fair stede dede þer lay
& mani wiþ blodi sadel ȝede astray,
For seþpen first in on þrawe,
Fiftene þousand þer were yslawe,
- 6715 & er weren, al so ich finde,
Afor yslawe þritten þousinde.
þus fele þai slouȝ of hatþen,
þat schuld hem no more waite scapen;

6685) kniȝten] t aus e corr.

6700) o] sehr verkratzt.

It þouȝt hem a fair pracie,
6720 Ac þo at arst agan her joie,
For euerich oþer knewe sone
& þonked god midydone
Of þe help & þe socour,
þat eueriche dede oþer wiþ vigour,
6725 & anon wiþ outen onde
Went in to Arundel, ich vnderstond,
& dede biri þat ich day
þe cristen in chirche hay;
Of þe paiens, þat were in lond,
6730 Gret conseil þai held, ich vnderstond.

f. 239 c.

þo seyd þe king Angvigenes,
þe king of þe hundred kniȝtes wes:
"Ich rede, we sende our sond
To alle our peres of þis lond,
6735 þat we ous geder to gider alle
& on þe paiens at ones falle
& fonden bi fine mizt,
To slen hem alle doun rizt!"
"Certes," quap Cradelman,
6740 "Me þink, þat nere nouȝt wele don,
For ozain on of our men
Bep mo þan þritti & ten;
Zete is better for ich cas,
þat eueriche baroun loke his pas
6745 & aspie hem bi tropie
& so fond hem to astroie.
No schal ich no non of mine
Ben bihinde for dep no pine!"
þo þai hadden seyd þis word,
6750 Ich bitauȝt oper our lord;
Anon hom ich of hem went, cert,
Of þat pray ich hadde his part,
Where þurch þai mizten after long
þe better hem ȝeme fram wer & wrong.

⁶⁷⁵²⁾ part] a, urspr. e, unterpunktet und a mit dunklerer tinte
übergeschr.

6755 Lete we now þes billeuen here
& speke we now of her fere!

Per comen vp fer bi norþ
Ten riche soudans of gret worþ.
þe first king hete Oriens;
6760 þe oper hete Pongerrens;
þe pridde hete Mangloires;
þe ferþ het Gondeffles;
þe fist soudan het Sorbars
& þe sext het Pincenars;
6765 þe seuend soudan het Fraidons
& þe heizte Salbrons;
þe neizd het Maliaduc,
þe tenþ Bargon, an hepen douc.
þes comen vp, so ich finde,
6770 Wip fiften .c. þousinde
& wip þe stouer of to zare:
þer wip þai miȝt wele fare.
Ac þo þai comen vp on lond,
þai senten her folk, ich vnderstond,
6775 Bi seuen þousand & bi heizte,
Vplondismen to sle doun rizt;
Bi nizen þousand & bi ten
þai senten about, to slen our men.
In þis sorweful time & lange
6780 In to þe cite of Coruanges
Messangers com to Angvisaunt, þe king,
& teld him reweful tiding:
„Sir,“ he seyd, „bitven þis cite & Lauernv
Fiftene þousand be comen nov,
6785 Sarrains, þat wiþ fire wilde
Brennen man, wiif & childe;

f. 239 d.

6759—68) Vor jedem dieser verse ist ein abschnittszeichen.
6764) Pincenars] i aus e corr. oder umgekehrt. 6768) tenþ]
þ später nachgetr. 6769) þes] s aus i corr. 6776) Vpl.] is
stark ausradirt.

Bot þou hem socourest anon,
þai be forlorn, euerichon!"

- þe king was sori & no þing blife:
6790 „As armes!" he grad swiþe;
.xv. þousand al armed, ywis,
þer lopen on gode hors of priis
To on hille & gun hem heize,
þis mesauentour for to aspie.
6795 þo seize þai al þe cuntry
Stonden brenand on rede leize,
Man & woman vrn so dere
Ouer al for dout of þe fer;
Mani man for drede lete his wiif,
6800 þe wiif hir child, þe child his liif.
Quaþ king Angvisaunt: „Woleway,
þat ich euer bot þis day,
& þat ich euer schuld sen
þus miche rewþe on erþe ben!"
6805 His men þer he schift ato,
Half he tok him self & mo,
& haluendel he toke Gaudin,
þat was a kniȝt hardi & fin,
þat seþpen wiþ his mizti hand
6810 Wan þat maiden of þe douke Brauland;
þese smiten þe hors of priis
& deden hem gon gode scour, ywis;
þurch mani bodi haþen
Her launces þai dede baþen;
6815 After þat her swerdes þai drowen
& sexti þousand to grounde slowen,
Els who seyt, *it is* al for nouȝt,
For þai wer abrod ydreyȝt;
Ac sone per after, nouȝt for þan,
6820 Fourti þousand after hem cam,
Ac our þurch godes miȝt
Wele hem stode ozain to fȝt

f. 240 a.

⁶⁷⁸⁷⁾ socouref ms. ⁶⁷⁹²⁾ lopen] e corr. aus o. ⁶⁷⁹⁴⁾ mesauen-
tour] a corr. aus s. ⁶⁸¹⁷⁾ Als ms. *it is*] om. ms. ⁶⁸¹⁸⁾ wer]
r ü. d. z. geschr.

& cleued mani heþen hounde
Fram þe top to þe grounde
6825 & deden al forþ manliche,
For leuer hem were be ded, sikerliche,
In manschippe & in trewþe,
þan euer more liue in rewþe,
& so nobliche her dint bisett,
6830 þat neuer men no deden bet.
Allas! allas! gret pite
Sone fel on þis gent meine:
Lenger douren þai no miȝt,
For opon hem com anon riȝt
6835 þe forseyd soudans ten
Wip alle þe cuntry wreȝten of men
& biclept al about
Our litel cristen rout
& slouȝ of our compainie,
6840 Verament, þousandes nize.
þo was þer of .xv. þousand
Yleued bot sex bihinde
& þe oper flowen al so ȝerne,
So her stedes miȝt erne;
6845 Ac þer no hadde non scaped oway,
Nadde chaunce comen fram Crist on heize.
Vriens, þe king of Schorham,
þe Sarrazins bihinde cam
& his nevou Baldemagu,
6850 A strong kniȝt of gret vertu,
Wham Vriens ȝaf half his lond f. 240 b.
Out of Owains, his sones, hond;
þese wiþ hem .xii. þousinde brouȝt,
þat of dede litel rouȝt.
6855 Men hem teld of michel sorwe,
þer fore þai went out bi þe morwe
& pouȝt, to don sum alegaunce
Pouer men of her greuaunce,
& comen hem sodanliche
6860 Opon alle þe paiens, sikerliche.

⁶⁸²⁷⁾ trewþe] *nach w e, unterpunktet.*
d. z. geschr. ⁶⁸⁴⁷⁾ Vnriens *ms.*

⁶⁸⁴⁸⁾ ȝerne] *r u.*

þese weren alle gode kniȝt
& flongen opon þe paiens anon riȝt;
Wip strong launce, god it wot,
Euerich a paiem þurc smot,
6865 & sum wiþ o launce schaft,
What þurc miȝt & godes craft,
Four oper fiue slowe;
þer after ich his swerd drowe,
& ich zou telle for soþe & siker:
6870 þer bigan a stern biker,
For þe Sarrazins turned oȝen
On king Vrien & his men.
þer was mani heued ofweued
& mani to þe midel cleued
6875 & mani of his hors ylust;
For soþe, þer ros so michel dust,
þat of þe sonne schineand briȝt
No man miȝt haue no siȝt;
Here & þer crie & honteye,
6880 Men miȝt hem heren þre mile way.
King Anguisaunt & meine his
Was yflowen a fer weys;
Socour com, þat he vnderstode,
& turned oȝain wiþ hardi mode
6885 On þe Sarrazins & smite
Wip swerde, þat wele bite,
& a pouȝand on a rawe
þai haden sone brouȝt o dawe.
þat was bataile of mende
6890 Bitven deuelen & kniztes hende;
þe Sarrazins ost & pray
Last fele mile way.

Vriens at þat o nende fauȝt
& his kniztes, þat spared nauȝt.
6895 Angvisant fauȝt at þe oper ende,
Non no miȝt com oper hende

f. 240 c.

6887) rawe] a ü. d. z. nachgetr. 6888) at] a corr. aus?
Altenglische Bibliothek. IV.

- No bi fele wayes sen,
So fele deuelen hem were bitven.
Our folk wiȝtliche hem gan were
6900 Wip ex & swerd & scharpe spere ;
ȝete hadde þai lorn gret lore & sleȝst,
ȝif on hem no hadde comen þe niȝt,
þat þai ne seize miche no lite,
Ani to oper arizt to smite.
6905 Ich wot, for soþe, of þe heþen men
Were yslawe swiche ten,
þan were of our cristiens ;
Ac swiþe anon þo wiþþerwins
Her pauilouns þo telten rizt,
6910 For to billeue al þat niȝt.

King Aguisaunt went hom
To Coranges rizt anon ;
Nȝen þousinde hem were yslawe.
þo þe citeseines it sawe,
6915 þer was mani leuedi,
þat sore biwepe her ami,
& mani gentil damisele
Hir fader biwepe wiþ teres fele ;
þe soster biwepe her broper
6920 & euerich frende biwepe oper.

þis time went king Vrien
To þe cite wiþ alle his men ;
Al so he com bi þe way,
He fond cartes & michel praye
6925 & loges & pauilouns
Telt on a swiþe grene roum.
þo asked king Vrien,
Wip whom þai weren & wos men.
þai seyd, wiþ king Brangore
6930 & Wandlesbiri, & lay þore ;
Of Sessoine þis heize king was
& hadde made al þis purchas

6926) grene swiþe *ms.*

- On our men, ywis,
For þe sibred of douke Angis.
6935 King Vriens, wip outen abode,
& al his folk on hem rode,
On her heueden, & feld adoun
Boþe loges & pauiloun.
To mete þai weren alle yset; f. 240 d.
6940 For soþe, hem was litel þe bet,
For on hem were stet þe hors
& defoiled her foule cors.
Tables, cloþes, bred & wine,
Plater, disse, cop & maseline
6945 Was vnder hors fete totoiled
& mani riche þing defoiled.
Vnarmed were þe paiens alle,
Our folk hem gun to talle;
Wip swerd & ax, spere & kniif,
6950 þai binome þe paiens her liif
& so hem tohewe anon rizt,
þat þai nadde power, ozein to fizt,
Bot were al yslawe *in* litel stounde,
Euerichon vnto þe grunde,
6955 Bot fourti paiens vnneþe,
þat hem ascaped fram þe deþe,
Wiche þat nizt vnderfenge
Oriens, þat riche king,
& miche biment, þat he no mizt
6960 Awreken hem þat ich nizt,
Ac amorwe he wold fond
Brennen & spillen al þis lond.
Amonges men it were ille,
3if eueriche vnwrest hadde his wille.
- 6965 King Vriens & his kniȝtes, siker,
After þis ich noble biker
Token al þis riche praie,
Pelles, purper, gold & monaye;

6956) dere ms.

6958) Oriens] s *auf rasur geschr.*

- .v. hundred somers, wiþ outen lesing,
6970 þer were charged wiþ riche þing,
& sex hundred cartes, so y biþenke,
Ful of flesche & mete & drinke;
Alle þai ladden wiþ hem þis
In to þe cite wiþ ioie & blis.
6975 þe heize boþe & þe lawe
þe bet ferd gret þrawe.
Lete we now be þis soiourne
& speke we of Oriens wroþ & morne
For þis ich .viii. þousinde,
6980 þat were yslawe him bihindre.
Amorwe aros king Oriens
& hete castels bren & touns,
& alle þe houses, þat þai founde,
þai schulden bren in to þe grounde,
6985 Man & hounde, wiþ & child,
þai schuld bren wiþ fer wilde;
& so þai deden, wiþ outen pite,
& spredden abrod in þe cuntry
& setten on rede laite
6990 Al þat euer þai miȝten awaite.

t. 241 a.

- Saigremor, a child noble,
Was comen fram Costentine noble,
In þis time, þat ze heren,
Wiþ seuen hundred gentil feren,
6995 Of king Arthour kniȝtes to ben,
3if þai miȝt so yþen;
þes metten children & wiues,
& men, to sauuen her liues,
Vrn & stirten þer & her,
7000 For houndes so dop þe wilde der.
Segremor hem asked, whi
þai vrn & made swiche cri;
þai seyd, for drede of þe hapen,
þat hem brent & dede scaben;
7005 þai asked, where was þe king Arthour,
& þai him swore, bi seyn sauour,

To Carmalide he was ygan,
To help king Leodegan.

- „Certes,“ quāp Sagremoret,
7010 „Oper we schul sterue in þis flet
Oper doun leggen of þis hafen,
þat in þis lond dop swiche scaben!“
þer þai hem armed swiþe wel,
Boþe in iren & in stiel,
7015 & .v. hundred of vplond
Com to hem, ich vnderstond,
& dasched on þe paiens wiþ hert gode,
þat were sprad po abrode,
þat .v. hundred in litel stounde
7020 þai laiden doun wiþ deþes wounde;
Ac sone afterward hem bihinde
Come ȝete fourti þousinde,
þat were wiþ Oriens, þe king,
& afterward, wiþ outen lesing,
7025 Sexti þousand & mo
Come wiþ king Oriens al so;
þus fele þer comen & no las,
Wiþ outen þe cuntry, þat ful was.
Ac in þis time an eld man
7030 As messanger to Wawayn cam
In to þe cite of Lounde
& him gret in þat stounde
& seyd: „Wele yfounden, child Wawayn,
Crist sauë þi miȝt & þi mayn
7035 & alle þi compaynie fre,
þat ich here about þe se!
Sagremor, a ȝongman noble,
Is ycomen fram Costantine noble
& seuenhundred ȝongman gent,
7040 To sechen king Arthour, verrament,
Of him to afong swerd of stiel
& to seruen him swiþe wel;

f. 241 b.

⁷⁰²⁵⁾ þousand] s ii. d. z. nachgetr. ⁷⁰²⁹⁾ aneld ms.
⁷⁰³⁵⁾ comp.] pa auf rasur geschr. ⁷⁰⁸⁷⁾ a] mit dunklerer tinte
auf rasur geschr.

In Souþesex þai ben ariue
In strong periil of her liue;
7045 þis letters þai senten þe:
Her nede þou schalt yse!"
Wawain þis letters redde anon
& seyd to his feren ichon:
"As armes, feren, nede it is!
7050 Y nold for þis cite, ywis,
þer þat Segremor were ded,
Bot we him holpen & deden red!"
To þeld cherl he ȝaue a stede,
þat hem brouzt þat message at nede,
7055 & he hem tauȝt þan way
Toward Segremor þat ich day.
þai no hadde no desturbing
No of paiens no meteing;
þis ich eld messanger
7060 Hem ledde boþe swiþe & ner,
þat al bitimes, saunfaile,
þai mizten com to þat bataile.

Wawain hadde wiþ him, so y wene,
Of orped boies þousandes fiftene,
7065 &, as he rode bi þe way,
Euer he gadred mo, y say.

Comand þese lete we
& speke of Segremore so fre!
Fourti þousand smiten him on
7070 & he ozaines hem anon;
.xii. hundred ozain fourti þousinde
Ferd, so smoke ozain þe winde;
Napeles, y telle it zou,
Seigremor & his hadde swiche vertu,
7075 þat on of his, zif þe oþer was feld,
þer ozaines twenti he queld.

Ac pis was told Oriens bhiunde,
bat was cominde wib sexti bousinde,

7075) was a ms.

f. 241 c.

& he for þe lore & for þe anoie,
7080 þat he hadde þat oper day,
Hete, men schuld abouten hem gon
& hem nimen, euerichon.
Abrode þai ȝeden, wiþ outen doute,
& þe children comen about;
7085 þe cuntry was ich way
Of armed paiens ful, þai say;
Segremor no his fer
No miȝt flen in non maner
& hadden ment, hem to ȝeld,
7090 Ac fer fram hem þo hye biheld,
Fele baners þai seȝen com
& after hem gret trom;
þo seyd child Sagremoret:
„3if we wel gunne, do we now bet,
7095 For, yherd be our saueour,
Y se ȝond com gret socour!“
þan þai werd hem wiþ swerd naked,
þat, so fer so þai miȝten take,
Non neize hem com no miȝt,
7100 þat þai no slowen doun riȝt.

In pis time com Wawain
& his feren wiþ gret main;
Euerich of hem gan to bere
þurch a Sarrazin wiþ his spere;
7105 Afterward swerdes þai drowe
& sexten þousinde to grounde slowe;
Mani mouþe þe gres bot
& griseliche ȝened, god it wot;
Paiens floted in her blod:
7110 Euer is Cristes miȝt gode.
Wawain to Sagremor com þan,
& king Oriens werd him fram;

⁷⁰⁸⁶⁾ fel ms. ⁷⁰⁹⁰⁾ fer] nach f ein buchst. ausradirt. fram]
danach ein buchst. ausradirt. ⁷⁰⁹⁴⁾ we] om. ms. wel] danach
e, ausradirt. ⁷¹⁰⁸⁾ ȝened] n auf rasur geschr.

- Wawain zaue Oriens swiche a flat,
Boþe on helme & ysen hat,
- 7115 þat he to grounde *fel* plat þere,
Al so he stef & stan-ded were.
His folk abouten him pres made,
Euerich gan to crie & grade
For her lord, & vp him toke,
- 7120 So we finden on þe boke.
To Wawain þer com a kniȝt
& bad him wende anon rizt
Toward Camalot wiþ his felawe;
& so he dede in þat þrawe,
- 7125 & al his feren, god it wot,
Went toward Camalot.
þer whiles þe paiens aboute were,
Her soudan for to arere,
Ac þer after a litel while,
- 7130 Wele þe mountaunce of a mile,
Oriens his limes drouȝ
& gan arise of his swouȝ
& seie þe diol sorweful & grim,
þat his folk made for him.
- 7135 Vp he lepe wiþ chaufed blod,
So him no were nouȝt bot god,
& asked anon, ywis,
Newe armes & newe hors of priis
& newe swerd & newe launce,
- 7140 To nimen of his fon veniaunce.
þat he asked was him founde,
& he went forþ in þat stounde;
Sexti pouȝand paiens & mo
Her steden after smiten þo.
- 7145 Wawain seize her coming coue
& dede þe best wiþ hem houe,
Wele an tventi oper mo,
& al þe oper toforn hem go
To Camalot, þat cite,
- 7150 To keueren wiþ his meine,
& he bihindre to ben bi cas,
- f. 241 d.

⁷¹¹⁵) *fel*] om. ms.

- To susten þe paiems ras.
þe paiens token ouer our men
& fast leyd opon hem þen,
7155 Ac Galathin & eke Wawain
& Gveheres & Agreuaín,
Gaheriet & Sagremore
& þe oper, y told biforn,
Bihinde þat bileued were,
7160 Euer were here & tere
& wiþ swerd & scheld & spere
Her folk toforn wele gun were.
þo com Oriens to Wawain rideinde
Wiþ a spere gode scoure bihinde,
7165 & wende Wawain hit purch out,
Ac he failed, wiþ outen dout,
For he smot him forbi,
& Wawain for gret heize
Hitt him wiþ his swerd a plat
7170 Amidward þe ysen hat,
þat he tumbled in þat stounde
Stef aswon to þe grunde.
Segremore smot Orian russel
On his schulder bi þe haterel,
7175 þat schulder & arm & ribbes alle
He doun kitt wiþ liuer & zalle.
Galathin smot Placidan
Amidward al his man,
þat þe heued fleize fram þe bouke,
7180 þe soule nam þe helle pouke.
Agreuaín toke a launce long
& rode ozain a geant strong,
Guinat þat hete, god it wot,
& purch þe hert he him smot.
7185 Gveheres turned his pas
Ozain a geaunt, þat hete Tauras,
& bare him purch wombe & rigge,
His liif he dede him þere legge.

f. 242a.

⁷¹⁵⁴⁾ opon leyd, die umstellung ist durch striche angedeutet, ms.
⁷¹⁷²⁾ Stef] Stif ms.? ⁷¹⁸³⁾ hete] danach zwei buchst. ausradirt.

Gaheriet mett þe douke Fannel
7190 Wip a launce, þe soket of stiel,
& smot him purch rigge & brest bon;
þe geaunt fel ded anon.
3ete þai smiten forþ on hast
& þre oper of hors cast
7195 & wip her meine euerigrot
Smiten in to Camalot.
Bot Wawain & Galathin
& Sagremore of gentil lin,
þat rideñ wip her hors
7200 Amid Oriens cors,
Him for to sle, wip outen doute,
Ac mani þousinde com him aboute,
þat Oriens binomen hem;
Ac Oriens slouȝ bi fiue & teñ;
7205 Bi fiue mitz þai breken hem fro
& in to Camalahot wenten þo;
Ac Wawaines breþer, for soþe to sain,
In Camalahot misten Wawain;
& þe þre deden hem oȝan,
7210 Wip hem went anoþer man;
Out at þe gate þis þre stetten
& on his stede þat cherl metten,
To Wawain þat þe letters breuȝt,
& swiþe fair þai him bisouȝt,
7215 He schuld hem tel, fer or neize
3if he owar Wawain seiȝe;
He seyd anon to hem oȝan:
„Certes, ze be nice men:
Whiderward were ze ycrope?
7220 In þou is ful litel hope,
þat þour broþer lete among his fon,
& ze to herberwe gun gon;
For þou he may now ligge yslawe:
No telle y þou nouȝt worþ an hawe!“
7225 þese were aschamed & anoid
Of þat þe cherl hem hadde seyd,

f. 242 b.

⁷¹⁸⁹⁾ Fannel] l. Fauuel? ⁷¹⁹¹⁾ rigge] das zweite g corr.
^{aus?} ⁷²⁰⁸⁾ hem] he m ms.

- For stoutelich he haþ hem chidde;
þe hors þai smiten þe spurs mide
& sone þer after her *broþer* metten
- 7230 Wip his to feren & hem gretten
& asked, hou it wiþ hem was,
& þai seyd: „Wele, þurch godes gras!“
Towarde þe toun anon þai stetten
& þe cherles stede metten,
- 7235 þe arsouns blodi, biled þe hors,
Ac hye no seize nouȝt þe cherls cors;
„Allas!“ quap Wawain, „allas! allas!
Verrament, þis stede it was,
þat ich zaue þat eld man,
- 7240 Wiþ letters to Londen þat to me cam!“
„Za, who rett?“ his breþer quape,
„Heize we to toun rape!“
For he hadde arst seyd hem shame,
þai lowen þer of & hadde gode game.
- 7245 Wawain souȝt him here & þer,
Ac he no fond him no where;
It nas no wonder, sikerliche:
Merlin him turned flesche & liche
& was bicomen a garsoun,
- 7250 In hond berand a tronsoun,
& zede hem alle po among.
þo Wawain hadde souȝt him long,
To Camalahot þai wenten on hast
& schetten after þe gates fast,
- 7255 Drowen brigge & eueri pin,
In pais & held hem þer in.
Ac þo Wawain seize Sagremor,
þer was ioie, bi godes or,
Fair clepeing & welcominge
- 7260 & to Iesu Crist þonkeinge,
þat ich oþer hadde ydon,
& destroied her son.
þer þai soiournd mani day,
Wiþ outen ani kin annoy,

f. 242 c.

⁷²²⁹⁾ *broþer*] feren ms.

7265 & seizen paiens, seriaunce of helle,
bat no tong no mizt telle,
Al day passen hem forbi
Wip howe & noise & grete cri.
Lete we hem here soioiuringe
7270 & speke of þe oþer kinge.

Now telleþ pis romaunce, cert,
Oriens was sore yhert
Tofore Camalahot in þe pleyn
& wounded of child Wawain.
7275 For his hurtinge & his damage
He was neize wode & eke rage;
He wald him wreke anon riȝt,
Ac it was almost þo niȝt,
Ac to eke, bat fele of our
7280 Were wipinne walle & bour
& ouer alle stert him fro,
bat he no mizt comen hem to;
Als so fer, al so he mizt,
His folk & he went bat niȝt
7285 & her pauilouns telt
& made hem at aise wip flesche & selt.
A morwe king Oriens aros;
Wele mani men þer of agros;
Bi ten pou sand & bi fiftene
7290 He sent about, to do men tene;
He hete bern in to þe grounde
Man & hous, al bat he founde,
& so he dede þre journeie
Ouer al bi ich way;
7295 Man & hous þai brent & bredden
& her godes oway ledden,
Wip outen nombre, cartes fele
þai ledden o way wip alle wele
& setten þe cuntrie a fer wilde
7300 Wip man & wiif & wip childe;

f. 242d.

⁷²⁸⁶⁾ fresche ms. ⁷²⁹¹⁾ bern] r ü. d. z. geschr. ⁷²⁹⁴⁾ Ouer
al] auf rasur geschr. ⁷²⁹⁹⁾ a fer] after ms.

Ac mani ascaped, sikerlik,
Into þe lond of Camberuic
& comen to þe douke Estas,
Douke of Arundel þat was,
7305 Biforn him & fel on croice
& grad on him wiþ pitous voice
& seyd: „Sir, for godes gras,
þine help, þine ore in þis cas!
Sarrazins wiþ griseli chere
7310 Þis cuntry haþ sett a fere,
In vplond & in toun
Euerich hous han brent adoun,
Of child & man & eke of wiif,
Alle, þat þai mai nimen, þai reue þe liif;
7315 Sir, help ous at þis nede,
Oper we ben euerichon dede!“
„Now, lord,“ quaþ þe douke Estas,
„Help ous for þine holy gras!“
For þe pite, þat he seize,
7320 Sore he wepe wiþ his eize.
Wiþ him was þe lord of Paerne;
He gred: ‘As armes!’ swiþe ȝerne;
Ten þousand wiþ him he toke,
þe oþer left, þe cite to loke;
7325 Forþ he went swiþe anon,
What he com to king Clarion,
þat woned fram him bot litel swiþe;
þe king of his cominge was bliþe,
& seyd him, so ich tofore told,
7330 Hou þe paiens his folk aqueld.
„What rede,“ quaþ king Clarion,
„Waldestow zeuen ous, to don?
ȝif þai pas ous bitven,
We are lorn, so mot y þen;

7303) douke] danach esta, ausgestr. 7310) sett] tt vorklext.
7311) in toun] in to auf rasur geschr. 7316) dede] das zweite
e von späterer hand mit dunklerer tinte nachgetr. 7333) þai]
ai mit dunklerer tinte auf rasur geschr. 7334) are] a ü. d. z. mit
d. t. geschr. y] danach & hen, ausgestr.

7335 Man & best in þis cuntray
Were destroid & alle away!“

f. 243 a.

„Certes,“ quaþ þe douke Estas,
„We schul laten in þis pas
Of our men a parti
7340 & nim wiþ ous fair compainie
& wenden ous wel swiþe on hast
To Brekenham, to þe forest,
In þe wode & hide ous;
& purch þe grace of swete Jesus
7345 So we schul wele aspie
þe paiens doinde robberie
& smiten on hem & sle hem doun
& þe pray bring in to our toun!“
Quaþ king Clarion: „God, merci,
7350 What conseil seistow, gode ami?
Hou schuld we ozain hem fizt?
Y dar þe mi treupe now plizt,
þei our folk tohewen waren
To smale morsels, so beþ taren,
7355 To ich of hem, vnneþe men mizt
A morsel of ous to hem dizt!“
„A, sir,“ quaþ þe douke Estas,
„Wiþ ous schal be godes gras:
His grace is better in to afie,
7360 þan armour oper compeinie;
& þai be spred wide here & tere,
& we ben al to gider here:
Ich hope þurc h Iesu Crist,
We schul hem driue, so sonne doþ mist!“
7365 „Certes,“ quaþ Clarion, þe king,
„þer ozain am y no þing,
Ac alle hem to asaily,
Forþ to wende, icham redi,
3if ze so reden, þis pouermen.“
7370 „3is,“ quaþ þai euerichon,

⁷³³⁶⁾ &] danach zwei buchst. ausradirt. ⁷³⁴⁵⁾ & so ms.
⁷³⁴⁷⁾ sle] she ms.? ⁷³⁴⁹⁾ merici ms. ⁷³⁶⁴⁾ We — driue]
auf rasur geschr. ⁷³⁶⁵⁾ Certes] ertes auf rasur geschr.

- „Sir, par seynt charite,
Rewe on ous & haue pite!
We han leuer sterue arizt
Wip manschip & in fizt,
7375 þan sen kin & wiif & child
& ous forbren in fer wilde!“
þe king for pite wepe, a plizt,
& seyd: „Certes, ze han rizt!“
þo schosen þai, so dieu me saut,
7380 A noble kniȝt, lord of Nohaut,
& þe lord of þe toun sori,
Brandris, a kniȝt hardi,
& Brehus saun pite al so,
A feller kniȝt mizt non go;
7385 þese bileft per riztes
Wip a þousand orped kniztes,
þe cuntre to loke & þe pape
Fram Sarrain, þat wald hem scape.
þe lord of Paerne, so ich finde,
7390 þer toke seuen þousinde;
In to þe forest of Rokingham
Wip hem alle forþ he nam.
þe douke Eustas & Clarion, þe king,
Bi anoþer way went, wip outen lesing,
7395 & helden hem a litel bi hest
Vnder þe selue forest.

f. 243 b.

- In May is miri time swiþe,
Foules in wode hem make bliþe;
In euerich lond arist song;
7400 Iesus Crist be ous among!
In þe forest of Rokingham
Hidden hem our cristen man;
þer was a launde of noblay,
Where come to gider seuen way;
7405 þai hem hidden a litel þer bi,
For to aspien, sikerli,

7391) Rokingham] h ü. d. z. geschr.

þe route of þe Sarrazins & þe pray,
þat miȝten comen of selcouþe cuntry,
For to skecken on hem on hest,
7410 When þai seiȝe time best.
Al so þai were þere soiourninge,
Abouten vndren com gret cartinge
Bi ich of þis seuen way,
Ful of ich maner pray,
7415 Of venisoun & flesche & brede,
Of broun ale & win white & red,
Of baudekines & purpelpelle,
Of gold & siluer & cendel;
Sum þai brouȝt fram her lond
7420 & robbed sum in Ingland.
þis carting lest mile ways,
For soþe, hou fele, no can y say.
Fif þousand ȝede, þe cartes to loke,
So we finden on þe boke; f. 243c.
7425 To hem dassed þe lord of Paerne
Wiþ seuen þousand al so ȝerne
& þe carters euerichon
Of liif days þai brouȝten anon,
& her lokers, anon riztes,
7430 Fif þousand heþen kniztes,
þai metten wiþ swerd & kniif,
þat non ascaped wiþ þe liif,
& nomen swiftlich al þat pray
& ladde it þennes to mile way
7435 In to þe toun of Arundel
& per it token to ȝeme wel,
& went hem ozain anon
To þe king Clarion.
Rizt also þai comen ware,
7440 Fiftene þousande þer comen fare,
Sarrazins yarmed wel,
On gode hors, in yren & stiel;

7408 vor 7407 gestellt; die umstellung ist durch striche angedeutet.
7412) cartinge] e corr. aus? 4732) ascaped] danach ein buchst. ausradirt.

Our kniztes were, so y finde,
Gode kniztes twenti þousinde,
7445 þai smiten þe hors & lete þe rain
& metten þe paiens wiþ gret main.
King Clarion mett king Guifas,
Sexten fet o lengþe he was;
He hit him wiþ þe speres ord
7450 þurch & þurch scheldes bord,
þurch out hauberk & aketoun,
& bar *him* of his hors adoun;
His schaft tobrast, þe geaunt fel,
His nek bon he brac per til.
7455 þe douke Estas of Arundel
Mett a king, sir Mirabel;
þe paien on him brac his schaft
& hitt *him* on þe side laft;
þe douke *him* hit in þe brest
7460 & wiþ his dint hard þrest
An ellen long þurch þe bouke;
þe soule went to þe pouke.
þe gode kniztes, þat wiþ hem ware,
þe oper to þe grounde bare;
7465 Wiþ dint of spere & of swerde egge
þe paiens þai made to dep legge;
Bitven vndren & none, so y finde,
Of hem þai slowen ten þousinde;
þer lay mani paien þurchþrest,
7470 Heued of smiten & fot & fist;
Bi þe blod of hors & man
A mile men miȝt haue ygan;
Of hem fiue þousand, þat wald scape,
Toward king Oriens gan rape;
7475 Our cristen hem suwed at þe rigge
& spared nouȝt, on to ligge,
What king Oriens þai saye
Wiþ folk wreien al þe cuntraye;

f. 243 d.

⁷⁴⁵³⁾ tobrast] r ü. d. z. *nachgetr.* ⁷⁴⁷⁴⁾ Oriens] *danach*
wold, *ausgestr.*

Ozain þai wiþdrouȝ hem þo
7480 & conseil toke, what to do.
Doun of her destrers þai lizten,
Her stedes to rest, her armes rizten,
& afterward made a renge
Of hem alle þe launde alenge,
7485 For þai nold for no gode,
þat þaiens binomen hem þat wode.
þo asked Oriens an hast
His folk, were of þai weren agast;
„Sir,“ þai seyd, „here tofore
7490 Beþ tventi þousand oþer more
Cristen men, þat ȝour kniȝtes
Han yslawe doun riztes,
& sodanliche þai com ous on,
Er we seiȝe of hem on,
7495 & no hadde we þe better be,
Hem ofscaped nadde we!“
„A, Mahoun!“ seyd Oriens þo,
„þou nart no god worþ a slo;
þer fore þi folk þou dost no gode,
7500 So for cristен doþ her lord!

Com forþ,“ he seyd, „wiþ outen letting,
King Eliedus, min owhen derling:
Nim wiþ þe fourti þousinde
& sle, bifore þat þou mizt finde!“
7505 „It schal be don,“ he seyd, „bi Dandagon!“
Euerich lepe his stede opon
& fond our men alle at a tasse,
þat þe þaiens no mizt passe;
þer ich oþer sone mett
7510 & wiþ scharþ launce grett;
þer tumbled mani þaien haþen
& mani cristен, þat was scaþe;
Ac þo, þat ware ded of our,
To heuen brouȝt soule pure,

f. 244a.

7488) worþ] r ü. d. z. geschr. 7500) doþ] danach ein buchst.
ausradirt.

7515 & þe slawen Sarrazine
Went in to helle pine.
þe cristen fond þe heþen dere,
So þe lioun doþ þe bere;
Euerich on oþer leyd wiþ,
7520 So on þe yren doþ þe smiþ;
þer ouerþrewe in litel stounde
Mani orped kniȝt to grounde,
Sum was ycleued to þe brest,
Sum ofsmiten arm & fest,
7525 Sum hors smiten & sum astray;
þis fizt last fram þe midday,
What it were euen al mast;
þo com Oriens driueand on hast
Wiþ an hundred þousand & mo
7530 & þouȝt our men alle slo.
Ac on hem þo com þe niȝt;
Our to wode deden hem þo riȝt,
þurch godes help & his pite
& so ascaped to her cite.

7535 Bitven king Clarion & douke Escas
þer was parted alle þe purchas,
þat þai hadde ywonne þat day:
Long hem was þebett, parfay!
Of cristen were slawe, y finde,
7540 þe mountaunce of four þousinde;
Ac þere were slawe of þe heþen men
Wele mo þan þousendes ten.
Wroþ was Oriens, þe king,
Of þis sleiȝt & þis scapeing;
7545 þai telt her pauiloun þer þat niȝt;
A morwe was souȝt anon riȝt
In wode & doun & in fen
After our cristen men;
Ac þai no founde þer of non,
7550 For nouȝt, þat euer couþe þai don.

⁷⁵²³⁾ *was*] *om. ms.*

⁷⁵⁴⁶⁾ *was*] *were ms.*

- Oriens þo was so wrop,
His owen liif was him lop;
For wretþe he cleped an amirail,
Napin þat hete, faunfail,
7555 Wip fiften þousand wreyen kniztes, f. 244b.
& bad him, þe cuntry sle doun riȝtes,
& toke him ribaudes þre þousinde,
þe cuntry to brenne bifore & hinde.
Waines & cartes & somers al so
7560 Fif hundred he dede after go,
Charged wiþ ale & win red,
Wip fische & flesche & corn & bred,
Wip clopes & wiþ armerie;
Sum þai hadde of robberie
7565 & sum brouȝt fram her cuntry.
Zete dede Oriens more, y say;
Wip ten þousinde Rapas, a king,
He dede loke þat carting;
He sett king Eliteus at her hele
7570 Wip .xv. þousand in on eschele;
Him self Oriens com bihind
Wip Sarrazins .xx. þousinde.
þis ribaus þus, þousandes þre,
Ofersett þe cuntry
7575 & brent & slouȝ man & wiif,
O child no leten þai o liif;
þe cri & sorwe, y say,
Men herd fele mile way.
þe douke Escas yseize al þis:
7580 Wo was him oliue, ywis;
He tok kniztes þousandes to
& out of his cite dassed him þo;
Among þe ribaus anon he dast
& sum þe heued of he laist.
7585 þis þre þousand he slouȝ anon,
Bot fourti, þat hem fro were agon,
þurch þe miȝt & help of Crist,
Ar Napin ouȝt þer of wist.
In to her cite þay wenten oȝan
- 7561) alle ms. 7581) tok] om. (!) ms. 7589) þay] y aus n corr.

- 7590 Wip outen letting of ani man.
To Napin com a ribaud þo
& seyd: „Sir, where bileuestow so?
þou no dost nouzt as þe wise,
For þurch þi targinge & þi faintise
7595 Alle our feren yslawe beþ
& we vnneþe ascaped deþ!“
„Held þi pes,“ quaþ þe douke Napin,
„Or þou art ded, bi Apolin!
A worde speke if y þe more here, f. 244 c.
7600 þou art dede & al þine fere!“
For al, þat is vnder Crist,
He nold, Oriens it hadde wist.
Forþ þai passep þis lond acost
To Clarence wiþ alle her ost;
7605 King Bardogaban of gret mounðe
Wiþ tventi kinges þer he founde,
þat bilay þat cite
& slouȝ þe cuntre wiþ outen pite.
Oriens was welcome swiþe,
7610 For wonderliche þai weren bliþe
Of þe eizte & stouers,
þat þai brouȝt, þo pauteners;
þere þai bileft wiþ þat king.
Lete we hem now at þis segeing
7615 & schewe werres & wo,
In þis lond þat weren þo!
Who so wille ȝiue lest,
Mai now here noble gest!

Mirie it is in somers tide:

- 7620 Foules sing in forest wide,
Swaines gin on iustinge ride,
Maidens tiffen hem in pride.
Los sprong of Wawaines dede,
Of his breþer & of his ferrede;

^{7599) if]} om. ms. ⁷⁶⁰⁵⁾ King Bardo auf rasur geschr. ⁷⁶⁰⁶⁾ kinges]
g corr. aus? ⁷⁶⁰⁸⁾ cuntre] r ü. d. z. geschr. ⁷⁶¹⁸⁾ Mai] danach
i, ausradirt. ⁷⁶²³⁾ of] auf rasur mit dunklerer tinte nachgetragen.

- 7625 Vriens, þat was of Schorham king.
Of whom y made bifore scheweing,
Hadde spoused Hermesent,
Blasine suster & Belisent;
þai hadde a zongman hem bitven,
- 7630 Michel Ywain, a noble stren;
He was ycleped michel Ywain,
For he hadde a broþer kniȝt, certein,
Bast Ywain he was yhote,
For he was bizeten o bast, god it wot;
- 7635 Vriens bi anoþer quen
ȝete had bizeten a gentil stren,
þat was hoten Morganor,
A gode kniȝt, bi godes or;
He had made him in al air
- 7640 To þe lond, þat of hem com veir;
þe lond, þat com of Hermesente,
Was Ywains purch rizt decente.
To Hermisent com child Ywain
& seyd: „Dame, of child Wawain,
- 7645 þat is mi nevou, spekeþ al þis lond;
Allas, madame, it is me schond,
þat y no com in non werre,
When *schal* y come, *los* to conquerre?“
þo seyd Hermesent, him to proue:
- 7650 „Whider wostow, Ywain, for mi loue?“
„Dame, to seche min em Arthour,
Of him to afong þe anour
Of wiȝtschippe & cheualrie,
& leren manschippe & curteisie!“
- 7655 „What?“ sche seyd, „for wiche bizete
Wostow oþer seruise & þi faders lete?“
„Dame,“ he seyd, „þine owen land
Mi fader hap laten me on hand;
His owen lond he zaue anoþer,
- 7660 Morganor, mine halue broþer,
& þei he schuld me al bireue,
ȝete ichil bi zour leue
Wende & serue mi nem Arthour:

f. 244d.

⁷⁶⁴⁸⁾ *schal*] om. ms. *los*] om. ms.

- It schal falle to our honour!“
7665 „Sone,“ sche seyd, „icham wele paid
Of þat pou hast to me seyd;
þi nem is Arthour, verrament:
Serue him wiþ hert gent
& fond for to make accord
7670 Bitven Arthour & þi lord!“
þer sche him puruaid anon riztes
To felawes an hundred kniztes
& þre hundred ȝong men,
þat wiþ him kniztes schuld ben,
7675 & fond hem armour & stede,
Boþe soure & gode at nede;
In þe name of heuen king
Sche him ȝaf hir blisseing
& lete him forþ wende in þe name of Crist,
7680 þat his fader þer of nist;
Ywain bastard wiþ him went
& four hundred of feren gent.
Now com þai fram Schorham
Al bi þe forest of Bedingham
7685 Toward Arundel in Cornwaile,
Ac þider þai no miȝt, saunfaile,
Bot þai wolden passen purch ouþe f. 245a.
.xx. .m. Sarrazins wiþ rowe snoute;
þo com þer forþ wiþ miȝti hond
7690 Wiþ king Soriendos, to stroie þis lond;
He dede ribaudes ten þousinde
Bren þat þai miȝtten finde;
So he dede michel rewþe,
þis was on Yders lond, in trewþe.
7695 Ac to Gawaynet ful of priis
Sone men telden al þis;
þo he & his gentil feren
Al þis reupe deden heren,
He toke wiþ him þritti þousinde,
7700 Gode felawes, so y finde,
þat wenten alle wiþ Wawain

7675) armour] r ü. d. z. geschr. 7684) Bed.] ham auf rasur
mit dunklerer tinte geschr. 7690) stroipe (!) ms. 7691) de (!) ms.

For his largesse & his main.

Out of Londen þe way þai nome,
Al what þay to Cardoil come;

- 7705 Fro Cardoil þai wenten souþe west
To Bedingham al þurh þe forest,
Where welcominge þai hadde onest
Wip gret ioie & gret fest.

þis fȝtinge vnder Cornwaile

- 7710 Was fer zete, saunfaile;
Yder, in whos lond it was
& bifel, to kepe þat pas,
Of his men herd þe pleinte,
Sum forbrent & sum fordreinte,
7715 For diol he topped of his hare
& him self tobete & tare
& acurssed oft þe time grim,
þat Arthour was wrop wiþ him.

King Yder was, sikerli,

- 7720 A noble kniȝt & an hardi,
þat wiþ him ledde .xiiii. .m. kniȝt,
Boþe hardi & eke wiȝt.
'As armes!' he gradde wiþ tonge,
& on gode stedes þai flonge.
7725 King Soriandes, þat soudan was
To a king, þat hizt Bilas,
He hadde taken fiften þousinde,
Bifore þat went, so y finde,
& passed along ouer a brigge;
7730 þo þai ouer com, ich zou sigge,
þai rested hem a litel wiȝt
& þo forþ went anon rizt.
King Soriandes after cam
Wiþ fourti þousand haþen man;
7735 To Morgalant, his steward,
He bitoke þe afterward

f. 245 b.

7730) sigge] ge auf rasur geschr.

- & .xxv. .m. Sarrazins,
þat schuld him help wiþ miȝt fines.
Ten mile ways lest þis route,
7740 Icham siker, wiþ outen doute,
& bitven euerich floc, naþeles,
To mile oþer þre þer wes.
þis ich folk, þat was bihind
Wiþ fiue & tventi þousinde,
7745 King Yder & his ouertoke
Opon a cauci bi a broke;
þai seize him come & wiþstette,
Wiþ scharpe spere ich oþer gret;
Our cristen þurh out hem þrust
7750 & out of þe sadel mani lust,
Amirail & hepen kniȝt;
Mani þrewe doun deueling rizt,
& gnoven bope gras & ston,
þo þat dep her hert chon.
7755 Sum lay wiþ outen arme & þi
& sum cleued in to þe fi;
Our men þer in litel stounde
Ten þousand slouȝ to grounde.
þis seize þe steward Morgalant,
7760 Hardi & strong & gret geant;
.xv. kniȝtes he slouȝ of our,
Al arawe & to & four,
& þo he mett wiþ Yder king,
Ac þat was bataile of þincheing,
7765 For ich smot opers scheld ato,
Helmes tokoruen & brini al so.
þis herd Soriandes, þe soudan,
Of fourti þousand þe tventi he nam
& sodanliche on our smot
7770 & alle hem slouȝ ner, god it wot;
Ac king Yder fram þe deþe
Scaped wiþ a fewe vnneþe,
Wiþ weþeing & wiþ gret wailing;
Ac he no hadde ascaped, bi heuen king,
7775 3if anoþer cuntek no hadde ybe,

f. 245 c.

7758) growen ms.

þat þe soudan dede ferst yse,
Whar fore he no durst him suwe for doute,
Ac went ozain wiþ al his route.

Now þe childer, y spac of bifore,
7780 Ywain þe hende & Ywain bastard ybore,
& Ates, an orped kniȝt,
Wiþ four þousand zongmen wiȝt
Weren passed þe forest
Toward Arundel souþe west
7785 & wenden ben alle soure & siker,
& þo metten wiþ a sori biker
Wiþ Soriordes formward,
þat Bilas ladde, a kniȝt hard,
.xv. þousand ozain four hunder;
7790 þis was a meteing of wonder;
Four mile out of Arundel,
Allas, þis ich meting fel;
Al so þis bachelors hadden a bregge
Ypassed, for soþe y sigge,
7795 þe children fle nouȝt no miȝt
For þe brigge, y zou pliȝt;
Her scheldes þai gropen & scharp spere,
Ich a Sarrazin gan doun bere;
Swerdes þai drouȝ & zeuen dintes
7800 & paid paiens dep rentes.
þis zongmen, of whom y say,
Tocoruen in þre mile ways
Fiue þousinde Sarrains to grounde
& zete were hem self hole & sounde.
7805 At þe hindeward king Yder
Fauȝt al at ones & þis children her.
Soriordes þat wele yherd
& lete Yder & ozain ferd,
For to taken quiclike
7810 þe children ded oþer quic.

⁷⁷⁹⁶⁾ nach angabe des hs. einzurücken.
⁷⁸⁰¹⁾ zongmen] m corr. aus?

¹⁷⁹⁸⁾ gan] g corr.

- Ac rizt now a litel knape
To Bedingam com wiþ rape
& toke a letter to Wawain
On his nevou half, hende Ywain;
7815 Ac Ywain wist nouȝt þer of;
Wawain hem toke þe knaue of;
þe letters he red anon
& grad: „As armes, euerichon!
Armeþ zou al wiþ main,
f. 245 d.
- 7820 For mi nevou, hende Ywain,
Hauȝt nede, &, bot we heize,
He is ded & his compeinie;
Ded me were leuer, bi Iesus,
þan he starf for faut of ous!“
7825 Agreuein & Gaheret,
Gveheres & Sagremoret
Armed hem wiþ hardi cher,
& ich lepe on his destrer;
Swerd þai tok & launce & scheld
7830 & forþ priked on þe feld;
þai toke wiþ hem .xx. þousinde,
þe oþer þai leten hem bishinde;
A sex þai schift her compainie.

Agreuein schuld þe first gie,
7835 þat was of noble þre þousinde.

Gveheres al so, y finde,
þre þousand bodis gied al so;
Non better no misȝen go.

þe pridde ferd ledde Gaheriet
7840 & þe ferþ Sagremoret.

þe fift ladde Galathin,
& eueriche þre þousand wiþ him.
Wawain ladde þe sext bishinde
& hadde wiþ him eizte þousinde.

7819) Ariueþ (!) ms.

7826) Sagremoret] r ü. d. z. geschr.

- 7845 þe knaue tauȝt her way, sikerliche,
þai ride[n] wel sarreliche;
þair gilt pensel wiþ þe wind[e]
Mirie ratled of cendel Ynde;
þe steden so noble & so wiȝt
7850 Lopen & neized wiþ þe kniȝt.
þese beþ al so fast cominge,
þe children þer whiles were fizting
Ozain ten pou[s]and for first *ten & f[i]ue*,
þat þai had wiȝtliche brouȝt olyue;
7855 þai defended hem so wel
Wiþ scharp swerd of gode stiel,
þat þe four hundred hadde driuen oȝan
þo ten pou[s]and of heþen man.
King Soriandes herd al þis
7860 & sexten pou[s]and he sant of priis
Biforn him, hem to nim;
& after com þat wipperwin
Wiþ .xx. pou[s]ind al mast,
For to taken hem on hast.
- f. 246a.
- 7865 þis forseyd .xvi. pou[s]inde
Our folk comen bihind[e]
& passed þe brigge Drian
& smiten on our ȝongman
& mani þer of prewe to grounde
7870 & ȝauen hem bitter & hard wounde.
þe ten pou[s]and at þe oþer half al so
Deden hem swiþe miche wo;
At on half & at oþer, so y finde,
Were sex & tventi pou[s]inde
7875 & wiþ a fewe children fouȝt,
Ac Iesu Crist on hem þouȝt,
For he ȝau[er] hem strengþe & miȝt,
Ozain þo deuelen for to fizt;
When ani were falle adoun,
7880 þe oþer hem lift to arsoun;
Euerich oþer wiþ scheld biclept
& fro oþer dentes kept,

7846) þa ms.
7872) Dededen (!) ms.

7853) *ten & f[i]ue*] om. ms.

7854) þai] om. ms.

- & mani of þo heþenhoundes
þai koruen doun *in* to þe grounde.
7885 Ac al þai were so forfouȝten,
Of her liif þat þai no rouȝten,
& ȝelden hem þai hadden ment.
„Nay,“ quaþ Ywayns, „verrament:
Whiles our ani liueþ in feld,
7890 Our þonkes nil we ous ȝeld!
Ac do we now bi mi red,
Prike we at onnes *in* to þe mede,
& ȝif we may owhar abreke,
Fle we hem wiþ gret reke!“
7895 Al at ones her main þai kedde
& large roume about hem redde;
In to þe mede þai smiten wiþ rape,
ȝif þai miȝt ouer þe water scape.
þe water was swiþe depe,
7900 þe brink heize, þe strem stepe;
þai loked ouer in to þe londes
& seye come king Soriandes;
Fele mile wais, wiþ outen doute,
Lest þe tail of his route.
7905 Ates þe wiȝt þo seyd: „Allas,
We mot ous ȝeld in þis cas,
For we no mow no whar oway,
So ful of deuelen is þis cuntry!“
Al þai were *in* gret desmay;
7910 þo loked Ywain & saye
Fram Bedingham on her side
Baners & pople com ride;
To his felawes he seyd on hast:
„Bep now bliþe & nouȝt agast:
7915 Y se ȝond com gret socour,
For þai han þe signe of our saueour,
Wher purch,“ he seyd, „ich vnderstonde,
It is socour of þis lond!“
„Yherd be Crist!“ quaþ lasse Ywain.
7920 „Her is conseil certain:

f. 246 b.

⁷⁹¹⁸⁾ socour] o corr. aus?

3if we here leueþ in a þrome,
We worþ nomen, ar þai come;
Ac þei we han pople lite,
þurch out hem we mot smite
7925 & slen al þat mowe we,
þurch out hem & swiþe fle,
Fleand euer wereand ous,
Til help ous haue sent Iesus!“
Bi þis rede þai deden ȝerne,
7930 Her stedes þai gun terne;
On þe sexten .m. þai com flinge,
So hail doþ on þe singel.
In þat coming, god it wot,
þai slouȝ þre hundred fot hot,
7935 & wiþ gode hert & main fin
þai purchperced po Sarrazin;
Ac Bilas wiþ his ten þousinde
Hem oftoke anon bihinde
& metten hem in a mede
7940 Wiþ an hundred of her ferrede
& ȝauen hem wel bitter wounde,
For þai hem wold haue nomen & bounde:
Ac þai vp stirt & wered hem siker,
Wiþ swerd þai maden dedeli biker.
7945 Agreuein, wiþ þis bikering, .
Wiþ þre þousand com on hem flinge,
þat wiþ spere po ten þousinde
Beren oȝain, so y finde,
þe schote of an alblast;
7950 þer was mani þurch out dast,
Heued ofkoruen, smiten of arm,
Bodi cleued in to þe barm;
On boþe halue was swiche a cri,
Men miȝt it here into þe sky.
7955 þis seizen þe sexten þousinde
& comen swiþe on our winde
& wiþ miȝt oȝain hem bar
To þe stede, þer þai wer ar;

f. 246 c.

⁷⁹²⁷⁾ *Fleand*] Fle & ms. ⁷⁹²⁹⁾ *þis*] om. ms. ⁷⁹³⁴⁾ fot hot]
auf rasur mit dunklerer tinte geschr. ⁷⁹⁴²⁾ &] ü. d. z. nachgetr.

- þer was mani wombe þurchischoue
7960 & mani heued cleued aboue.
þat ich time Agreuein
In sleiȝt kid so michel main,
þat his feren wondred euerichon
& token ensaumple, wele to don;
7965 For he seyd, þei he dede schuld ben,
Of þe stede he nold flen,
Ac wiþ swerd he wald delite,
On þe paiens to don it bite.

- Ywain þan & alle his floe
7970 On steden sat so stef so stok
& dasched hem amid þe pres,
So lyoun doþ on dere in gres,
& cleued boþe man & hors
Of þe foule heþen cors.
7975 Ich of hem so wiȝtliche fauȝt,
þat tong no may it telle nauȝt;
Ac Sarrazins were, bi mi panne,
Euer fourti oȝaines anne;
Wher fore our litel folk kene
7980 No miȝt amonges hem ben ysen.
þis was in time of May,
Riȝt aboute midmorwe day.

- þo com Gueheres, Wawaines broþer,
Wiþ þre þousand flok oþer,
7985 & smiten on pis heþen hounde,
þat euerich of hem fel to grounde,
& þe oþer rekeuerd oȝain wiþ main,
Whider first hem brouȝt Agreuein.
þer was fizting, þer was toile,
7990 & vnder hors kniȝtes defoile;
þo þonked Ywain þe wiȝt
Of þat socour god almiȝt
& desired to wite, who it were,
þat him dede swiche socour þere.

7984) þousand] danach ein buchst. ausradirt.

- 7995 þo seyd Ates: „Sir Ywain,
Smite þi stede wiþ miȝt & main
& of þi greuaunce þe awreke,
þat oper it sen & per of speke:
Bi her pruesse þou schalt hem knawe
8000 & bi þine be her felawe;
Y þe rede, now lay on fast,
Our fomen for to agast!“
þer Ywain & eke his broþer,
Ates, & mani gentil oper,
8005 Tokoruen þis Sarrazins
Wiþ gret miȝt & wille fins;
Y. wene, þat Ywain & his broþer
þer slouȝ an hundred & anoþer,
So þat Gveheres & Agreuein
8010 Hadde gret wonder of her main.
As Ates com rideinde hem bitven,
He asked hem, who it miȝt ben.
„Certes,“ quaþ Ates, „of ȝour ken,
þe kinges sones Vrien,
8015 Ywain þe hende & Ywain bastard,
þat þus com hiderward,
To ben kniztes of ȝour em Arthour
& seruen him wiþ gret honour;
Al þat han white on rizte armes
8020 & red on left half on her armes,
Beþ erls & barouns sones,
þat ben wiþ him hider come,
þat metten here þis deuelen felle,
þat ben ysprongen out of helle,
8025 þat hadde hem slain wiþ deshonour,
No hadde ben ȝour socour.“
„Yherd be Crist,“ þe children quape,
„þat we to hem com þus rape!“
To hem þai smiten þe stedes swiþe
8030 & welcomed hem wiþ chere bliþe;
þo her ich oþer knewe,
Ich ouer oþer armes þrewe;

⁸⁰¹⁵⁾ armes] a corr. aus? ⁸⁰²⁰⁾ on her] ü. d. z. nachgetr.

- Gret ioie, wip outen les,
þai made amidward þat pres
8035 & made couenaunt, in al þat fizt
To gider þai wald rideñ, a plizt.
As þai þus togider spake,
Fresche paiens on hem com rake,
.xv. þousinde, þat hadden born hem ožan f. 247 a.
8040 Parfors in to Bedingham,
Wip þre þousand ne hadde bet
On hem smiten Gaheriet,
Wawaines broþer, sikerliche,
Ožain hem held sarreliche.
8045 þer was broken mani spere
Wip depes dint & liues lere,
& mani paien to dep ysmite
Wip swerdeſ of stiel, þat wele bite.
Margalaunt, þe steward, & king Pinogres
8050 To þe brigge were comen wip gret pres
Of Sarrazins, .xx. þousinde
& wele mo, al so y finde;
Al þai seizen þis ich biker,
At þat half þe brigge hem þouȝt siker,
8055 On þat ich fair roume
To aloge her pauiloun,
To kepe wele her charrois,
Her astore & her harnois,
& to help at tide & time
8060 At þe oper half her cursed lin;
þe brigge, þat was hem bitven,
þai þouȝt, schuld her socour ben.

Soriondes, her heize king,
Com sone after, wip outen lesing,
8065 Wip so mani þousand Sarrazins,
þat no man þer of coupe þe fins,
& loged on þat riuer,
Fram Morgalant nouȝt wel fer,

8039) hem] om. ms. 8040) Bedingham] a durch a und ab-
kürzung bez. 8066) auf rasur mit dunklerer tinte geschr.

Of bataile to sen þe fin
8070 Of cristен & of Sarrazin,
þer at þe oper half þe brigge
Wip scharppe swerd gun on legge,
Wip fauchouns, axes & battes
Ich zaue oper sori flappes;
8075 Of Sarrazin þer fouzten ten & ten
Ozain on of our men,
Wher purch þe feld ozain þai bare
Mani of our children pare.
In þis toil wip þre þousand skete
8080 Sagremor hem com mete;
Mest what euerich wip his spere
A paien gan to grounde bere,
& in þis ich coming
þer were slawe four heþen king,
8085 In þe feld of our bachelors
Were brouȝt on her destres.
þe paiens were to fel & kene,
þe sleiȝt of hem nas nouȝt sen,
& eke per ourne stremes of blod,
8090 Al so it were a wel gret flod.
Now, wip outen more dueling,
Galathin com swiþe flinge
Wip þre þousand wiȝtling
& smot ozain þat heþen king.
8095 Ich of hem wip stef launce
A Sarrazin smot, wip outen balaunce,
& wip her feren brouȝten ozain
Al her feren to þe brigge drein,
In þe water hem driuen, so y finde,
8100 Of þe heþen & slouȝ seuen þousinde,
Ac al our childer toforn & þo
Hadde hem contened so,
þat of .m. .x. & sextene
No hadde þai leued bot þrittene,

f. 247b.

8073) fauch.] *danach ein buchst. ausradirt.* 8074) sori] r
schlecht ausgeprägt, so dass sich für ri auch n lesen liesse.
8086) destres ms. 8092) Galathin] *das zweite a corr. aus?*

- 8105 & of our, so y finde,
Nas nouȝt slain a þousinde.
Now hadde al þo þeues heþen
Ben tofrust doun rizt to maþen,
3if Morgalent & Pinogres
8110 Nadden brouȝt ouer her pres,
.xx. þousand oȝain our;
Of our wer þousandes ten & four,
&, certes, nouȝt an hundred mo,
& þai were þre & þritti þousand & mo.
8115 þer was batail of mende,
Hou our wiztlinges so hende
On þe heþen wiþ swordes losten
& mani tocleued & tofrusten:
Ac Morgalant & his ferrede
8120 Were strong & fers to þe dede
& hadde don our harm wel gret,
3if Wawain no hadde don þe bet,
þat wiþ eȝte þousand & swerdeȝ egge
Brouȝt hem to þentre of þe brigge,
8125 & mani þousand ouerþrewe, saunfail,
Into þe water top & tail,
þat þai adreint, wiþ outen les. f. 247c.
Wawain smot in to þat pres;
It was sum del after none,
8130 Wawain strengþe duble gan;
His ax in his hond he lift,
Durarls heued of he smit;
King Malgar on þe heued he gert,
þat þe dent stode at þe hert;
8135 Segor on þe heued he smot,
þe ax in to þe sadel bot;
King Malan al so he hit
& wiþ his ax þe heued ofslit.
A left he smot & a rizt,
8140 Non his dent asit miȝt;
Stel & yren his ax þurchcarf,
Wher þurch mani heþen starf.

8110) Hadden ms.

He met þat geaunt Pinogres
Amidward al his pres,
8145 þat cleued Wawaines scheld,
þat it fleize in þe feld;
Wawain him ȝaue a dent of howe
& cleued him to þe sadel bowe.
Y no miȝt it nouȝt ful rede,
8150 þe pruaunce of Wawaines dede.
After him hende Ywain
Best, y wene, kidde his main,
For king Sesox he cleue ato
& Baldas, an amiral, al so;
8155 Minardes heued of he smot
& Bilaces al so, god it wot,
& Morgalant, þe steward,
Dedliche wounde he ȝaf him hard,
& mo kniztes, þan y can telle,
8160 Wawain & he sent to helle,
For y neuen now, saun faile,
Bot kinges, doukes & amiraile.
ȝete no wist nouȝt Wawain,
þat it was his felawe Ywain;
8165 He hadde wonder of his pruesse,
þat so leyd doun hard & nesse.
After hem Galathin
Kidde in dede miȝt afin;
Wip swerd he hit Farasan,
8170 A geaunt & an hoge man,
þat ere & cheke & scholder al so
Wip his swerd he carf atvo.
King Creon he cleued þurch
& king Beas doun in a furch;
8175 Darian & king Fulgin,
Boþe he cleue to þe chin.
No child no miȝt do þer bet,
þan dede al so Gaheriet;
Of þe king Briollo
8180 þe midel he smot ato;

f. 247 d.

8160) &] *ü. d. z. geschr.*

Pinnas & ek Douadord
He biheueded wiþ his sword;
Pamadas he cleued doun riȝt.

Sagremor þer schewed his miȝt,
8185 For he biheueded Linodas,
Of fourtene fet þat was;
Fael he cleued to þe brest
& Guindard he made heuedles prest.

Gueheres dede al so wel,
8190 Of Guos he carf þe hatrel;
Goweir he cleued to þe ribbe,
þat he no miȝt no lenger libbe.
Agreuein dede al so,
þre kinges he slouȝ & mani mo.

8195 Ates & lesse Ywain & her route
To grounde laiden, wiþ outen doute,
Whom so þai hitten wiþ ful dent,
Keuerd he neuer, verrament.
Ac, verrament, ozain Wawain
8200 No man no miȝt kipe main,
For he carf man & stiel & ire,
So flesche hewer doþ flesches lire.
Nȝt com hem on, þai miȝt nouȝt sen,
Ich to his kiþ gan to ten;
8205 þo Gawainet knewe Ywain,
þer was ioie & blis, certain;
He & al her compeinie
To Bedingham went on heize
& þer token aise & rest
8210 Wiþ gamen & gle & solas mest.
Soriandes seize of his ferred
Of four score .m. þe fourti ded,
His hert was sore, his cher murne,
Lenger nold he þer soiourne;
8215 He trussed his armes anon riȝt
& went oway al bi nȝt

f. 248a.

8202) hewer] nach w e, unterpunktet. 8215) He] e corr. aus?

- To her heize ost to Wandlesbiri,
þer þai made hem joie & miri
For store & tresor, þat þai brouzt.
8220 Wawain amorn him souȝt
& fond, he was ascaped oway;
þat him opouȝt, par ma fay;
þat hie þer founden, þai ladde hem wiþ
& left þer stille in pais & griþ
8225 Mani day at Bedinham.
Now listneþ, what after bicam!

Now seip þis romaunce, hou Wawain
Of þis letters asked Ywain;
Ywain seyd, he wist of non,
8230 Where purch þai wonderd euerichon.
þo herd þai telle of Sarrazins,
Deden wo & michel pins
þe zong men of Arundel;
Wawain þer of hadde diol;
8235 Ten þousand, þe best, he toke,
þe oþer he tok, þe toun to loke,
& went hem Arundel toward.
In þis time fel chaunce hard,
For Kay Destran & Kehedin,
8240 Two gentil swaines of wiȝt lin,
Erles sones of Strangore,
Of þe marche come hem bifore
Wiþ seuen & twenti sweines of gentil stren,
Comen alle, kniztes for to ben
8245 & to serue king Arthour,
3if þai miȝt, wiþ gret honour.
þese no hadde nouȝt are ysaye,
Hou Arundel was bilay
Of king Harans & ek Daril,
8250 Bramagues sones, þe Eteuild,
Wiþ so mani heþen pousinde,
þat þe noumbr y no can finde.

8220) hem ms.

- þese squiers on hem come
& þe paiens al so sone;
8255 Sone þai hem seize, on *hem* þai last;
þe squiers were armed & on *hem* dast,
& in þe first of þat seylinge
þai slowen michel heþen genge.
Ac heþen mani þousand þo f. 248 b.
- 8260 On our flongen & dede hem wo
& bielept hem al about,
For to nim þat litel rout.
Songmen of Arundel
Seizen it out of þe castel,
- 8265 Wizt zonglinges, þre hundred, ich vnderstonde;
þe first was Ywain wip þe white hond,
þe oper Ywain of Lyonel,
þe pridde Ywain Desclauis le bel
& Ywain of Strangore of heize parage;
- 8270 þe .v. was Dedinet, þe saueage;
Alle þai were wizt & hende
& neize of Wawaines kende.
þese wip þre hundred com þere
& on þe paiens smiten wip gode chere;
- 8275 Ich dede his launce go
þurch out a paien oper to
& redder hem wip mizt fin,
Til what þai come to Kehedin;
To gider þai cleued in þat werre,
- 8280 So wip oper dop þe burre,
& leyden þer Sarrazins doun rizt,
Boþe a left half & a rizt.
þe paiens an horn gun blowe,
& hem come socour in litel þrawe,
- 8285 .xx. þousand, þat smite on our
& bar hem doun bi þre & four,
& hadde hem slawe & do Miche wo,
No hadde Wawain vp comen þo
Wip .x. þousand, þat doun stett
- 8290 Alle, þat þai wip launce mett,

⁸²⁵⁸⁾ genge] auf rasur geschr. ⁸²⁷⁹⁾ werre] das zweite r aus
e corr. ⁸²⁸¹⁾ þer] r auf rasur mit dunklerer tinte geschr.

& after her swerdes drowe
& .xv. þousand heþen slowe
& holpen so þo oþer squiers,
þat þai were brouȝt on destrers.
8295 þe oþer paiens wiþdrouȝ hem þo,
Sarrazins to feche hem mo.
þer whiles Wawain knewe þis Ywains
Alle four & þe oþer swaines;
þer was ioie, bi godes ore,
8300 Y wene, þer miȝt be no more,
þan was þer of þat socouringe;
þer whiles com an eld kniȝt flinge
& seyd to Wawain *conseil*:
3if he & his feren wald ben hayl,
8305 þai schuld swiþe to Arundel te,
& þan he schuld more yse.
Bi his *conseil* þai deden anon
& went in to Arundel ichon;
Alle þe gates þai schetten fast
8310 & lete falle port colice on hast;
On walles þai steizen heize
& seizen of heþen ful þe cuntrie:

f. 248 c.

King Harans wiþ sexti þousinde
& Daril wiþ fourti him bihinde,
8315 .xii. hundred cartes after come
Wiþ gode & store, þat was binome
In þe cuntrie men & wiues,
Al sori in her liues.
After hem come .xx. þousinde
8320 Of fel robours, so y finde,
þat so hadde robed & brent þe cuntrie,
þat þer aboute four journe
No schuld man finde man no childe,
Bot wildernesse & desert wilde.
8325 Wawain & his felawes
þer soiournd seuen dawes.

⁸³⁰²⁾ aneld ms. ⁸³¹¹⁾ On] n auf rasur geschr. walles]
s ü. d. z. geschr.; danach s, ausradirt. ⁸³¹⁸⁾ in] ī, corr. und
radirt aus? ⁸³²⁶⁾ soiournd ms.

þer lete we hem soiurne
& speke we of chaunces hard & murne!

King Harans & his harnoys

- 8330 Went toward þe lond of Leoneis
& brent in to þe grounde
Al, þat þai biforn hem founde,
Man & child þai brent þo
& dede hem al michel wo;
8335 Sum ascaped wiþ gret paine
In to þe cite of Dorkeine
& reweliche gun o king Lot
For þis lere, god it wot.
Lot tok .xx. þousand kniztes
8340 & went him out anon riztes;
A ferd of .xxx. þousinde
He smot on al, so y finde;
.v. þousinde in his cominge
He slouȝ wiþ speres meteinge;
8345 Egreliche her swerdes drowe
& .ix. þousinde þer toslouwe
Wiþ so noble swerdes dent,
þat hem astint, verament,
& hadde hem alle sone yslawe,
8350 ȝif Harans, þat þe deuel todrawe,
Nadde wiþ .lx. þousand þo
Com on our to michel wo,
þat our biclept & wiþ fouȝt,
& slowen our gentil men & duȝt,
8355 þat Lot vnneþe wiþ þre þousinde
Scaped at euen, so y finde,
In to þe cite of Dorkeine,
Sore ywounded wiþ michel peine.
þe king Lot seize þis lere,
8360 Him selue he gan here tere

f. 248d.

8345) Egreliche] nach E ein buchst. ausradirt.
om. ms. 8354) duȝt] duȝst, ȝ ü. d. z. geschr.

8351) Nadde]

- & bad þe time mesauenture,
þat he cunteked wip king Arthour,
& his kniztes, þat leued were,
& leuedis & children maden care,
8365 For her faders, lordes & frende
Were so slawe wip helle fende.
Harans biseged & dede his peine,
þe cite to winne of Dorkeine.
Lot pouȝt to sauue Belisent,
8370 Arthours suster, his quen gent
& Wawains moder, saunfail;
His kniztes he asked conseil;
Conseil he tok & went bi niȝt
Toward Glocedoine ful riȝt,
8375 His strong castel, to don in his wiif,
For chaunce, þat miȝt be, oþer striif,
Wip Modred, his sone beld,
þat nas zete bot to zer eld;
.v. hundred kniztes on gode stede
8380 Wip him he tok for al aede
& went toward his castel swiþe;
He was þer of seþpen vnblipe.

- In þis time child Wawain
Wip mani feren & eke Ywain,
8385 On Arundels wal þai gun leue;
A kniȝt com arnand wip gret reue,
Yarmed in armes alle,
þat to Wawain þus gan calle:
"Wawain," he seyd, "Crist þe se
8390 & alle pine feren fre!"
Durst ze gon wip me, siker,
Y wold zou schewe a selcouþe biker,
Whar ze schul win wining,
Ze nold it zeue for no þing!"
8395 "Pan schaltow," quap Wawain, "swere,
þou no schalt ous wip tresoun dere!"
"Bleþeliche!" he seyd, & swore anon,
He no schuld hem qued no traþoun don.

f. 249 a.

- Wawain him armed swiþe
- 8400 & tok wiþ him .x. þousand biliue;
þis kniȝt seize hem com & dassed forþ,
& hye him after swiþe norþ;
So þai wenten, þai metten a kniȝt
Arnand wiþ al his miȝt;
- 8405 Wawain nam to þis kniȝt hede,
þat he ladde wiþ him Modrede;
He rode him to & asked him, whi
He ladde his broþer so suiftli.
„Wawain,“ he seyd, „par ma fay,
- 8410 Al þis niȝt & al þis day
þi lord haþ fouȝt ozain king Taurus,
þre þousand ozain füe hundred of ous;
þi lord is wounded, his men be dede,
Modred, þi broþer, y tok for drede
- 8415 & wiþ him þus oway drawe,
þat he no ware of hem yslawe!“
„Allas,“ quaþ Wawain, „allas, allas,
þat ich euer born was!
Who schuld euer of me ȝelp?
- 8420 Now sterue mi frende wiþ outen help!
Frende,“ quaþ Wawain, „þou here abide,
In on busse þou þe hide,
What þou se al þe fulle,
Wiche socour don we schulle!“
- 8425 Wawain wiþ his folk forþ drof
Hastiliche vnder a grof,
þo he herd a reuly cri,
A wiman euer cri merci;
He dasched forþ biforn hem alle
- 8430 & seize a leuedi þries doun falle
Fram Taurus stede to þe grunde,
þat heþen king, þat vnwrast hounde,
þat feloun rage in his wodenesse
Plizt hir vp bi þe tresse,
- 8435 & sche gred: „Seint Marie, f. 249 b.
Help me, leuedi, Cristes drurie!“
& he went vp anon his fest
& buffeyt hir vnder þe lest;

So oft so sche crid: „Marie!“
8440 Sche was buffeit of him prie;
Sche fel doun of his hors rigge
& he gan anon his hondes legge
On hir tresse & forþ hir drouȝ;
þe leuedi vp rizt stode a swouȝ;
8445 He laid on wip schourge & bad hir go,
& sche no miȝt a fot for wo
No for hir cloþes long;
Bi hir tresse he gan hir hong,
Sche wiþ braid & fel vp rizt;
8450 Taurus alizt anon rizt
& knett hir to his hors tail
Bi her tresse, saunfayl;
So he drouȝ hir him bihinde,
Euer „Mari, help!“ criinde;
8455 What for sorwe & eke for paine,
Sche les winde & ek alaine,
Hir eizen turned, hir voice wiþsat,
At point of dede was hir stat.

þo seyd to Wawain þat kniȝt,
8460 þat hadde him brouȝt þider ful rizt:
„Knawestow ouȝt þat leuedi,
þat þoleþ al þat vilanie?
Wawain,“ he seyd, „verrament,
Hir name is hote Belisent:
8465 þou ouȝtest amende hir stat,
For þou souke of hir tat!“

Wawain was oft wele & wo,
Ac neuer wers, þan him was þo;
Neize aswon he sat vp rizt,
8470 þo nist he, war bicome þat kniȝt,
He miȝt long loke after him,
He was oway, it was Merlin.
Wawain wiþ spors his stede smot,
& he forþ stirt, god it wot;

8444) as wouȝ ms.

8459) Wawain to ms.

- 8475 He grad aloude to king Taurus;
„Abide, þou þef malicious!
Biche sone, þou drawest amis,
þou schalt abigge it, ywis!“
þe heþen swain sone doun stett,
8480 þe leuedis tresse sone vnknnett.
King Taurus was .xiiii. fet long,
An vnrede geaunt & a strong;
He seize to him com Wawain,
He toke a launce wiþ gret main
8485 & smot þe stede, þat he bistrode;
Aiper to oper wiþ wretþe rode.
Taurus hit Wawain arst,
þat his launce al tobrast;
Wawain him hit wiþ main & schof,
8490 þe launce purch þe scheld drof,
purch out hauberk & hert polk,
& ded him cast among his folk.
Wawains breþer on & oper
Smiten euerich liþ fram oper,
8495 & of .v. hundred heþen ichon
No leten ascape neuer on.
Wawain ozain went, so seyt þe bok,
& his moder in his armes tok
& wiped hir mouþe, eizen & viis;
8500 For hir he wepe ful sore, ywis.
He kist hir mouþe & hir eizen,
& his breþer þat yseizen
& com to him & gret diol made,
No miȝt hem noþing glade,
8505 & for loue of hem alle her fere
Made wepeing & reuly chere.
In al þis diol makeing,
Belisent, wiþ outen lesing,
Acouerd & vndede her eyin:
8510 þo her sones it yseyн,

f. 249c.

8479) þe] An ms. 8484) main] nnain ms. 8495) of] om.
ms. 8499) wiped] w corr. aus z. 8501) eiȝem ms. 8502) y
seiȝem ms.

- þai made joie swiþe gret;
Hir eizen þo sche vndede bet
& þonked Iesu, our saueour,
Of hir sones gentil socour.
- 8515 þo told sche Wawain & his feren,
So þat þai it miȝt yheren,
Hou Lot wiþ þre hundred kniȝt
Dede oȝain þre pouȝand fiȝt,
& of þe þre pouȝand he lete olius;
- 8520 Certes, bot hundredes fiue:
„Ac of mi lordes meine,
Certes, no scaped olius nouȝt þre;
þo mi lord most chese,
Me forgon oþer his liif forlese,
- 8525 Al on he fauȝt a mile way
Wiþ þo .v. hundred, y say,
What he hadde woundes ten & fiue;
Vnnepe he ascaped wiþ þe liue,
Makand so reuli bere,
- 8530 þat it was pite for to here.
þe heþen me tok & totoiled,
Tobeten, todrawe & defoiled;
Now haue ich mi lord ylore
& Modred, mi sone, þat wo me is fore!“
- 8535 Aswon þo sche ouerþrewe,
Wawain sone hir ablewe
& seyd: „Dame, Modred, bi sone,
Y schal þe don anon come!“
& him ofsent; þo sche him say,
- 8540 Sche akeuered, par ma fay,
& was yleyd in liter,
Al mast liche an hors bere,
& to London toke þe way
Wiþ alle Taurus korray,
- 8545 Sex hundred cartes, bi godes ore,
Al charged wiþ mete & store.
þo þai to Londen weren ycome,
Hendeliche þai were welcome;

f. 249d.

8529) Makeand, e ausradirt, ms. 8544) korray] ko auf
rasur mit dunklerer tinte nachgetr.

- Do deliuerd þe heize palays
8550 To sir Wawain, þe curteys;
þer in he dede his leuedi
& swore bi þe quen Marie,
Schuld her neuer sen his lord,
What Arthour & he were acord.
8555 þo he teld al sir Do,
Of chaunce þat hem was comen to,
Hou he dede Sagremor socour,
þurch an eld vauasour;
„& seþþen Ywain, mi cosyn,
8560 þurch leters writen in Latin,
þurch a page al so rizt,
& mi moder þurch a knizt,
& y no couþe non of þo þre
Neuer seþþen after yse.“
8565 „O Wawain,“ quap Do anon,
„Al þre it was on,
Merlin, þe gode felawe;
3ete sum day þou schalt him knawe!“ f. 250a.
Here of þai hadde wonder & game.
8570 Lete we þis rest, in godes name,
& telle forþ in gode pays,
Hou Merlin dop his maister Blays
In boke writen, saunfaile,
Of Inglond þis meruaile
8575 & profecies & oper þing,
þat sum beþ passed & sum coming!

þo went he fram his maister Blais
To Arthour, to Carohaise,
& told him & his conseil
8580 Of Inglond al þe meruail,
Hou Wawain dede & his ferrede
& eueriche king in his pede.
King Arthour & his ferrade
Of þis tidinge were wel glade.

8553) her] he ms. 8554) What] a corr. aus? 8558) aneld ms.

8585 Now seip our romaunce here,
Leodegan sent his messanger
To Arthour, Ban & ek Bohort,
þai schuld com to his court,
Wip him won & soiourne,
8590 & seyd, he was sori & murne,
þat he no wist of her beinge,
For he vnderstode soþ þing,
þat þai were of power more,
þan he, & heizer ybore;
8595 þat þai hadde wele yked,
Fram dep when þai him hadde red.
He sent hem, to come, bi kniztes fiue,
So þe zemers of his liue,
For al he wald don him, saunfail,
8600 In her rede & her conseyl;
Wip outen bileueing ani more
þai went to him, Merlin bifore.
þo þai comen in to þe halle,
þe king vp stode & his men alle
8605 & welcomed hem wip bliþeful chere;
þo spac Merlin, so ze may here:
„King, wostow wite our being?“
„3a,“ quaþ Leodegan, „opon al þing!“
„To þis,“ he seyd & schewed Arthour,
8610 „We sechen a wiif of gret valour!“
„A, seynt Marie!“ quaþ Leodegan,
„& haue ich a douhter, a fair wiman,
Fairer not y non, veir,
Wise & hende & of mi lond air,
8615 & ich zou sigge vterliche,
þei in þis warld war non oþer swiche,
þei he no hadde doun no lowe,
On him y told hir wele bitowe:
So ful y knawe him of worþschipe,
8620 Of nortour & of hendeschippe!“

f. 250 b.

8618) veir] e auf rasur mit dunklerer tinte geschr.

He fet his doucher him selue al on
— In þis world nas fairer non —
& proferd hir to king Arthour,
& to ben his air wiþ gret honour;
8625 & Arthour hir nome, saunfail,
For Merlin him ȝaf swiche conseil.

Now quap Merlin to Leodegan:
Wostow now wite, to what man
þou hast yȝouen doucher þin?"
8630 "ȝa, þat were wil & joie min!"
þer he was of Arthour biknawe
& of his feren al bi rawe,
& seyd, he was her lord bi hirritage,
þai most al don him vimage.
8635 Leodegan was þo wel bliþe
& to Arthour dede omage swiþe
& þe kniȝtes of þe rounde table
& al þat oper folk, saun fable.
þer treuþed Arthour Gwenore, his quen,
8640 þe fairest leuedi, þat mitz ben.

King Leodegan lete maken a fest
Of alle, þat come, swiþe onest;
Ich, þat was of cristen lay,
Fond þer fest of gret noblay.
8645 þe fest last seuen nizt
Of al deinte, y sigge, a plizt,
& lenger it hadde ylast,
Bot her terme was comen al mast,
þat þai most smite batail
8650 Ozain þe Sarrazins, saunfail.
Wide & side, ner & fer,
Baroun, knizt & ek souder,
Sum bi fe, sum for wining,
To Leodegan þe king
8655 Were comen to his fizt
& soiournd a fewe nizt.

f. 250 c.

⁸⁶³⁹⁾ Gwen.] w auf rasur mit dunklerer tinte geschr. ⁸⁶⁵³⁾ for] f mit dunklerer tinte später nachgetr. ⁸⁶⁵⁴⁾ Were comen to ms.

Mirie is June, þat scheweþ flour;
þe meden ben of swete odour,
Lilye & rose of fair colour,
8660 þe riuer cler wiþ outen sour;
Boþe kniztes & vauasour
þis damisels loue paramour.
On Mononday in þe pentecost
Leodegan & alle his ost
8665 Armed hem in aketouns,
Hauberkes, plates & hauberiouuns,
Boþe wiþ bacin & eke palet,
& helme on her heued yset;
Stones precious & zimmes,
8670 Gold & siluer þer were inne;
þai hadde aboue riche queintise
Of beten gold of mani a sise;
After þat þai her armes bar,
Mani was diuers to oper þar; .
8675 Mani riche sadel on hast
Was on riche destrer cast.

þat ich day paramour
Guenore armed king Arthour;
At ich armour, þe gest seit þisse,
8680 Arthour þe maiden gan kisse.

Merlin bad Arthour, þe king,
þenche on þat ich kisseing,
When he com in to bataile;
„3is,“ he seyd, „Merlin, saunfaile!“
8685 þo bad king Leodegan
Merlin, ordeine al his man;
„Bleþeliche!“ he seyd, & ches Arthour
& Ban & Bohort of gret vigour
& her feren, wiþ outen fable,
8690 & kniztes of þe rounde table,
& oper kniztes, so y finde,
In alle he nam seuen þousinde

8672) sise] e corr. aus i. 8673) þai] om. ms. 8680) maden ms.
8688) d] om. ms.

& made þe first compainie,
Him self he wald hem gye.

8695 Leodegans nevou, Gogenar,
A noble kniȝt & wise & war,
Merlin toke anoþer ferredre
Of seuen þousand forto lede.

þe pridde ledde Elmadas, f. 250d.
8700 A ȝong kniȝt, þat fin & stalworþ was;
He was þe wise leuedis nevou
Of þe forest Saunzretour.

þe ferþe led a baroun, hiȝt Blias,
þat was lord of Bliodas.

8705 þe fift ledde Andalas,
A kniȝt of meruailus los he was.

þe .vi. ledde Beliche þe blounde,
A kniȝt he was of gret inounde.

8710 þe .vii. ledde Yder of Norplond,
Fel & hardi & strong in hond.

þe .viii. ledde Landon, ful of vertu,
He was Cleodais nevou.

8715 þe .ix. ledde Gremporemole,
Hardi kniȝt & wiȝt & fre;
No kniȝt better on stede sat,
Ac he hadde a nose as a cat.
Ich of þese ladde seuen þousinde.

Leodegan so com bihinde
Wip ten þousinde of þe best.
8720 þo bad hem al Merlin lest:
„King,“ he said, „nouȝt þe amay,
For king Rion schal wische þis day,
He hadde zeue þe tounes fiue,

8698) þousand] þou *auf rasur geschr.*

8700) &] om. ms.

He war in his lond wiþ his liue.
8725 Fele hundred Sarrazins
He hab wiþ him of biches lins;
We schul hem sle & noþing doute,
For it is al a curssed route.
We han al mast, so y finde,
8730 Four score pouſinde,
& Cristes grace, þat schal ous helpe,
To kerue doun rizt þe heþen welpes.
þenke on zour childer & wiues
& ek on zour owen liues
8735 & of zour londes, wiþ vnriȝt
þai þenke to winne wiþ strengþe & miȝt,
Zou to slen & to exile;
Leggeþ on þe traitours vile,
Spareþ nouȝt, ac sle doun rizt:
8740 Zou schal help god almizt!
þai han filled þe michel forest
& walled hem bi norþ & west,
þat per forþ no man no may
Comen hem to, par ma fay,
8745 & a souþe half walled, certes,
Wiþ mani pouſand waines & cartes;
Ac on þat est half, ich wot,
We schul comen opon hem, god it wot,
& finde hem slepeand & sle doun rizt,
8750 For þai were al dronken to niȝt!"
þer he ches kniztes ten
& sent biforn her men,
For to take & slen & binden
þe spies, þat þai miȝten finde,
8755 þat so deden & hem bifore
Nomen herlotes ten score,
& so hem bistirden, þat no tiding
Spie no brought to þat heþen king.

f. 251 a.

Merlin come bifore wiþ outen þe toun
8760 & vnsennid his dragoun,

8760) vnspaid ms.

Fer þat kest of þe mouþe, vair,
So it lizted in þe air.
Arthour alder next him cam
& Ban & Bohort, þat gentil man,
8765 & al þat oþer fferred,
Ordeind, so ich ere sede.
Of armes þat was gret schining,
þe stedes maden gret naying ;
þai wenten forþ al so stilly,
8770 So þai mizten, wiþ outen cri.
þo Merlin com neize king Rion,
Enchauntement he kest him on,
þat mani of her paulloun
Opon her heuedes fel adoun.
8775 Merlin & his feren was, y say,
Biforn al þe oþer to mile way ;
In a Tiwesday in þe daweing
He kest pis enchaunteing ;
Bitven a riuier & a grof
8780 He com hem on, þat þai nouȝt schrof,
& Merlin loude gan to cri:
„Help ous now þe quen Marie !“
Our folk on þe heþen lusten
& vnder hors fet hem frusten
8785 & tohewen hem to deþ & ongerten ;
þe heþen þeues vp sterten,
Four .c. þousand & mani mo
To king Rion ascaped þo
& armed hem swiftlich vnder his tent ;
8790 To slen al our, was her entent ;
Ac our slouȝ þousandes mani,
Ar of hem were armed ani.
Ac þo þai hadde keuered armes,
Wip launces, maces & gisarmes
8795 Bi þousandes mani a man
þe heþen smiten our oȝan
& gun on of þe grest bataile,
þat euer was smiten, saunfaile.

f. 251 b.

8768) gret] auf rasur geschr. 8769) wenten] w corr. aus?
8797) bat.] b corr. aus d.

Passed was þe day springing,
8800 þe hote sonne was schininge,
þo bigan kniztes rideing,
Trumpes beten, tabours dassing,
þer was fleinge & wipstonding,
Tireing, togging and ouerproweinge;
8805 Of Sarrazins in litel stounde
Mani pouſand was frust to grounde.
þat seize Rion, þat vile hounde,
He cleped Salmas, þat kniȝt of mounde,
Whiche Salmas was his nevou,
8810 A stalworþ man & ful of vertu;
He tok him an hundred pouſand kniztes
& hete him wende anon riztes
His folk forto socour
& awreke his deshonour.
8815 þis Salmas & his wiþ gret vigour
Com ozain king Arthour
Wiþ his to & fourti of mounde
& wiþ kniztes of þe table rounde
& wiþ oþer, in al, y finde,
8820 þe mountaunce of seuen pouſinde.
þo seyd Merlin to king Arthour:
„þenke now of þi newe amour:
For loue of þi last kissing
Among þis heþen houndes fling!“
8825 At þat word king Arthour
Smot his stede of gret valour
& hit a Sarrazin purch þe scheld
& his hauberk fele feld,
þat purch þe hert þat ysen cheld
8830 Pased, & keſt him in þe feld.
King Ban biseize rizt so anoþer,
& king Bohort, þe pridde, his broþer,
Neize ichon of her felawe
In þe entring brouȝt a paien of dawe.
8835 þer was mani stede yfeld,
Mani kniȝt slawen vnder scheld,

f. 251 c.

8834) paien] e corr. aus n.

Ich kniȝt hewe on his per,
On schide so doþ þe carpenter.
þer dede so our kniȝtes of los,
8840 þat mani paien þer of agros.
Arthour was þat day biheld,
Hou manliche þat he paiens aqueld,
He hem tokarf, he hem tohewe,
Mani wiþ ded his dintes knewe.

8845 King Jonap, a paien kene,
Lengþe he hadde o fet fiftene,
He seize, hou Arthour ded hem damage;
He tok a launce in gret rage
& biforn him grop his scheld:
8850 Arthour he þouȝt his harm to ȝeld.

Arthour seize, wher he cam,
A stef launce in bond he nam:
He no sembled no more him ozan,
þan doþ a child ozain a man.
8855 Aiper gan his stede dresse
Ozain oper in þat presse;
Jonapes schaft bigan to glide
Rizt bi king Arthour left side
þurch out armes & þurch out schert
8860 & in þe side nouȝt sore him hert.

& Arthour smot him wiþ his launce
þurch out his scheld, wiþ outen balaunce,
& þurch out hauberk & aketoun
& þurch out þe scholder fer aroum.
8865 Jonap was so proude & sterne,
No ȝaf he þer of nouȝt a ferne:
Wiþ þe brestes so þai metten,
þat to þe grounde boþe þai stetten.
Of cristen & heþen þer was toiling,
8870 For to help þis to king;

8851) he} h corr. aus c. 8864) þe] ü. d. z. nachgetr.
8869) d] oin. ms.

þer was mani swerd ydrawe,
Mani kniȝt hirt & mani slawe;
What wiþ wristling, wat wiþ togging,
What wiþ smiteing & wiþ skirminge,
8875 On boþe half so þai wrouȝten, f. 251d.
Her kinges on hors þai brouȝten.
þo Arthour & his fourti & to
& his kniȝtes of þe rounde table also
So korwen & hewen wiþ mani hond,
8880 þat non armour miȝt hem astond,
& so slowen, þat Salmas
Fleize & al, þat wiþ him was.
Among þe wele doinde of our men
Was on wele fiztand, hete Nacien,
8885 Perciuales cosyn þe fri
On his moder half, þat fair leuedi;
In þis warld of more noblay
Nas non bi Vterpendragones day,
No forþ bi þe kinges day Arthour
8890 Nas per non of more vigour;
Hauingnes his moder was,
Josepes suster, a kniȝt of gras,
Whom Ebron hadde spouse,
A kniȝt of dede vertuous,
8895 þat on hur zat kniȝtes seuentene,
Hardi & strong, wiȝt & kene,
In whom seþpen in mani fizt
Al Inglond so was alȝit.
þis was Celidoines cosyn þe rike,
8900 Naciens sone of Betike,
Whiche Celidoine seize first, saunfail,
Of þe holi graal þe meruail;
ȝete þis Nacien, þe curteis,
Was sibbe king Pelles of Listoneis
8905 & al his breþer, god it wot,
& seþpen hadde Launcelot
In his ward al mest a zer,
So þe romaunce seyt elles wher.

8899) Colidoines ms. 8900) Betike] ke auf rasur geschr.
8908) Nacien] danach ein buchst. ausradirt.

- þis Naciens, of whom y write,
8910 Seþpen bicom ermite
& lete kniztschippe & al þing
& bicome prest, messe to sing;
Virgine of his bodi he was,
Whom seþpen þe holi godes gras
8915 Rauist in to þe þridde heuen,
Where he herd angels steuen
& seize fader & sone & holi gost
In on substance, in on acost.
þis zaf seþpen þe riche conseil
8920 To þe king Arthour, saunfail,
þo he was in gret periil,
To lese his londes & ben exil,
Ozaines þe king Galahos,
þe geauntes sone of gret los,
8925 þat zaf king Arthour bataileinge
Wip þe power of þritti king.
þis Naciens & Adragenis þe broun
þe heþen kniztes leyden adoun,
Tohewe hem & togert,
8930 Y zou sigge for soþe, cert.
þe gret strengþe of king Arthour
þes to folweden in alle þe stour
So fer, þat he no miȝt se no knowe
Neuer on of her felawe.
8935 Bifor þes pre Merlin went
& bar þe dragoun, þat fer out sent;
þes pre deden michel wo,
Hors & man þai coruen ato;
Boþe a left half & a rizt
8940 þai felden kniztes & slouȝ doun rizt
& forced hem wiþ mani dent hard,
What þai come to king Riones standard,
þat on four castels olifaunce
Bar toforn king Riouns;
8945 Her feren þo misten hem
& smiten after bi .xii. & ten;

f. 252a.

⁸⁹³²⁾ folw.] über o ein wol bedeutungsloser punkt. ⁸⁹⁴³⁾ on] om.
⁸⁹⁴⁴⁾ Riouns] o corr. aus?

Wip newe grounden fauchoun & sword
Mani heued þai smiten ford;
þai schouen wip schulder & smiten wip arm
8950 & deden þe paiens dedliche harm;
Ac þai no miȝt keuer to king Arthour
Wip sleiȝt no wip vigour,
Bot Ban & Bohort, so seiȝ þe bok,
Laiden doun al þat þai tok;
8955 Sum in to þe sadel þai smiten,
Her swerdes þai dede ful wele biten
& so fouȝten & slowen, par ma fay,
þat þai redder & maden way,
Maugre þo paiens, purch fin vigour,
8960 What þai com to king Arthour.
& þo þai were to gider fiue,
þai binomen mani on her line;
An hundred hafen in litel fitt
þe fiue purchkoruen & heued ofslit;
8965 In ich half was gret fȝtинг,
Gret sleiȝt, gret criing,
Socouring & wipstonding;
Of kniztes, barouns, erls & kinge
Lay mani heuedeles on þe grunde,
8970 On þe gras wip dedli wounde,
Sum lay wip outen fet & armes,
Ato ygirt into þe parmes.

f. 252 b.

Among þis toil seize king Rion
Our fiue so his men slon;
8975 He was seuenten fet long
& in þis warld no man so strong;
In his riȝt hond & in his left
A mace he gan vp lift,
þat no man no schuld bere
8980 No vnneþe fram þe grunde stere.
In þis time king Fansaron, so mot y liue,
Hadde on iuel dent yzeue;
Bohort him gan after prike,

8977) riȝt h und left] auf rasur geschr. 8979) no] o corr. aus e.

Curagus, to ben awreke;
8985 Fram his feren he folwed him al mast
þe cast of an alblast
& hit him þan a dint wel iuel,
þat he fel on his hors a diuel;
He wold his nek smiten eft,
8990 & þe dint a litel gleft,
þe stedes nek he smot atvo,
King Fansaron fel to grounde þo;
Bohort him hadde slawe anon,
Ac opon hem com king Rion
8995 Wip þe power of .xviii. kinge,
On king Bohort loude gredinge,
þe mace arered in his hond,
& said: „Fiz a putain, wipstonde:
þou schalt abigge, þat þou þer come:
9000 Lo here in mine hond þi dome!“
Bohort of þe gretnesse hadde meruail
& of him was adred, saunfail;
Leuer he hadde þer ben yhent,
þan fleand ynomen oþer yschent;
9005 He set on him þe crouche verray
& him vnder his scheld wray.
Rion on þat scheld so smot,
þat it tobrast, god it wot,
& king Bohort so smot ozan
9010 O þe helme þat hoge man,
þat he sat astoned vp rizt
& nist, wheþer it was dai or niȝt;
þe hors he dast him for bi,
& com vp a chaunce, sikerly,
9015 Where king Arostus, a geaunt fel,
Hadde felled Herui de Riuel,
& held him so bi þe code,
þat mouþe & nose him ran a blod,

f. 252c.

⁸⁹⁸⁴⁾ Cur.] *danach zwei buchst. ausradirt.* ⁸⁹⁸⁸⁾ hors] ü.
^{d. z. nachgetr.} ⁸⁹⁸⁵⁾ diuel] i corr. aus e. ⁸⁹⁸⁵⁾ kinge] ge auf rasur
geschr. ⁸⁹⁸⁶⁾ Bohort] nach bo drei buchst. aueradirt. ⁸⁹⁸⁸⁾ seyd]
om. ms.? ⁹⁰⁰⁰⁾ Mine] auf rasur geschr. ⁹⁰¹⁵⁾ Aroftus ms.?
⁹⁰¹⁶⁾ felled] f corr. aus?

& hadde per of his heued ysmite,
9020 Nadde *Adragenis* to him stite
Wiþ swerd ozain fourti & mo,
King Bohort com rideinde þo
& ȝau Aroans wiþ þe swerd a flat,
þat he þrewe of his hors aplat.
9025 Herui seize legge þe kinges cors,
Anon he lepe vp to his hors,
& smiten hem amid þe pres,
So grehound doþ out of les,
& so hewen & laiden on,
9030 þat non miȝt better don.

Now is king *Leodegan* wiþ his folk hard
Smiten on kinge Riones standard
& doþ gret power, ich ȝou telle,
Riones baner forto felle;
9035 Ac Rion com & his mace left
& slouȝ a rizt half & a left;
Rion smot to king Bohors
& wende, to daschen al his cors,
& he failed of him & hit his stede;
9040 þe dent was gret & vnrede,
þe hors chine he dassed ato;
Bohort lepe a fot þo
& wiþ his swerd, y ȝou plizt,
Wered him anon rizt.
9045 Ac Rion was him about,
To nimen & slen wiþ michel rout
& dede him tviis knely arawe,
& al mast hadde him yslawe.
Herui Riuel þis iknewe,
9050 King Bohortes harm him gan rewe,
þe stede he smot, þat it queizte; f. 252 d.
Of a geaunt a launce he plizt;

⁹⁰²⁴⁾ hors] ho corr. aus? ⁹⁰³¹⁾ *Leod.*] Rion (!) ms. ⁹⁰³⁶⁾ a]
danach left, *ausgestr.* half] hals (!) ms. ⁹⁰⁵⁰⁾ gan] a *verklext*.

- To king Rion he gan ride
& smot him purch out þe side;
9055 King Rion wiþsat þat dent
& smot to Herui, verrament,
So þat a quarter of his scheld
He bar oway in to þe feld,
& eft wald so a deuel wiȝt,
9060 Ac Herui, þat was vigorous & liȝt,
On þe scheld him hit a dint hard
& cleued it to þe midward,
& Rion smot & gan faile
& Heruies hors slouȝ, saunfaile.
9065 þo stode Herui bi Bohort,
Boþe in periil of mort,
Ozaines fele score, y plizt,
& þai hem wered as noble kniȝt.
þis seize Adregein þe broun;
9070 „Now helpe,“ he seyd, „seyn Symoun!“
He rode to Rion & so him smot,
þat he fel plat, god it wot,
Aswon on his hors swere,
Mizt he noiþer se no here;
9075 þe heued he hadde him per binome,
Nadde þe proude king ycome,
Rion nevou, Solmas,
þat honged worþ bi þeues las,
Bihinde Adrageins com wiþ a spere
9080 & to þe grounde gan him bere
& bitven þe schulders him hirt;
Adragein anon vp stirt
On fot & halp his compainoun,
So it were a wode lyoun,
9085 & so hem wered wiþ steles egge,
þat non no durst on hem hond legge;
Ac þai hem prewe wiþ spere & kniif
& oper armes, to reuen her liif,
& wounded hem sore swiþe

⁹⁰⁵³⁾ *danach* & to king rion he gan ride, *ausgeestr.* ⁹⁰⁵⁷⁾ *þat*]
ii. d. z. nachgetr. quater (!) *ms.* ⁹⁰⁶⁹⁾ *Adr.] d corr. aus?*
⁹⁰⁷²⁾ *fel]* *om. ms.* ⁹⁰⁷⁸⁾ *penes ms.*

- 9090 purch out þe armes mani sipe;
So þai were ouerriden in a þrawe,
þat neize þai hadde ben yslawe,
3if Nacien no had ysein þis,
þat pider smot his stede of pris;
9095 þo, þat in his way he met, f. 253 a.
Doun rizt of hors he hem stett;
Rion he smot on þe side rizt
& bar him of his hors vp rizt
& rod him on & ouer þries;
9100 His hors was slain bitven his pies;
Gode & wiȝt kniztes of our
þo stode on fet four,
So þai gun fizt *more* & lasse,
þat þai made grete tasse;
9105 Abouten hem per þai stode
& depe woden in þe blod
& made swiche defense & sleizt,
þat y no may telle it arizt.
Ac Rion, þat wiþperwinne,
9110 Dede gret power, hem to nime,
& hadde hem nomen, wiþ outen let,
No hadde Merlin rideñ þe bet
To king Arthour & to king Ban
& seyd: „What do ze, man?
9115 King Bohort & Nacien
Bep ȝond biloke wiþ mani men,
& Herui & Agreuein,
ȝond þai ben on þe plein;
Bot ze hem soner socour,
9120 þai ben ded al four!“
„Allas, allas!“ quap king Ban,
„Lade me þider rizt onan,
For, be mi broþer per mislad,
Worþ y neuer per after glad!“
9125 Merlin smot forþ, þai after dasse
On aiper half, so grehounde of lasse,

9100) pies] nach i s, unterpunktet. 9103) more] om. ms.
9105) stode] st auf rasur geschr. 9110) nime] e auf rasur geschr.

& her feren after hem come,
þat mani paien zaf her dome
& sent hem wiþ scharp sword
9130 To þe deuel, her lord.
& þo þai comen & seizen hes,
þai dasched forþ amid þe pres;
Euerich hit a paien þo,
þat þai arisen neuer mo;
9135 Kniztes wiȝt þai hem kedden
& roume to þe four þai reddan.
Geauntes strong þer weren to,
þe four þat deden michel wo,
Minap hete þat on, veires,

f. 253 b.

9140 þat oper was hoten Malgleires.
King Ban zaf to king Minape
On þe helme swiche a clappe,
þat he him cleued to þe top;
King Arthour smot after, for sop,
9145 So Malgleires hit on þe scheld,
þat his heued fleize in þe feld.
þes four seizen her socour
& lepen ouer wiþ gret vigour
Gret hepes of hors & men,
9150 þat slain lay hem bitven;
Hors wel gode chepe þai founde
& anon in þe sadel wounde
& conteined hem so wiȝtliche, cert,
So þai nere nouȝt yhert.
9155 þo at arst bigan þe bataile,
þat last al day, wiþ outen faile;
Ich on oper so leyd, veir,
þat it dined in to þe air;
Also picke þe aruwe schoten,
9160 In sonne bem so doþ þe moten;
Gauelokes also picke flowe
So gnattes, ichil avowe;
þer was so michel dust riseing,
þat sen þer nas sonne schineing;

⁹¹²⁹⁾ sent] soȝut, oȝ auf rasur später nachgetr., ms.
auf rasur geschr.

⁹¹⁴⁴⁾ for]

- 9165 þe trumpeing & þe tabouringe
Dede to gider þe kniztes flinge;
þe kniztes broken her speren,
On þre þai smiten & toteren;
Kniztes & stedes þer laien aboute,
9170 þe heuedes ofsmiten, þe guttes out;
Heueden, fet & armes per
Lay strewed eueri wher
Vnder stede fet so picke,
In crowes nest so doþe þe sticke;
9175 Sum storuen & sum gras gnowe,
þe gode steden her guttes drowe
Wip blodi sadels in þat pres;
Of swiche bataile nas no ses
To þe niȝt fram arnemorwe,
9180 It was a bataile of gret sorwe.
þer was swiche cark & swiche defoil,
þat al Leodeganes folk made recoil
To Denebleise vnder þe wal,
Bot Arthour & his folk al,
9185 þat helden hem in þe bataile,
Of armes þat dede wonder meruaile.

f. 253c.

- So Leodegan, saunfail,
Houed vnder þe cites wal.
Sadones seyd, an hardi man,
9190 To his em Leodegan:
„Listneþ me now, mi lord þe king,
& ze oper lordinge:
What do we here, whi & war fore?
3if we fle, þis lond is lore,
9195 & wif & child & al our blisse,
Al is forlorn, mid ywis;
Better is, to sterue worþschipliche,
þan long to liuen schandfulliche;
3if we be desirite,
9200 Our cowardschippe we may it wite;

9179) þe] e verklext.

9187) saunf.] i auf rasur geschr.

- O þing ouȝt ous comfort wel:
Our newe lord ȝong naturel,
þat so wiȝtliche fitȝep for ous,
Helpe we him, for Crist Iesus !
- 9205 ȝif he were hunist at þis asaut,
He miȝt wite it our defaut,
& bot we him help at þis nede,
We beþ forswore, so Crist me rede,
& ȝete sle þat folk Sarrazine
- 9210 Is our soule medicine !“
Rizt so king Leodegan
Gan to crien hem opan ;
þo seyd Goionar þe hende :
„He naþ non heued, þat nil it defende :“
- 9215 Lete be, sir, þi precheing
& oȝain þo houndes fling !“
Alle þai were at on asent
& forþ dassed, verrament ;
.x. .m. paiens of pos, þai metten,
- 9220 þurch out hem bar, to grounde he stetten.
þo bigan bataile newe,
Ich on oper wip swerd hewe,
Wip mace & ex & fauchoun
Mani kniȝt laide oper adoun.
- 9225 þer whiles Merlin, so y finde,
Dede his out wende, to take þe winde,
Gert her steden & ek resten, f. 253d.
What þe Sarrazins þresten
Our cristen par fors oȝan ;
- 9230 þo mounted Arthour, Bohort & Ban
Wip alle her wiȝt compainie,
Ozain to bataile þai gun heize ;
Merlin tofore, so seyt þe boke,
Wip baner feld al, þat he tok.
- 9235 Arthour smot þe king Clarel
Bitven þe schulder & þe hatrel,

⁹²⁰⁵) asaut] as aȝt (!) ms. ⁹²⁰⁶) defaunt (!) ms. ⁹²²⁸) Sarr.]
danach oȝain, unr. ⁹²³⁶) hatrel] t aus r corr.

þat schulder & side & flaunke also
Wip his swerd he smot ato.
He was wrop, ze schul here wite,
9240 For Merlin hadde him atwite,
He hadde iuel zolden þe kisseinge,
þat Gvenour him zaf at his arminge;
þer fore he tohewe þat route
Tofore, biseide & al about;
9245 Al wondred, þat him seize an,
& seyd: „He worþ a noble man!“

þo knewe he purch mani on,
Wher þat rod þe king Rion;
purch corouns & berdes, þat were his armes,
9250 He made him way wip strengþe of armes,
His stede him bar to him anon;
Arthour smot to king Rion,
A quarter of his helme out hitt
& his scheld ato ykitt,
9255 & alle his armes, verrament,
To þe purpoint of o serpent,
Next his schert þat sat þo;
Elles he hadde him coruen ato.
Rion fel doun wip þat dent,
9260 So he dede were, verrament.
Mani geauntes gret & long
About Rion þer were, & strong,
þat on Arthour at ones last
& wip his hors to grunde him dast;
9265 Ac Arthour lepe vp a fot anon
& werd him ozain euerichon.
Merlin wist of þis dede
& hete al Arthours felawered
Wenden swiþe to þis rideing;
9270 Tofore dassed Ban, þe king,
Al, þat in his way stode,
He biheueded hem & lete hem blode,
So þat purch his mizt gode
þider he com, þer Arthour stode;

f. 254.

⁹²²⁰) wrop] r corr. aus? ⁹²⁶⁴) wip] i corr. aus e. his] her mu.

9275 „Arthour,“ he seyd, „þi kinde it nis,
To stond o fot, for soþe ywis!“
An geaunt he tok anon
& cleued him to þe brest bon
& brouzt on hors Arthour, ywis,
9280 Par fors among his enemis,
þat so þo dede, verrament,
þat non no miȝt stand his dent.

þo Arthour was vp, so y finde,
Comen his felawes, .vi. pouſinde,
9285 & ich of hem on þer hitt,
Oper heued ofsmot or bodi þurch kitt.
þer was defoiled king Rion
Vnder stedes fet mani on
& drawe & totore vilainliche,
9290 Ac he him defended orpedliche;
Wiþ gret pine, napelas,
Vp to hors couered he was
& smot wiþ mace al about
& mani slouȝ of our rout.
9295 Ac an fewe of our best
In al þat pres to gider prest:
Arthour & Ban & Bohort, his amis,
Naciens & Agraueins & Heruis,
Lucans, Griflet, Vlfin & Kay
9300 & her feren so fouȝten þat day,
þat in þe cuntrie ran heþen blod,
So in þe riuer dop þe flod,
& so fouȝten wiþ dintes hard,
þat felled was king Rion standard
9305 & þe four olyfaunce yslawe,
Baners & castels adoun yþrawe.
þo fleize Riones folk here & ter,
Non durst leue no wher;
Ac king Rion þan was so wo,
9310 þat he nist, what he miȝt do;
Wiþ his swerd scharp & briȝt

9275) Arth.] *danach he, ausgestr.* 9280) forþ (!) *ms.* 9310) *hs]*
om. ms.

.xx. cristен he slouȝ doun rizt;
Ac his men, þat were him midde,
Wip strengþe oway wip him ride,
9315 Ac fram his men he dassed sone
Bi a wode oway al one,
Makeand, ful sikerly,
Swipe michel diol & cri.
Swiche noyse ros in þe bataile,
9320 þat, þei it hadde pondred, saunfaile,
No schuld men it yhere,
þe paiens made so rewely bere,
& our gred: „Sle, lay on,
Kepe þere, kepe here, lete passe non!“
9325 þus þai slouȝ in litel stounde
Mani þousand to þe grounde,
& euer þai ben tohewe & smite,
So schepe, þat were wip wolues ybite.

f. 254 b.

Leodegan & Cleodalis, his steward,
9330 Folwed al on Goionard,
Riones nevou, þat hadde wip him
Fele Sarrazins wrop & grim.
Ban & Bohort vertuous,
þai todriuen four kinges orgulous,
9335 þat hete Gloiant & Minados,
Calufer & Sinargos;
þe oþer & þo of þe table rounde
Bi .v., bi .vi. of gret mounde
Were departed her & tar,
9340 To folwe þe paiens euer ay whar;
Naciens, Adrageins & ek Herui
.vi. heþen kinges driuen hardi,
þat hete Mautaile & Fernicans,
Bantrines & Kehamans,
9345 Forcoars & Troimadac,
For to zeuen hem her mat.
Alone, certes, king Arthour
Drof king Rion wip gret vigour;

⁹³¹⁹⁾ Swiche] che auf rasur von späterer hand geschrieben.

⁹³³⁵⁾ Gloiant] über o eine rasur. ⁹³⁴³⁾ mantaile ms.

Arthour otok him wiþ drawe sward
9350 & seyd: „Azeld þe now, traitour coward!“
Arthour on þe helme him smot,
þe dent sanke þurch, god it wot,
þurch þe pelet to þe panne;
Ac dedli dent no hadde he nanne.
9355 Rion ozain smot a dent,
Ac Arthour him couered, verrament;
Of his scheld he carf a corner
& of his helme a quarter;
þe dint swarf & flei for bi,
9360 þer fore was non sori;
Arthour smot ozainward
Vnder Riones scheld a dint hard
& smot Rion þurch armes alle,
þurch þe side neize to þe zalle;
9365 King Rion so feld him hert
& gan fle ful swipe, cert;
Arthour wald after sue,
Ac sex king gun on him hewe,
Wiche y nemde tofore zou to,
9370 þat Herui drof & his feren al so;
þai grad: „Abide, traitour, on heize,
Wroper hole þou Rion seize!“
þo lete Arthour Rion scape;
Kehenans com wiþ gret rape
9375 & zaf king Arthour swiche a las,
þat Arthour al astoned was;
Arthour smot þat geant ozan
A dint, þat fro main cam,
He smot his schulder wiþ arm & scheld,
9380 þat it fleize in þe feld.
Kehenans dede his stede forþ steppe
& king Arthour wald bicleppe
About his swere wiþ his rizt arm,
þat þe oper mizt don him harm;
9385 Ac bitven his hond & elbowe
Arthour him zaue a dint of howe

f. 254 c.

⁹³⁵⁷⁾ corner] r ü. d. z. geschr. ⁹³⁶⁷⁾ after] r mit dunklerer
tinte nachgetr. ⁹³⁶⁸⁾ him] danach hne, ausgestr.

Wip his swerd, pat his hond
Amidward þe feld wond.
þe stede him bar here & tere,
9390 Criand, so wode he were,
Ac sone þer after ded doun he þrewe,
His soule to þe deuel blewe.
þe oper dasched on Arthour al fíue,
For to reuen him his liue,
9395 Ac Arthour king Ferican smot
To þe hert, god it wot;
Forcoars bi þe side he hitt,
þat ribbes & þi he ofslit.
þo com Naciens, Herui & Adragein,
9400 Rideand to Arthour wip gret main,
Wip his to feren king Mautaile
Fram Arthour gan swiþe fle;
Arthour wip his feren þo lizt,
Her hors girten & sadles riȝt.

f. 254d.

9405 Now seip here þis romans
Of king Bohort & king Bans,
So driuen king Minados
Wip his pre feren of proude los;
þai metten wip ten heþen kniztes,
9410 Strong geauntes fel & wiȝt,
Alle pritten þai smiten þo
On our cristen kinges to
& perced boþe scheld & armes
& dede hem wel gret harmes.

9415 Ac Ban hit king Calufer
& cleued his heued in to þe swere,
After he tok so Sinargos,
His heued fram þe bodi was los.

Bohort hit king Glorion
9420 His riȝt schulder anouen on,
þat al þe schulder & ek þe scheld
Wip þe ribbes fleize in þe feld.

⁹⁴⁰¹⁾ mantaile ms.

⁹⁴⁰⁷⁾ Minados] os auf rasur geschr.

- Sornigrens & Pinnogras,
Gaidon & king Margaras
9425 Wip .vii. hepen, sikerliche,
Ban asailed wodeliche.
Ac Ban, so noble kniȝt & hende,
Wiztliche gan him defende;
Pinogras he feld of hors
9430 & foiled al his cursed cors;
Sornigrens he smot wiþ main
þurch out helme in to þe brain.
King Bohort seize his broþer fizt
Al on ozain ten kniȝt;
9435 þe stede wiþ þe spors he dust,
To þe grounde a paien he frust,
Anoþer, þurch helme & bacin
þurch out he clef him to þe chin.
þo þre paiens wiþ wiȝt bones
9440 On þe helme him smiten at ones,
þat he nei hadde, wiþ outen balaunce,
Ylorn hors & contenaunce;
Ac he akeuered wiþ hert liȝt
& smite hem on wiþ main wiȝt;
9445 Ac in þat ich toilinge
Fram Arthour com Rion þe king,
Fleand, his swerde *drain*
& Kay & Griflet & Lucan
& Merangis & Craddoc & Geruan
9450 & Belchin þe broun & Bleoberiis
[9460] & Galescounde & Lectargis,
Kalogrenant & Kehedins,
Folweden & slowen þe Sarrazins
Her & ter, so seyt þe boke,
9460 & a compeinie oftoke,
To hundred paiens, ful of grame,
For her ler & for her schame
& for king Rion was oway,
Her hert was ful of ten & tray;

f. 254 A a.

f. 255 a.

⁹⁴⁴⁴) smiten (!) ms. ⁹⁴⁴⁷) Fleand his sw lautet der custos. Ein
blatt ist ausgefallen.

- 9635 Ich on oþer þer gan smite
[9470] Wip swerdes egge, þat sore gan bite;
þai weren arwe & our hardy
& hem todriuen, sikerly,
& wenten ozain to Danbleys,
9640 & wip outen þe gates, iuel at ayse,
Bileueden þer for her king,
For to han of him tiding;
þai no hadde of Merlin no conseiling,
For he was went, wip outen lesing,
9645 After king Galat of mizti hond,
[9480] Lord ouer Herdene lond,
Wip ten þousand, þat was aschape
Sarrazins, wip gret rape,
For to make enchauntement,
9650 Hem tofore, verrament.
He made alle a valaye
Al so it were a brod leye,
þat Galap no non of his
þat niȝt no miȝt oway, ywis:
9655 Her after sone in þis write,
[9490] Whi he it dede, ze schul it wite.

Now telleþ þis romaunce, þat king Arthour
Com driueand gode scour
& bar Marandois in his hond,
9660 Worþ al þe swerdes of Ingland,
þat he hadde of Rion wonne;
He bad þe king, þat made sonne,
For his swete moder loue,
He most þat niȝt his swerd proue.
9665 Auentours to seke, his stede he smot,
[9500] King Ban rode after, god it wot,
Bohort al so & Nacien, f. 255 b.
Herui de Riuel & Adragein,
& com dasseand al bi cas,
9670 Whar Goionar & Salinas

9641) Bil.] d corr. aus i. 9646) ouer] danach of, unr., ms.
9668) agragein ms. 9669) al] a corr. aus?

Wip a kniȝt of þe table rounde
To .lix. bataile founde.
þese four smot on hem, certes,
So þe lyoun dop on þe hertes;
9675 Arþour tauȝt on a lessoun of howe
[9510] & cleued him to þe sadel bowe;
Anoþer he biheueded, þe þridde he hit,
Vnto þe girdel he him slit;
þe ferþ he tok on þe chine
9680 & carf him ato, biliue;
Ten, for soþe, in litel prawe
þer he brouȝt o liue dawe
Wip his swerd Marandoise,
þat carf doun rizt wip outen noise.
9685 King Ban smot about al so
[9520] & cleued a geant atvo;
Anoþer he schare of al þe side,
þe þridde he dede of þe heued glide
& biheueded þre oþer þer to,
9690 & þe seuend he smot ato;
& Bohort boþe þi & arm
Schare on of & dede him harm;
Anoþer he cleued to þe top,
þe þridde he biheueded, for soþ;
9695 þe ferþ & fift al so,
[9530] To helle grunde he dede hem go;
þe gode kniȝt Adragein
þurch smot on wip gret main;
Anoþer he cleued to þe brest
9700 & of þe þridde þe heued he daste;
þus he binam þer fiue
Al arowe day o liue.
Nacien dede ful wel:
Wip scharp swerd of broun stiel
9705 On he cleued doun rizt
[9540] & anoþer þer to, a plizt;
þe þridde to þe brest he cleued
& of þe ferþe þe heued ofweued,

⁹⁶⁷⁷⁾ þridde] r *ii. d. z. geschr.* ⁹⁶⁹²⁾ on] om. ms. ⁹⁶⁹⁶⁾ he dede]
hede (!) ms. ⁹⁶⁹⁸⁾ þurch] *danach* hem, *unr.* on] *ii. d. z. nachgetr.*

& þre al so þer to he slouȝ.
9710 Herui al so it made touȝ,
To þe chine he on slitt
& of to þe heued ofkitt.

f. 255 c.

Goiomar & Balinas
& þe þridde, þat wip hem was,
9715 Seizen her noble socour
[9550] & leyden on wiþ gret vigour;
Ich of hem po orpedeliche
Four slouȝ, sikerliche;
þo þan leued þer bot niȝt
9720 Of al þat iche companie,
& þo flowen anon rizt,
Al so swiþe so þai miȝt,
Gredeand, it ner non men,
Ac deuelen, þat þai fouzten oȝen;
9725 Our hem suwed as men kene,
[9560] Til þai herden michel dene;
Boþe on helmes & ysen hatten
þe dintes of swordes flatten.
þo seyd Ban: „We moten heye
9730 Al niȝt & wiþ swerd die!“
Quaþ king Arthour: „þat haue y loued,
Al what ichaue mi swerd proued!“
Quaþ Ban: „ȝe no haue it nouȝt deleid,
þat ȝe no haue it wele aseyd!“
9735 „Nay, sir,“ quaþ Arthour, „þat folk was lite,
[9570] þat y no miȝt to wille smite,
& to ek þat ȝe slouȝ so fele,
þat half no miȝt y me bistere.“
þo seyden our oper hem bitvene:
9740 „Most he libben & ythen,
Bitvene Breteine & Costentinenoble
No worþ anoþer kniȝt so noble!“

Now seyt þe boke, þat sir Antore
Wip his feren, y nemd bifore,

9718) Four] danach ti, unterpunktet. 9730) duie (!) ms.
9735) was] s ü. d. z. geschr.

9745 At Danebleise Arthour þai no founde;
[9580] Ozain þai went in þat stounde
 Wip drawen swerd, to sechen him;
 An hundred geauntes wrop & grim
 Wip fauchouns & wiþ swerdes stett,
9750 Ich oper sone mett;
 Antore was feld among þat floc
 & Goruain & Gales pe calu & Craddoc
 & Blioberis & Blichardis,
 þat hem defended a fot, ywis,
9755 & bi help of her feren seuen
[9590] Ozain an hundred: þat was vneuen.

f. 255 d.

Arthour com rideinde in þis cas,
For sir Antour desmaied was;
He smot amidward þe pres,
9760 So grehounde dop out of les;
A geaunt sone he tok anne
þurch out helme & heued panne
& þurch þe side & þe hert;
Of anoper þe heued he girt;
9765 3ete he tok þe pridde
[9600] & cleued him to þe midde;
In þe swere he toke þe ferþ,
þat þe heued fleize to þe erþe.
Fiuē & sex, seuen & eizte,
9770 Orawe he biseize so rizt.
þo gan king Arthour Marmidois,
His swerd, to king Ban praise
& seyd, it carf so wel, men miȝt delite,
þat witeþ þe geaunce of þis smite.
9775 Hem fiue a fot on hors he lift.
[9610] King Ban aside glift,
On a paien wiþ main he girt
þurch out þe heued in to þe hert;
Anoþer he schar þe side of;
9780 þe pridde þe heued he al todrof;

⁹⁷⁴⁹⁾ unten auf der seite mit verweisungezeichen nachgetragen.
⁹⁷⁵¹⁾ floc] oc verklext. ⁹⁷⁶¹⁾ geaunt] au corr. aus? ⁹⁷⁶³⁾ f.
umgestellt, aber durch zeichen richtig angeordnet.

þus her & tar he leyd adoun,
So it were a wode lyoun.

Bohort als a geaunt laiste
& þe heued al todaiste;
9785 Anoþer to þe chine he karf;
[9620] þe þridde he hit, þat he starf;
Al abouten he leyd on
& slouȝ to grounde mani on.

Adragein wiþ wille fre
9790 Arawe biheueded geauntes þre
& oþer mo feld to grounde,
þat neuer more ner sounde.

þe gode kniȝt also, Herui,
Slouȝ so fele, it was ferly.
9795 Naciен, so seyt þe boke,
[9630] Of a geaunt þat heued he tok;
Anoþer to þe chine he luzste;
þe schulder of þe þridde he duȝste.
þus þai laiden her & tar
9800 & her heuedes fram þe bodi schar.
þe .xii. feren, þat hye þer founde,
Non no hadde dedli wounde,
Ac þo þai seiȝen þis fair socour,
þai laiden on wiþ gret vigour;
9805 Ich of hem þre oþer to
[9640] Of þe paiens biheueded þo;
þer was noble main ysene;
Of an hundred, wiþ outen wene,
No leued paiens bot fourtene,
9810 þe oþer lay dede opon þe grene,
& þe .xiiii. flowen swiþe,
So her stedes miȝten drieue;
Our sueden wiþ wille fin
& metten þe clerk Merlin,
9815 þat hem wiþstode & dede hem liȝt,
[9650] Her stedes girten, her sadles riȝt;

f. 256 a.

9781) tar] *danach* þai, *ausgestr.* 9800) bodi] d *verklext.*

So þai dede & blisse made,
Ich of oþers helpe was glade.
Whiles hye hem graþep, restep & rizþep,
9820 Listneþ, hou Leodegan fizþep !

Hou Leodegan now vnder an oke
Fizþep, so seiþ pis boke,
Wip his steward Cleodalis,
Gentil kniȝt & trewe, ywis,
9825 Ozain seuen & tventi fouȝten hye to,
[9660] Certes, þat was michel wo.
On fot was Cleodalis,
So ich zou seyd er pis;
Leodegan on his hors was,
9830 Cleodalis fauȝt on þe gras;
Wip michel sorwe & gret pine
þai werd hem ozain þo Sarrazine.
Colocaulnus, an hoge man,
Smot so to Leodegan,
9835 þat he aplat fel of his stede;
[9670] Boþe mouþe & nose gan blede,
For feblenis oper wounde
Streizt he lay on þe grounde;
þe Sarrazins to him come
9840 & þo him wold han ynome,
Ac Cleodalis her of nam kepe,
He bistride his lord & wepe;
Abouten he leyd wip his sword
& defended his lord,
9845 So he smot to his wiþperwine,
[9680] þat non miȝt his lord winne;
þai him þrewe wip kniues & stones
& zauen him woundes for þe nones.
Vp stirt Leodegan, þe king,
9850 þo passed was his swoninge;
His steward miȝt stond vnneþe,
For he him forfauȝt al to deþe;
He seize his steward so ful of treuþe,

f. 256 b.

⁹⁸¹⁹⁾ hem] e verklext. ⁹⁸²¹⁾ anoke ms. ⁹⁸³⁷⁾ febl.] danach
of, unr. ⁹⁸⁴⁷⁾ &] corr. aus s.

His hert was ful of sorwe & reupe;
9855 He bipouȝt him, wiþ wrong
[9690] His wiif he hadde helden long
Ozaines rizt þurch iniquite;
A word he seyd of gret pite:
„Hay,“ he seyd, „Cleodalis,
9860 Trewe kniȝt wiþ outen feintis,
þurch mi sinne & mi desray
Icham comen to mi last day:
Haue on me pite, gentil man,
& rewe on me, Leodegan!
9865 Ich was þi lord, now am y knaue,
[9700] On me pite & merci haue,
Forȝiue me now þe trespass,
þat y þe haue don, allas!
Y pray þe, þat neuer mi misdede
9870 Mi soule in to helle lede!“
A knowe he sat & seyd: „Merci,
Mine owen swerd take, bel ami,
Mine heued smite of for mi misdede,
Crist me wil þe better rede!“
9875 Cleodalis wepe for pite,
[9710] He seize his lord humilite,
He lift him vp in his arm
& forȝaf him al þat harm,
þat he him hadde don, & schame,
9880 & bad him fizt, on godes name;
So þai deden & fouȝten boþe,
þe paiens þer of weren wroþe;
þo com rideand a geaunt, ywis,
& smot to grounde Cleodalis;
9885 þer he lay streizt along,
[9720] Leodegan to him sprong
& him wered al about f. 256c.
Fram al þat ich cursed route;
So long he fauȝt, he was weri
9890 & fel adoun wel dreri.
Cleodalis þo vp made a stert,
As he nere nouȝt yhert,

⁹⁸⁶⁷⁾ tresppas ms.

& wiþ main fair & hende
His lord, þe king, he gan defende.
9895 þus þai ferd oft, when fel þat on,
[9730] þe oþer vp stert þo anon
& him defended wiþ alle his miȝt;
þus þai fouȝten til midniȝt;
þo were þai wounded so strong,
9900 þat þai no miȝt doure long.
To Cleodalis þo seyd Leodegan:
„Help now þe self, gentilman,
For, to lese & winne al þis lond,
Y no may lenger stond!“
9905 Often þai made dounfalleing,
[9740] & when þai miȝt, vpriseing,
& halp Cleodalis him, to were & fiȝt,
Al so wele so he miȝt.

In þis time hadde Merlin
9910 To Arthour & Ban told her pine,
& þo hadde Leodegan ben ynome,
3if Arthour no had ycome
Wiþ his sextene, þat on hem plat,
& euerich a paien to deþ flat.
9915 Merlin rode out in a stounde
[9750] & ȝider brouȝt .vii. of þe table rounde,
þat dede wiþ strengþe her swerd bapen
In bodi & blod of þe hapen.
King Arthour & Bohort & Ban
9920 Keuered on hors Leodegan,
& Naciens, þat kniȝt of pris,
On hors keuered Cleodalis,
þat al so wele yfouȝten, cert,
So þai ner þat day yhert.
9925 Merlin, he tauȝt to four geauntes, saun ail,
[9760] þat sustend þat bataile;
Naciens rod Ancalnus to,
þe side he schar his bodi fro;
Arthour cleued king Maulas,
9930 & Ban ato girt king Ridras;

⁹⁸⁹⁴⁾ þe] om. ms.

Bohort biheueded king Dorilan,
& ich of þe oþer slouȝ a paien þan.

f. 256 d.

þe oþer paiens flowe swiþe,
& our went ozain biliue

9935 In to þe cite of Carohaise,
[9770] Wiþ her feren hem made at aise;
þai maden gret blis & fest
& after ȝeden hem to rest.

⁹⁹³¹⁾ bih.] eded *fast verlossen*.

II.

DIE JÜNGERE VERSION.

L.

H^e, þat made wip his hond
(f. 13a)
Wynd and water, wode and lond,
Zeue heom alle good endyng,
þat wolon listne þis talkyng!
5 And y schal telle ȝow byfore,
How Merlyn was geten and bore,
And of his wisdoms al so
And oþre happes mony mo,
Sum whyle byfeol in Engelonde,
10 Ze, þat wol þis vndurstonde.
In Engelond þer was a kyng,
A noble mon in al thyng,
In weorre he was war and
wyȝht.
Kyng Constaunce, for soþe, he
hyȝt;
15 A douȝhty mon he was of dede
And ryȝt wys he was of rede.
Kyng he was of gret honour
And holden prynce and con-
querour;
For kyng Angys of Denemark
20 And many a Sarsyn stout and
stark
Weorred on him, wiþ owte faile,

D.

2) Both winde P. and w. w.] wode water H; water P.
3) them PH u. so stets. 4) wol. l.] lystynyth H. [þis] to my HP;
danach ein buchst. ausradirt, L. 5) telle ȝow b.] you informe P.
7) wisdome P. 8) And] of add. H. 9) Sum wh.] Which then P.
That sume tyme felle H. 10) He P. [þis] here & H. 11) þer was]
was sume tyme H. 18) was] bothe add. H. 14) Kyng] om. P. Co-
stantyne H; Constantine P. 15) was he H. 16) ryȝt — was] allso a
wyse man H. 18) emperour P. 17) f. om. H. 19) For] om. H. An-
guish P; Anquysh H. 20) Sarazen P; Sarazyn H. 21) outen PH.

And he ouercom heom in batayle
And drof heom owt of his lond
 pat tyde,
 pat þey neo durste him nouȝt
 abyde.

25 ƿanne hadde þeo kyng sones
 þreo,
 þeo faireste childre pat myȝt
 beo;
 þeo eldest sone, þat schold beo
 kyng,

Was cleped Moyne, wiþ oute
 lesyng,

 þis oþre weore of gret renoun,

30 Boþe Vter and Pendragon:

þus men heore names alle calliþ,
 þeo Bruyt witnessiþ heom alle.

On þat tyme, we fyndiþ in boke,
 A gret seknesse þeo kyng toke,
35 þat out of þis world he most
 wende,
 And after his barouns he dude
 sende.
 And whan þey weore comen
 euerilkon,
 þe kyng seide to heom anon:

After his fader deyng: (f. 1^a)

Sope to say, wiþ outen blame,
Moyne was þat childe name.
þe oþer children were of gret 5
 renoun,

þat on hyȝte Vter, þat oþer
 Pendragon:

þus me gan here names calle,
þe Brut hit wytnessed soþe
 wiþ alle.

In þattyme, as we fendeþ in book,
 A gret syknesse þat kyng took, 10
 þat of þis world he sculde wende,

And after his barons he gan
 sende.

And whanne þey weren come
 echon,

Kyng Constantyn seide anon:

23) the londe *H*; feild *P*.

24) neo] om. *P*. þat þ. n.] Ther
 was none *H*. nouȝt] om. *H*.

24) vor 23) gestellt in *P*. 28) called
P. Was c. M.] Moyen he hight

H. oute] om. *P*. 27) some (!) *P*.

29) The *H*. oþreo, e verklext, *L*;
oþe (!) *P*. weore] tweyne *H*. 30)

*Hyght *H*. 31) men] dyd add. *H*.
alle c.] calle *H*. 32) As ther brutes

H. heom] om. *H*. 31)f. om. *P*. 33)* In
P; om. *H*. fyndiþ] i ausradirt, *L*.

34) kyng] he add. *H*. 35) wende] go
H. 36) dude s.] sent tho *H*. 37)
whan] þat add. *H*. echeone *H*.

38) them *H*; then (!) *P*.

„Lordynges,“ he saide, „lasse
and more,
40 Out of þis world y schal fare:
For godis loue and þar charite
And for þe loue, þe owen to me,

Whan y am ded and lokyn in
clay,
Helpþ my childre þat þe may
45 And takiþ Moyne, myn eldest
sone,
And makiþ him kyng and ȝeneþ
him corowne;

Holdiþ him ȝoure lord for euer
mo!“
Alle þay graunted, hit scholde
beo so.
þan hadde þe kyng a styward
feyr,
50 þat was cleped sir Fortager;

„Lordyngys, lestneþ,“ he sayde, 15
„lasse & mare,
For out of þis world now y
schal fare;
þarfore y pray ȝow, for loue
of me
þat trewe þe be, pur charite,
And þat no treson be ȝow
among
For his loue, þat suffrede deþ 20
on þe croys wiþ wrong:
Wan y am ded & loke in clay,
(f. 1 b)
Helpeþ my childry what ȝemay;
Makeþ Moyne, myn eldest sone,
Of Englond to bere þe croune,

And, þat to hym trewe ye be, 25
I ȝow pray pur charyte.“
þanne alle þe barons, boþe old
& ȝong,
Graunteð to þat sayd here kyng.

þanne sayd þe kyng, as ȝe
may here,
To his steward, syre Fortygere; 30
Strong he was & ful wys,
But he was also ful of coueytys;
The kyng he haþ serued ful long,
For he was boþe styf & strong;
On hym was al his tryst at nede, 35
þe kyng hym ȝaf both lond & lede,
And ofte tymys he gan hym pray,

39) Lords P. lasse a. m.]
to then (!) anon P. 40) y sch. f.]
must I gon P. I must die, myn
hart is sore P. 41) þar] om. P.
and p. ch.] in trenite P. 42)
that faviowr (!) H. owen] have
H. 43) locked P; leyde H.
44) þat] all that H; in *what P.
45) him] yowr add. H. & g. h.]
with H. 47) And hold H. him]
for add. P. ȝoure] your P; oure (!)
L. for e. m.] said hee P. 48) And
all H. soe bee P. 49) a] danach
stwy, ausgest., L. feyr] om. H.
50) called P. Vortiger P.

16) of] ü. d. z. nachgetragen.
22) my] y corrigit aus i. 24)
croune] e mit dunklerer tinte
corr. aus? 27) alle ü. d. z.
nachgetr. 29) kyng] g corr. aus d.
36) both] th corr. aus? 37) hym]
ü. d. z. nachgetr.

His treowthe to þe kyng he plyzt,
To helpe his chyldre at his
myȝt,
Bote sone þat traitour was for-
swore,
He brak his treowþe and was
forlore.

55 So þat þe kyng of þis world
went
And faire was buryed, verray-
ment,
At Wynchestre, wiþ oute lesyng,
Was mad his burying.
Eorles and barouns sone anon
60 Tok heom to gedre euerychon,
Wiþ outyn any more dwellyng
(f. 13^b)
Heomaden Moynelord and kyng.
Bote þe styward, sir Fortager,
Was ful wroþ, as ȝe may here,
65 And was þer aȝeyn wiþ al his
myȝt,
Boþe by dayzes and by nyȝht,
For he þouȝt him seolue wiþ
treson

52) at] with all P. 50)—52)
That was falce and foward P.
53) Fwll H. the P. 54) He]
*& P; om. H. & w. f.] he had
made beforne P. 55) So þat]
For P; And whan H. kyng]
out add. PH. þe H. world] was
add. H. 56) And f.] He H.
bur.] than add. H. 58) There
was PH. 60) Gadiry H. heom] all
add. H. echeone H. 61) out PH.
62) They P u. so stets. *To
*make H. M.] *theyr add. H. 64)
wyckyd H. shall H. 65) was]
stooðe P. agaynst H. 66) day
PH. and] also add. H; eke add.
P. 67) wiþ] by H. Mit diesem
verse schliesst H.

To helpen his children wat he
may.
He answerede & swore, þat he
wold ywys,
But he was false & coueytys, 40
For, whanne þe kyng hadde
his lyfe ylore, (f. 2^a)
Sone þat fals traytor was for-
swore
And wiþ falshede brak his
trewþe
& dude gret falsnesse & wrong,
& þat was rewþe.
Out of þis wordle þe kyng is 45
went
And was burred, verement,

At Wynchestre in þe toun,
þat of al Englond bar þe croun.
þanne þe barounage sone anon
Took hem to consayle euerychon, 50
Wiþ outyn eny more taryng

To make Moyne here kyng.
But þat fals Fortiger
þerfore was wroyþ in his manere,
And wiþ his myȝt was þar agayn, 55

But for fere he dorst noȝt sayn,
For euere he þouȝte þoruȝ
tresoun

45) kyngis, darüber kyng ys mit
hellerer tinte. 48) englong (!) ms.
50) hym, corr. in hem. 52) make]
auf rasur geschr. 54) was worþ,
u. d. z. nachgetragen, worþ
ausgestr. und wroyþ am rande
nachgetragen.

Beo lord and kyng wiþ croun.
So sone as Moyne was chose kyng,
70 Into Denemark þe word gon
spryng.

Kyng Aungys hit herde sayn,
Per of he was boþe glad and fayn;
Messangeris þat ilke tyde

Wente ouer al his lond wyde
75 After mony Sarsyn stout &
stark

Of Saxoyne and of Denmark,
An hundred þousand and þetmoo
On horse and on fote al so

Come þydir wiþ oute ensoyne,
80 For to weorre on kyng Moyne.
þeo kyng wolde no lengur
byde,

Bote dyȝt him to schip þat
tyde

And brouȝt in to Engelond afyn
Mony a douȝt Sarsyne.

85 Bote Engelond was clepid þan
Mukyl Breotayne of vche man.
þanne þe word wyde sprong,

How þe Denys kyng wiþ wrong

Gan worche Engelond muche
woo;

68) *To be P. 69) As P. 70) can
P. 71) hit h. s.] hard it then P. 72)
*& th. P. he] om. P. 73) Soone add.
P. mess.] *in add. P. 74) Wente]
*He *sent P. the P. 75) Sarazens P.
76) & of Saxons P. 78) horse] backe
add. P. 79) f. om. P. 81) þeo k. w.]
Then wold they P. abyde P. 82)
them P. 83) af.] I saine P. 85)
called them (!) P. 86) euery P.
88) Danish P. 89) Gan w.] Wrought
in P. mickle P.

Of Englond to bere þe croun.
So þat Moyne was crowned kyng,
In to Denmark hit dude spryng. 80

þey of Denmark in þat day
(f. 2 b)
Bileueden nouȝt yn Cristes lay.
Kyng Aungis þat herde sayn
And of þat tidynge was ful fayn;
His messangeris he sente in 85
þat tide

Ouer al Denmark in to euery syde
To many a Saracyn boþe stouȝt
& stark
Of Sisoyne & of Denmark,
Syxty þousand & ȝut mo
On hors wiþ kyng Amygys 70
comen tho,

And of foot-men a wel gret rowte,
Englond to makyn in dowte.
þe kyng Amygys nold no lengere
abide,

But in to schepe he wente in
þat tyde,
And to England þey gan fare, 75
To worchen hem moche care.
Englond was yclepyd þo
Lityl Bretayne, þe Bruyt seyþ so.
þat word in Englond wyde

sprong,
þat þe kyng of Denmark al 80
wiþ wrong
Was come in to England (f. 3 a)
At þe rye vpon þe see strand.

The kyng herde, þat hit was so,

58) englong (!) ms. 62) yn]
on, o corr. in y. Cristes] es corr.
aus on. 67) Sar.] das zweite a
ü. d. z. nachgetr. boþ] ü. d. z.
nachgetr. 74) in] ü. d. z. nachgetr.

90 Kyng Moyne herde, þat hit
 was soo,
 He went him to sir Fortager
 And preyzed him wiþ mouþ
 and cher
 And bysouȝte him wiþ gret
 vygour,
 He scholde beo his gouernour,
95 Azeyn his fomen for to fyȝt;
 And he onswerede anon ryȝt
 And brayd him self seek as
 traytour strong
 And saide, wiþ ryȝt and nouȝt
 wiþ wrong,
 Neo wold he neuere come in
 batayle,
100 For his streynthe bygan to
 fayle;
 And al he dude for nyþe and
 onde:
 He þouȝte to beo kyng of þis
 londe.
 þeo kyng him wolde no more
 pray,
 Bote tok his leue and went a way.
105 Messangeris he sent þat tyde
 Ouer al his lond on ylk a syde
 To eorl, baroun and to knyȝt,
 To helpe him for to fyȝt;

And in his herte hym was
 ful wo;
þanne wente Moyne þe kynge 85
 to Fortiger
 And gret hym wiþ mornyng chere •
 And bad hym mekelich, wiþ
 outen bost,
 þat he wold leden his ost
 Azens his fomen forto fyȝt;
 And Fortiger seyde, þat he ne 90
 myȝt;
 He made hym seek, þat trey-
 tour strong,
 And sayd, in ryȝt nother in wrong
 He nold neuere come in batayle,
 His strengthe, he sayd, dude
 hym fayle;
 And al he dude for angur & 95
 for onde,
 þat he ne most be kyng of
 Englond.
 Kyng Moyne nold hym no
 more pray,
 But from Fortiger wente his way.
 His massyngere anon in þat
 tyde (f. 3 b)
 He sente in to Englond ful wide 100
 To erlys, barons & knyȝtys,
 To come & helpen hym in
 fyȝttys;

91) him to] vnto P. 92) mouþ
and] lowlye P. 93) wiþ gr. v.]
of his honor P. 94) He sch.
For to P. 95) Against P. for
om P. 96) And] om. P. onsw.
him add. P. 97) fained P. self]
mit dunklerer tinte ü. d. z. nach-
getr., L. seek] sicke P; om. L.
99) He wold P. 100) When P.
101) For all this he said afore-
hand P. 102) For he P. that
P. 103) him w.] he wold him
P. 104) a] *his P. 105) To P.
the lands P. ylka] euery P. 107)
For *erles, *barons & *knights
P. 108) To] *come *& add. P.
for to f.] *in his *fights P.

91) treyt.] y ü. d. z. nachgetr.
92) nother] e corr. aus?

And whan þay weore al ycome
110 And heore armes hadde ynome,

þey prikyden forþ, wiþoute faile,
To ȝeue þe Denys kyng batayle.

þer was clowen mony a scheld
And mony a knyȝt feld in þe
feld.

115 Al þat þey metten at þat
stounde, (f. 2a)

Mon and hors þey slowe to
grounde;
So Englysch men, for soþ to say,
Weore discomfyȝt and fledde
away;
To Wynchestre þay fledde þo,

120 Syngand allas and weylawo.

Bote þe Denys kyng by fore
Mukil of his folk hadde ylore;
Al so swyþe he sent his sonde
Hom aȝeyn to his owne londe,

125 To al, þat myȝhte wepne beore,
Schold come to Englond, him
to weore.

¹¹⁰⁾ hadde y.] done vpon P.
¹¹⁴⁾ a] om. P. fallen P. þe] om.
P. ¹¹⁵⁾ at þ. st.] *in strand P.
¹¹⁶⁾ *Horsse *& *man *fell to the
P. ¹¹⁷⁾ So] Soone the P. for] the
P. ¹²⁰⁾ With much sorrow, care
& woe P. ¹²¹⁾ Danish P. ¹²²⁾
*Much P. folk] he add. P. *for-
lore P. ¹²³⁾ Al so s.] & then
forthe P. ¹²⁴⁾ Some (!) into P.
¹²⁵⁾ weapons P. ¹²⁶⁾ to — weore]
& helpe him in this warre P.

And wanne þey were alle ycome
And ech man hadde hys harnes
ynome,

þey wenten fourþ, wiþoutyn fayle, 105
To ȝeuen here fomen strong
batayle.

þare was ycloue many a scheld
And many knyȝt lay ded on
þe feld;

Many a douȝti man in þat tyde
Lay þar ded wiþ woundes wyde. 110
þanne was þe Denmarkes ost

so strong,
þat þey fouȝtyn wiþ axes &
wiþ sperys long;

Al þat þey hytten in þat stounde,

Hors & man, hit fyl to grounde;

The englysch folk in þat day 115
Weren dysconfyȝtyd & flouȝen
away;

To Wynchestrre þey fledden þo,
(f. 4a)

Gredyng alas & weylawo.

Amygys, kyng of Denmark þer
by fore
Hadde moch folk þer forlore, 120
And also swythe he sente hys
sonde

In to Denmark, his oune londe,
Vpon forfeitres of lyf & leme
To Wenchestre þat þey schulden
keme.

Al þat myȝtte armes bere, 125
Schulden come wiþ schyld &
spere;

¹⁰⁴⁾ yn.] auf rasur geschr.

¹¹⁹⁾ Am.] die initiale ist weg-
gelassen und später klein nach-
getragen. by] mit jüngerer hand
und blasserer tinte ü. d. z. nach-
getr. ¹²²⁾ londe] 1 corr. aus h.

Of weorre wolde he neuer
blynne,
Cytees and castels he gan wynne,

In Engelond he dude mukil wo,
130 Half a zer and sumdel moo.
Alle þe barouns of Engelond
Tokyn heom to gedre on honde,

What heom weore best to done,
To avenge heom of heore fone.

135 And whan þay weore come
alle, y zow telle,
Eorles, barouns, þat weore feolle,
Heo seiden, þat Moyne, heore
kyng,
Was nouȝt bote a broþelyng,
And seyden: „Zef Fortager
kyng ware,
140 He schulde ous brynge out of
care!“
And seide anon, olde and ȝyng,
þey wolde, Fortager weore kyng.
And whan þay haddyn spoke
of þis,
Twelue barons þey sente ywys
145 To sir Fortager þeo bolde,
To wite, why þat he neo wolde

For of his werre he nold noȝt
blynne,
For he þouȝte Englond to wynne.
Townes he brende & citees als
And beet a doun many castels 120
And wrouȝtte Englond moche care
Eyzte mounthys and wel mares.
panne al þe barons of Englond
Token hem alle to gederys in
hond,

Wat best hem were to don, 125
To awreken hem on here fon.
(f. 4 b)

þey comen to gederis, as y zow
telle,
Erlis & barons, þat weren ylle,
þey seyden, ywys, þat „Moyne,
oure kyng,
Is nouȝt wourþ a ferþyng!“ 140
þey seyden: „Yf Fortiger oure
kyng ware,
He wold vs brengen out of care!“
panne þouȝtte anon bothe old
& ȝyng,
Fortiger to maken kyng.
Wanne þey hadden spoken 145
of þys,
Twelue barons þar wente ywys
To syre Fortiger þe bold,
For to weten, why he nold

¹²⁸) hegan] for *to P. ¹²⁹) dude
m. w.] warrd full sore P.
¹³⁰) *more P. ¹³¹) of] in P.
¹³²) on h.] *in that stond P.
¹³³) heom—best] was best for
them P. ¹³⁴) For to P. ¹³⁵) And]
om. P. y ȝ. t.] arright P.
¹³⁶) Eorles] *& add. P. þat w.
f.] lords & knights P. ¹³⁷) The
P. þat] om. P. heore] their
young P. ¹³⁸) nouȝt] om. P.
brotherlinge P. ¹⁴⁰) *wold bring
them P. ¹⁴¹) They P. anon]
*both add. P. ¹⁴²) þey w.] That
P. weore] shold be their P.
¹⁴³) of] all P. ¹⁴⁶) why þ.]
whether P. nay P.

Aȝeyn heore fomen for to fonde,
To dryue heom out of Engelonde.
And þo þeo barounes alle yfere
150 Waren come to sir Fortager,
Wel hendeliche he heom grette
And on þe deys by him sette

And bad heom wiþ wordes ille,
To sayze, what weore heore wille;
155 And þey onswerde faire aȝeyn
And baden, þat he scholde
heom seyn,
W[hy] he wolde nouȝt wiþ
heom gon
[For to a]venge heom apon
heore foon.
[And s]eide: „Syþe Constaunce
was ded,
160 [We ha]n had a sory red,

[We ha]n had mony sory happenes

[And of] hys men wel harde
clappes!“
[And bade,] he scholde take
on honde,
[To warr]e heom out of Englonde.

165 Ben ans]werde sir Fortager
[As a man of] gret power:
„I was neu]er zet zoure kyng

¹⁴⁷⁾ Against P. for] om. P.
stand P. ¹⁴⁸⁾ *when P. in fere
P. ¹⁵¹⁾ Wel] & add. P. *they
*him grette P. ¹⁵²⁾ deys] dske (!)
P. him] they add. P. ¹⁵³⁾ still
P. ¹⁵⁴⁾ For to P. was P.
157) — ¹⁶⁰⁾ Ein stück vom rande
des blattes ist abgerissen und da-
durch diese zeilen verletzt; das
fehlende ist in eckigen klammern,
soweit möglich, nach P. ergänzt.
158) apon] of P. ¹⁶¹⁾ f. om. P.
163) bade] that add. P. in P.
167) yett neuer P.

Aȝens his fomen fyȝtte
Wiþ al þe strenth þat he myȝt. 150
And whanne þe barons al yfere
Were ycome to Fortigere,
Henliche þey hym grette, (f. 5 a)
And he hem took & bi hym
hem sette
And askede hem wiþ wourdes ille, 155
Why þey come & by what skylle.
þey answerden hym agayn
And sayden: „Syre, we schul
zow sayn:
Whi nelt þu, syre, wiþ vs gon,

For to awreken vs vpon oure 160
fon?
We may,“ þei seiden, „haue
no pes,
For þe kyng of Denmark, wiþ
outyn les,
He werreb vpon vs boþe day
& nyȝt,
þarfore we prayen þe, syre, help
vs to fyȝt,
And take þat to þyn honde, 165

To sauuen al Englond,

Aȝens þe kyng of Denmark
þat þu fare,
þatwerkeþ Englond moche care.“
þanne answerd syre Fortiger
As a lord of gret powere: (f. 5 b) 170
„I was neuere makyd zowre kyng:

¹⁵¹⁾ whanne] h ü. d. z.
nachgetr. ¹⁵⁸⁾ Heulyche (!) ms.
¹⁶³⁾ boþe] ü. d. z. nachgetr.
¹⁶⁴⁾ þe] ü. d. z. nachgetr.
¹⁶⁷⁾ kyng] ü. d. z. nachgetr.

[Why praye þe me of such
helþynge?
No neuer ȝet her by fore (f. 2 b)
170 To ȝow no was y nouȝt yswore,
For to helpe ȝow at ȝoure neode;
And þer fore, so god me spedē,

Wendiþ hom to ȝoure kyng
And preyeþ him in al thyng,
175 þat he ȝow helpe aȝeyn ȝoure
foon,
For of me neo gete þe noon!“
þanne onswerde a bold baroun:
”Oure kyng nys bote a kouiou,
For, whan he sib a sweord
ydrawe,
180 Anon he wenyþ to beon yslawe;
He ne dop vs non oþir good,
Bote fleoþ awey, as he weore
wod:
Hadestow beon among vs alle,
þat chaunce neo hadde neuer
byfalle,
185 þat we lore þis asauȝt;
For soþe, in him was al þeo
defauȝt:
þus seyn alle oure peris.“
”Y tro wel,“ seide sire Fortagers,
”Certes, hit was gret deol,
190 To make ȝoure kyng of a fool;
Hadde þe mad a mon ȝoure
kyng,

Whi praye þe me þanne of
swych a þyng?
Ne neuere,“ he sayd, „her by forn
To non of ȝow y was ysworn,
For to helpe ȝow at nede, 175
An þarfore, so Cryst me spedē,
Of me schal þe helpe non,
Ich ȝow swere by seynt John!
But wendyþ now hoom to
Moyne, ȝowre kyng,
And biddyþ hym in al þyng, 180
þat he ȝow awreke of ȝoure foon,

For of me ghete þe helpe non!“
þanne onswerde a bold baron:
”Syre, oure kyng ys but a couion,
For, whanne he seeþ a swerd 185
ydrawe,
He weneþ anon to be slawe;
He dop vs non oþer goud,
But flykyr awey, as he were
woud:
Haddest þu ben among vs alle,
(f. 6 a)
Swych a cas hadde vs nouȝt 190
byfalle;
Alle, þat weren at þat sauȝt,
Seyden, þat in oure kyng was
þat defauȝt,
And so seyden al oure per.“
”I trowe hit wol,“ quaþ Fortiger,
”For, certis, it was a nyce þyng, 195
Of a fool to make a kyng;
Hadde þe makyd a man ȝowre
hefd,

¹⁶⁸⁾ help.] *a *thinge P.
¹⁶⁹⁾ Nor yett neuer P. ¹⁷⁰⁾ To
—nouȝt] Nor to you was neuer
P. ¹⁷¹⁾ vnto P. ¹⁷²⁾ To helpe you
against P. ¹⁷³⁾ of—þe] *helpe
of me gett you P. ¹⁷⁴⁾ *is P.
k.] younge one P. ¹⁷⁵⁾ Anon]
om. P. ¹⁷⁶⁾ ne] om. P. noe P.
¹⁷⁷⁾ amongst P. ¹⁷⁸⁾ neo] om.
P. ¹⁷⁹⁾ f. om. P. ¹⁸⁰⁾ sire]
om. P. ¹⁸¹⁾ Certaine P. ¹⁸²⁾ ȝoure]
*a P. of] such add. P.

¹⁷⁷⁾ schil (!) ms. ¹⁷⁸⁾ ȝow]
mit hellerer tinte ü. d. z. nachgetr.
¹⁷⁹⁾ now] w mit h. t. ü. z. nachgetr.
¹⁸⁰⁾ whanne] h ü. d. z. geschr.
¹⁸¹⁾ flyky (!) ms. ¹⁸²⁾ per] dar
über ein querstrich, ausradirt.
¹⁸³⁾ hefd] auf rasur geschr.

He hadde ȝow saued in al
thyng;
Bote, certaynly, sikir ȝow beo,
Help neo haue ȝe non of me,
195 Bote if ȝoure kyng weore ded,
aplyȝt,
I wolde ȝow helpe wiþ al my
myȝt.“
þanne saide þeo barouns ilkon:
“Woltow, þat we oure kyng
slove?“
„Nay,“ he seide, „wiþ outyn
stryf,
200 Whiles ȝowre kyng is olyue,
Help no gete ȝe non, ywis!“
þeo barons toke leue wiþ þis;

To Wynchestre þey went alle,
þere þeo kyng was in his halle,
205 And, als he sat at þe mete,
þey rowned to him wiþ gret hete,
And, als he sat at þe bord,
Or euer he spak any word,
þey rowned alle to him anon
210 And smyten of his hed wel sone.
And whan þe kyng þus was
slawe,
Eorles, barons, hyȝhe and lawe
Tokyn heom alle to rede,
Kyng þey mosten haue nede,
215 Engelond for to weore
Aȝeyns heore foon, þat wolde
heom dere.

He schulde haue saued ȝow fro
.dred;
But, certaynly, seker ȝe be,
Helpe schul ȝe haue non of me, 200
But yf ȝowre kyng were ded,
aplyȝt,
þanne wolde ich helpen ȝow
wiþ al my myȝt.“
þanne seyd þe barons euerychon:
“Sire, wolt þu, þat we oure kyng
schul sloon?“
„Nay,“ he sayd, „wiþ outyn 205
stryue,
But, certis, whiles þat he ys
a lyfe,
Myn help ghete ȝe neuer mo!“
The barons token here leue þo;
(f. 6 b)

To Wenchestre þey wenten alle
And founden þe kyng in his halle, 210
And, as he sat ryȝt at his mete,
þey ronnen on hym wiþ gret hete,
And, or þey spekyn eny wourd,
Ryȝt as þe kyng sat at his bord,
They gurdyn of his hede anon 215
And wenten hem out euerychon.
And, whan þe kyng was þus
aslawe,
Erlis, barons, both heyȝe & lawe,
Anon þey tokyn hem to rede,
For a kyng þey most haue nede, 220
Englond for to were,
þat noman schulde hem dere.

192) *saved *you P. 193) cert.]
sithen P. 194) neo h. ȝ.] gett you
P. 195) if] so P.; om. L. 196)
*helpe *you P. 197) eche one P.
198) Will yee P. 200) While
P. ȝowre] younge add. P. 201)
no] om. P. 204) his] om. P.
205) þe] om. P. 206) run P.
wiþ] in P. 209) run P. 210)
full P. 211) *was *thus P.
214) That *a k. P. 215) All E.
P. 216) Against them that will
or darre P.

202) wolden (!) ms. 207) help]
ü. d. z. nachgetr. 210) þe kyng]
ü. d. z. nachgetr. 217) whan]
h ii. d. z. geschr.

- þanne hadde þe kyng breþere two,
Zonge childre þay weore boo,
þay weore so zonge wiþ ynne
elde,
220 þat þey myȝte non armes
welde;
þat on was Vter, and Pendragon.
þan saide þe barons euerilkon,
þat þey neo scholde neuer spedē,
Bote ȝef a douȝhty mon of dede
225 Weore chose to beon emperere,
And sworen, þat sir Fortagere

Was a douȝhty mon of dede,
Stout and stark apon a stede,
And sweore þer to gedre vchon,
(f. 3^a)
230 þat oþir kyng no wold þey non.
þo nas þer neyþir knyȝt no
sweyn,
þat durste speke þer aȝeyn,
Bote graunted alle, olde and
zonge,
To make Fortager heore kynge.

235 A mury tyme is in Auerel,
þat muche schewiþ monnes wil.
So in þat tyme, as ȝe may here,
Twolfue barouns come to For-
tagere
- pan hadde þe kyng bretheren
two,
þat zonghe childrynen weren tho;
þey weren so zong, wiþ outen 225
elde,
þat þey myȝt non armes aweld,
(f. 7^a)
Noþer Vter ne Pendragon.
þanne seyd þe barons euerychon,
þat þey sculd neuore spede,
But yf a douȝti man of dede 230
Were chosyn, to ben heres kyng;
„þat ys soþe,“ seyden þey alle,
„wiþ ouþe lesyng,
Fortiger is douȝtyest man of
honde,
Of eny man, þat ys in Englond!“
þan swore þey to gederys 235
euerychon,
þatoþer kyng wold þey haue non.
þar was noþer knyȝt ne swayn,

þat durst speke þar agayn,
But graunteddyn alle, both old
& ȝyng,
þat Fortiger schulde be heres 240
kyng.
- And þanne anon, as ȝe may here,
Twelf barons wente to syre
Fortagere

217) þe k.] kyng om. (!) L;
Moyne P. 218) boo] alsoe P.
219) f. om. P. 221) The P. hight
P. and] the other P. 222) euerye
one P. 223) neo] om. P. 225) emp-
pere (!) L. *their *king in fere P.
226) sweren P. 228) stark] stale-
worth (le zweimal geschr.) P. of (!)
P. 229) A L; *The P. *then P.
230) now. þ.] they wold *haue P.
231) Then *was P. nor P. 232) þer]
them P. 233) alle] it *both P.
234) make] sir add. P. 235) f. om. P.
237) the P. tyme] of April add.
P. 238) Tw.] abgeschnitten, P.

225) elde] e corr. aus o.
234) ys] ü. d. z. geschr. 239) old]
om. (!) ms.

And seiden, þat Engelondes ryȝt
240 Was lorn þourȝ heore kyng,
aplyȝt,
And he was ded, wiþ oute
lesyng,
And his two breþere weore to
ȝyng,
To holde þe kyndom in honde;
"þerfore, þeo comyn of þislonde,
245 Haf þe chosen wiþ honour,
For to beon heore emperour."

Blyþe and glad was Fortager,
Anon was kyng, wiþ oute
dawnger.

At þe feste of his coronement,
250 Two barons, þat weore gent,
þat al þe treson vndurstode
And hadde reuþthe of heore
blode,
þat þey scholde beo do to ded,
þer fore þey tok anoþir red
255 And tokyn Vter and Pendragon

And passed ouer þeo see anon.

Of heore passage wiste no mo,
Bote þe hende barons two.

And seyden, þat al Englondys
ryȝt
(f. 7b)
Was lost for here kyngys fyȝt,
And he was ded, wiþ oute lesyng, 245
And his breþeryn were to ȝyng,
þat kyndom to holde;
"And þær fors þe barons wold
Habbe loked þrouȝ alle þyng,
þat þu, Fortiger, schalt be 250
oure kyng."
banne swyth glad was Fortiger
For tidyngis, þat he hurde þare,
þat he kyng schulde be

Of Englond, þat is so fre;
And þus he fenge þe croune 255
By assent of þe barons comune;
And at þe fest of his crounement
þe twelfbarons, þat were ful gent,
Gonnen to vnderstonde son
Of Vter & of Pendragon, 260

þat þey schulden be ded;
And þarforþ þey token here reed
And token þe childryn, as we
reed, (f. 8a)
And ouer þe see þey gonne
hem lede,
For to sauuen þe children lyf, 265
þat Englond schulde be in stryf.
Ful wel wanst þe barons, hyt
schulde so be,
And þarforþ þey brouȝtyn þe
chyldryn ouer þe se;
So queyntliche þey token on,
þat noman wyste, whedur þey 270
were gon.

242) brothers P. 244) commons P. the P. 245) Haue you P.
248) & anon P. 249) the turnament P. 250) *The P. Danach
At whych parlement þey hadyn
tyȝt, ausgestr., L. 252) They P.
heore] the right P. 253) þey]
children add. P. 256) seas P.

264) hym (!) ms. 269) queyntl.]
t ü. d. z. geschr.

And whan þeo feste was yholde,
260 Fortager, þat traitur bolde,
Let make a compacement
Of eorles and of barouns gent,
At wych parlement þey hadyn
tyȝt,
For to a slayn þeo childre ryȝt.
265 Fortager comaunded anon,

To fechche Vter and Pendragon.
Swyþe anon men heom souȝt,

Bote þey neo myȝhte fynde
heom nouȝt.

Whan Fortager þis vndurstod,

270 þanne at furst he wax al wod
And þouȝte, ȝef þey come to
lyue,
To vyldeþþey schold him dryue.

Bote noþeles sire Fortager
Dude comaunde fer and ner,
275 Boþe to baroun and to knyȝt,
[To make h]eom redy for to fyȝt.

And whanne þe fest was yholde,
Anon syre Fortiger þe bold
Let make a comoun parlement
Of erlys & of barons ful gent;
In þat parlement he heet anon 275

To quellen Vter & Pendragon,
And comaundede þe barons
anon þer,
To seche Pendragon & Vter;
And þanne þe chyldren ful
ȝerne þey souȝt
And myȝt hem fynde nouȝt. 280

And whanne Fortyger þat
vnderstood, (f. 8 b)
For angur & wreþe he was nyȝ
wood
And þouȝte, yf þey weren a lyue,
þat þey wolden hym out dryue
Of þe kyngdom of Englund 285
And holden hyt in here oun
hond;
And þarfore hym was swythe
woo,
þat þe chyldryн were ascaped
soo,
But neuerles sire Fortiger
Comaundede bothe feer & nere 290
To duykes, erlys, baron & knyȝt,
To maken hem redy for to fyȝt,
Aȝens þe kyng of Denmark for
to fare,

259) was] all add. P. 260) *the P.
261) a. c.] accompackement P.
262) of] om. P. bar.] that were
add. P. 263) hight P. 264) a]
haue P. 265) For to P. 266) Swyþe
— heom] Fast about all they P.
268) neo m.] cold P. 270) at f.
om. P. waxed almost P. 271) f.
om. P. 273) neuer the lesse P.
274) com.] giue comandment P.
275) Boþe] om. P. to] *duke
*erle add. P. to] om. P. 276—86)
*Die anfänge dieser zeilen sind
abgerissen und hier in eckigen
klammern aus P ergänzt.*

279) þey] auf rasur geschr.
290) feer] r später nachgetr.

[And soone they] dyȝhte heom,
ywis
[With armes] and wiþ hors of
prys.

[And when they] weore al redy
dyȝt,
280 [Forsooth, it] was a semely syȝt,
[With helme] on hed and bryȝt
baner
[All went forth] wiþ sir Fortager.

[The king of] Denemarck wiþ
prydē
[Brought his] ost by his syde;
285 [Either host ca]n opir assayle,
[There might you seo stark
bataile,
Sweordes drawen and arwes
schoten, (f. 3^b)
Mony a quarel þoruzh þeo þrote.

þeo Englysch folk, for soþe
to say,
290 Fouȝhten so wel þat ilke day,
þat kyng Aungys in þat tyde
Was apon þeo worse syde
And fleyȝh awey, as he weore
wood,
Into a castel strong and good,
295 And mukil of his host al so,

þat wrouȝte in Englond so
moche care.
Anon þey dyȝtyn hem, ywys, 295
For to asayle þe Denmarkys,
Some on palfray & some on stede,
And many a man on foot ȝede.
And whanne þey weren al redy
dyȝt, (f. 9^a)
Hit was ryȝt a wel fayr syȝt, 300
Wiþ helm, basnet and baner,
þat wenten wiþ syre Fortyger.
King Amygys of Denmark wiþ
moche pride
Com wiþ his ost al by hys syde;
þar eyther other gonue asayle, 305
And þar bygan a gret batayle
Wiþ swerdys ydrawe & arwes
yschote,
And many a quarel þoruz þe
þrote;
Schafteſ tobroke & helmes bryȝt,
Islawe þar was many a knyȝt. 310
But þe englysch ost, soþ to say,
Fauȝt so wel þat same day,
þat many a bold Saracyne
In þat batayle hadde hys fyne.
Kyng Amygys of Denmark in 315
þat tyde
Sawȝ his men in þe worse syde
And fledde a wey, as he were
wood,
In to a castel, þat was strong
& good,

²⁷⁸⁾ horsses *P.* ²⁷⁹⁾ al] om.
P. ²⁸⁰⁾ is *P.* ²⁸²⁾ sir] om. *P.*
²⁸⁶⁾ stark] *a strong *P.* ²⁸⁷⁾ f.
om. *P.* ²⁸⁹⁾ folkes *P.* for] om. *P.*
²⁹⁰⁾ They f. *P.* ilke] om. *P.*
²⁹³⁾ *fledd *P.* ²⁹⁴⁾ strong] faire
P. ²⁹⁵⁾ manye *P.*

³⁰⁸⁾ a] ü. d. z. nachgetr.
³¹⁰⁾ Islawe] sla auf rasur geschr.

Faste awey þay gon to go;
And Fortager wiþ his rowte

Bysette þe castel al abowte;

And whan þay hadde longe
by leyn,

300 Kyng Aungys sent heom for
to seyn,

Zef he in pes passe most,
He wolde take al his ost
And wende to his owne contray,
And neuer after þat day

305 Wolde he passe þeo see stronde
Neo come to weorre in Engelonde;

And whan þis couenaunt was
al don,

þat þey neo wolde in Engelond
come,

Fortager tok his counsail

310 And let heom passe hol and
hayl.

Fortager þo tok his host
And went þennes wiþ gret bost

And heold feste many day

Wiþ mukil solas and wiþ play.

315 And whan þe feste was yholde,

296) þay—go] can they goe
P. 299) b. l.] laine P. 300) Kyng
A.] Vortiger (!) P. sent] to add.
P. 301) in] om. (!) P. 308) into
P. owne] om. P. 308) wold not
into P. 310) hol a. h.] cer-
taine (!) P. & soe they went
to the sea & passed to their
owne countrye add. P. 311) then
P. 312) wiþ] a add. P. 313) And]
He P. many] *a add. P. 314)
much salace (!) P. 315) was] all
add. P.

And Fortiger wiþ al his þouȝte
(f. 9 b)

Bysegede þat castel al abouȝte, 320
þar þe kyng of Denmark was
inne,
But he ne myȝt hym nouȝt wynne,
He hym bysegede mounȝthys ten,
But al was wast, he come
nouȝt in.

And whanne he hadde so long 325
byforn hym leyn,

Kyng Amygys of Denmark hym
sente to seyn,

If he in pes passe moste,
He wolde take al his oste
And wendyn hom to hys contray,
And neuer more after þat day 330
He nold passe þat stronde,
To maken werre in Englonde;

& þat he swor & hys men ylome,

þat þey nolden neuere in Eng-
land come;

þanne kyng Fortiger dede by 335
consayle

And leet hym passe hom, san
fayle.

And kyng Fortiger tok his ost
And wente hom wiþ moche bost
And held fest many a day
(f. 10 a)

340 Wiþ gret delyȝt & noblay.
And whanne þat fest was yhold,

319) forgiger (!) ms. 326)
hyn (!) ms. 328) wolden (!) ms.
331) stronde] r ü. d. z. nachgetr.

þat twolf barouns, þat ich of tolde,
þat hadde slawe Moyne þe kyng,
Byþouȝten heom of a wondur thyng,
þat þey wolde wende to Fortager
320 And aske him mede and heore lower,

And seiden: „Fortager, now þow art abowe,
þenk, what we dude for þy loue:
We slowe oure ryȝte kyng of kynde;
Now beo sene, ȝef þow beo hende:
325 For we brouȝte þe in þy power,
ȝeld vs oure mede and oure lower!“
Kyng Fortager onswerde ageyn
Wiþ egre mod and gan to seyn:
„By þe lower, þat god made,
330 Ze schal haue as ȝe bade,

For ȝe arn traytours stronge
And han slayn ȝoure kyng wiþ wronge,
And ȝef y may, so mot y theo,
Ze neo schal nouȝt so serue me!

The twelf barons, þat y of ferst told,
þathadde yslawe Moyne þe kyng,
Byþouȝten hem on a wonder þyng,
And þat þey wolden wenden 345 to kyng Fortiger
And asken of hym here lowere.

To Fortyger anon þey wente
And hym gretten wiþ goud entente
And seyden: „Syre kyng, now þu art aboue,
þenk, what we han don for þy 350 loue,
How we slowen oure kyng of kende;
Now lat vs see, yf þu art hende:

For we han brouȝt þe at þy powere,
ȝeld vs, syre kyng, now oure lowers!“
Kyng Fortiger answerde azen 355
(P. p. 150)
And wiþ egremod gan to seyn:
„By hym, þat þis wordl haþ mad,
Ze Schul haue ryȝt as ȝe bad;
(f. 10 b)
For ȝe beþ treytouris stronghe,
Ze slowe Moyne, ȝoure kynge, 360
al wiþ wronghe,
And ȝyf y may, so mot y þe,
So Schul ȝe neuere me!

³¹⁶⁾ *The P. ich] *erst add. P.
³¹⁸⁾ They b. P. wonderous P.
³²⁰⁾ h. l.] liverr P. ³²¹⁾ þow art]
you bee P. ³²²⁾ þenk—dude]
Now yeelde vs meede P. ³²³⁾
of] by P. ³²⁴⁾ beo s.] will wee
*see P. ³²⁵⁾ in [þy p.] to thine
aboue P. ³²⁶⁾ Thinke, what
wee did for your loue P. ³²⁸⁾
and gan to] he can P. ³²⁹⁾
law P. ³³¹⁾ trayt.] starke &
add. P. ³³³⁾ f. om. P.

³⁴³⁾ yslawe] sl auf rasur
geschr. ³⁵⁰⁾ þy] þ corr. aus l.

- 335 For þe han wrouȝt aȝeyn þeo
lawe,
Ze Schul beon hongyd and
todrawe![“]
He dude take horses sket
And trayed heom to heore
feet,
& then drew them on a pauement
(P p. 150)
- 340 & sithen hanged them, vera-
ment.
Then many an erle & barron
hynde,
That were of the barrons kinde,
To Vortiger they ran anon,

As his most deadlye fone;
345 Hard on him can they fight,

For to slay him they thought
right.
Vortiger with might & maine,
He with his host went them
againe;
A strong battell there was
dight
350 & many a head ther of smitt,
- Soe that Vortiger that day
Was glad for to scape away.
Anon the barrons send their
sonde
Wyde ouer all England
355 To all their freinds, sibb &
couthe,
East, west, north & southe,

& told them that sooth tyde,
How Vortiger with great des-
pighite,
With great treason & with
wrong
360 Their kinred had drawnen &
honge.
- But, for þe dedyn aȝens þe lawe,
Ze Schul be hongyd and
todrawe![“]
Anon he let taken hors ful gret 365
And tyde traye to þe barons
feet
And leet hem todrawe on þe
pauement
And after anhonghe hem,
verrement.
Many erlys & barons hende

Weren of þo barons kende; 370
Vpon kyng Fortiger þei renne
anon,
Ryȝt as to here dedlych foon,
And hard on hym þei gonue
to fyȝt,
To sleyn hym, yf þey myȝt.

But Fortiger wiȝt myȝt & mayn 375
Wiȝt his ost fauȝt hem agayn,

And many a man deyde þar,
aplyȝt, (f. 11^a)
Bothe barons, squieris & also
knyȝt,
And Fortigers þat same day
Vnnethe a lyue skapede a way. 380
Erlys & barons þanne senten
here sondes
Ouer al in to dyuers londes
To alle þe frendes, þat þey
couthe,
Boþe eyst & west, norþe &
southe,
And tolde hem alle al so tyde, 385
How kyng Fortiger wiȝt gret
dispide
Hadde wiȝt treson & al wiȝt
wronghe
Here frendes todrawe & anhonghe:

335) For] & P. against P. 336) &
therfore yee shall both hang &
draw P. 337) feete P. 338) trayseyd
(!) L; tyed P. 346) the P.

366) traye] c corr. aus? 371)
þenne ms. 378) knyȝt] knȝt (!)
ms. 384) eyst] e ü. d. z. nachgetr.

Wrath then was many a man,
& al together swarren then,
That they wold not assunder
breake,
Till they were on him wreake.

365 Euerye man on other besought,
A great host on him they brought
& foughten with sir Vortiger
9 monthes of this yeere,
That many a lady fayre & free
370 Lost her lord & her meanye.
Then the warr endured long,
& the barrons waxed strong,
That Vortiger had not power,
Against them longer to endure.

375 Messengers anon hee tooke
And made them sworne vpon
a booke,
That they shold his arrand gone,
& letters he tooke to them anon
& sent them ouer the seas iwis

380 To Denmarke vnto king Anguis,
& *that* hee shold come att neede
With all the power, *that* he might lead,
Against his foemen for to fight,

„And so,“ þei seyden, „he wold vs eke,
þarfore on hym we wol ben 390 awreke!“
Euerych man þanne þus oþer bysouȝt,
And a gret ost ouer þanne þe brouȝt,
Many an erl & many a knyȝt,
þat egre weren of mood & strong on fyȝt.
þey fouȝten harde aȝens Fortyger 395
(f. 11^b)
Many mounthys of the ȝer,
So that many a lady bothe hende & fre
Loste hure lord & hure maigne.
þus þat werre laste ful longe
By twyxen þe kyng & þe 400 barons styfe & strong;
Fortiger þat sawȝ ful ryȝt,
þat he ne myȝte duren þat fyȝt,
For þe barons folk gan wexen ay
And þe kynges weren distroyd eche day.
The kyng messageres anon took 405
And made hem swerye vpon a book,
þat þey schulden in his arende gon,
And þanne letteris he took hem anon
And sente hem ouer þe see,
ywys,
To þe kyng of Denmark, sire 410 Amygis,
And bad hym helpe hym at nede
Wiþ al hys ost, þat he myȝte out lede,
Aȝens his fomen for to fyȝte,
(f. 12^a)

³⁹¹) man] danach þan, ausgestr. und unterpunktet. [þanne] auf rasur geschr. ³⁹³) a] ü. d. z. nachgctr.

That wold deprive him of his
right.

385 Then was *king* Anguis blythe
& messengers hee sent swithe
To duke, erle, barron & *knight*
& to all, that weapon beare
micht.
Then to shipp they went
blithe
390 And ouer the sea can they
driue. (p. 151)

& when they came to Vortiger,
He welcomed them with merry
cheere

395 & seized there into his hands
Halfe the realme of England,
That he had or haue micht,
For to helpe him in his right.
When this couenant was made
fast,
All they dighten them in hast,

400 Into battelle for to wend
With the barrons, that were
hende.
Besids Salsbury a lyte,
There the battell can they
smite.

402) the *P.*

And þat he come wiþ gret myȝte.
Fourþ þanne wente þe messengeris 415
per
And dedyn þe hestys of syre
Fortigere,
And þar of þe kyng of Den-
mark was blythe
And messagerys he sente swythe
To douk, erl, baron & knyȝt
And to alle, þat wepen berȝ 420
myȝt.
And in to schepe þei wenten
blyþe,
And ouer þe see þey comen
swythe.
The schepis aryueden on þe
stronde
At Southe-Hamptone in Eng-
londe
And comyn to Wynchestre wel 425
a fyn
Wiþ many a stouȝt Saracyn,
And þar he fond kyng Fortiger,
And he hem welcomede wiþ
fayr cher;
Of here comnaunt he was
byknawe,
And he made kyng Amygis 430
hys felawe
And hym sesede on þe hond
Wiþ aluandel Englond,
Of þat he hadde & haue myȝt,
Wiþ þat he hulpe hym to fyȝt.
And whanne here comnaunt was 435
made fast, (f. 12 b)
þey raydyn hem þanne to in
hast,
In to þat batayle for to wende
Azens þe barons, þat weren ful
hende.
By syden Saresbury a lite
Here batayle to gederys þey 440
gonne smyte,

419) — 422) mit verweisungs-
zeichen am rande der seite nach-
getr. 430) kyng] auf rasur ge-
schr. 436) hem] danach to,
ausgestr. hast] fast ms.

Many a bold champion,
405 & many a 1000 in that stonde
Were slaine & brought to ground.

Many a ladye & damsell
Can weepe *that day* with teares
fell.
Then had Vortiger 10

410 Against one of the barrons men ;

Discomfitted they were *that day*,
With great sorrow they fled away;
& Vortiger, *that* wold not spare,
But hunted them, as hound doth
hare,
415 Them, *that* he did ouertake,
Noe other peace did he make,
But did them all todraw &
hang,
But sithen all *that* was wrong;

Many a baron hynde & free
420 Fled out of his owne countreye

& dwelled out many a yeere,
For loue of *sir* Vortiger.
Then Vortiger ceazed into his
hands

And þar was sone layd adown
Many a fayr gamfanoun,
Schaftes tobroke & schyldys
torent
And many a spere þoruz sydes
went,
And manye a þousand in a 415
stounde
Lay doun ded to þe grounde.

þar men myȝt see anon
Many a dowȝty man slon,
And þe hefd from þe body lay,
A delful syȝt was þat day. 450

þar hadde kyng Fortiger euer
more ten
Azens on of þe barons men,
Wharforo þe barons ne myȝt
(f. 13 a)
Holden no lengore azens hem
fyȝt,
So þat þe barons on þat day 455
Al wiȝ sorwe fledden a way;
And Fortiger nold nouȝt spare,
But on hem leyd & woundyd
hem sare,
And al, þat he myȝte ouertake,
Non oþer pes ne most þey make, 460
But leet hem todrawe & an-
honghe,
But, certayn, hit was al wiȝ
wronghe;
And many a baron hende & ire
Fledde out of his contre,
And also many of Englond 465
Fledden in to diuers londe
And wonede þar many a ȝer
For drede of syre Fortiger;
And whanne þey weren flow
out of lond,

403) in 1° übersprungen.

444) Amany (!) ms. 448) dowȝty]
ȝ. ü. d. z. geschr. man] to add.
ms. 451) Fortige (!) ms. 458) hem]
ü. d. z. nachgetr. 459 on take
(!) ms.

The lands & rents of all the
barrons,
425 & both wiffe, chyld & swaine
He droue out of the lannd,
certaine.

Fortyger seysyde on his honde 470
Londes, rentes, wode & feld,
(f. 13 b)
And drof a way bothe wyf &
chyld;
bat by consayle of kyng Amygis
He ȝaf hit to Saracyns of gret
prys.

King Anguis had, verament,
A daughter, that was faire &
gent,
That was heathen Sarazen;
430 & Vortiger for loue fine
Vndertooke her for his wiffe
& liued in cursing all his liffe,
For he did make the christen
men
To marry the heathen women,

The kyng of Denmark, verre- 475
ment,
Hadde a dowter fayr & gent,
And ȝhe was an hethen womman,
And Fortiger hure to lony bigan,
So bat he wold han hure to
wyf,
And þe kynges acorded weren 480
ful blyue.
Fortiger was a criston man
And ȝhe a hethen womman,
And so here blood was medlyd
yfere,
Of Crist no more kepte þey here,
So bat almost al Englond 485
Was turned in to hethene hond,
What þoruz þe kende of þe
kynges blood
And þoruz þe blood of þe
heþene mood;
For Morlyn seide in his book,
(f. 14 a)
bat many a þousand other took, 490
As fader wiþ þe dowter
And sone wiþ þe modyr,
And helden no betere Cristes
lawes,
þan houndes doþ wiþ here
felawes;
In wey ne street sparde þei 495
nouȝt,
No more þan houndes, þat buþ
to gederis brouȝt,

389)—436) ist in L verloren;
hier ergänzt nach P.

470) seysyde] sy ü. d. z.
nachgetr. 480) fu(!) ms. 483)
blood] ü. d. z. nachgetr.

þus þey lyuede mony a zer,
(L f. 14^a)
So on a day sire Fortager
Byþouȝte him of þeo childre
two,
440 þatowt of londe weore flemed þo,

And al so he byþouȝte him þan
Of mony anopir douȝty man,
þat he hadde flemed out of
þeo land,
And in his heorte gan vndur-
stond,
445 þat hit was a sory hap,

And doubted him of after-clap.

Anon he sente messangeris
Ouer al his lond for carpenters
And for gode masons al so,
450 þeo beste, þat weoren in
londe þo.
Mony þousand þer cam anon,
þat wel couþe worche lym and
stone;
And whan þey weore comen
all,
þe kyng anon to heom gon call

And so þei leueden many a
zer,
Tyl on a day syre Fortiger,
Byþouȝt hym of the chyldren
two,
þat out of lond ascapeden so, 500
Pendragon and Vter,
þat out of Englond yfleed wera;
And also he byþouȝte hym þan
Of many an oþer douȝty man,
þat he hadde flemed out of 505
Englond,
In his herte de bygan hit to
vnderstond,
So þat hit was a sory happe,
(f. 14^b)
And he was agast of after-
clappe;
He þouȝte, yf þey euere comen
azan,
þat al Englond wold be ful fayn, 510
Hym to schynde & to slon:
He þouȝt, hyt schulde an oþer
gon.
He sente anon hys messangeris
Ouer al Englond for carpentrys
And after many a mason also, 515
For þe beest, þat in Englond
were þo,
And manye a þousand þar com
anon,
þat cowden legge boþe lym &
ston;
And whanne þei weren comen
alle,
Anon þe kyng leet hem calle 520
And seyde: „Lordynges hende
& fre,

437) *& thus P. 439) of] on P.
ch.] danach þo, ausgestr. und ver-
klext. 440) of] the add. P. fledden
443) land] so P; verl. in L. 446)
P. of] an add. P. 448) his] the P.
carp.] so P; rs verl. in L. 450) þo]
thoe P; verl. in L. 451) Mony] *a
add.P. 452) wel] om. P. & stone P;
bis auf an verl. in L. 453) all]
so P; bis auf a verl. in L. 454)
call] so P; cal erh. in L.

500) asc.] a ü. d. z. nachgetr.
511) slon] o corr. aus e? 519)
whanne] ü. d. z. nachgetr.

455 And seide: „Lordynges, y am
byþouȝt,
A castel y wol haue ywrouȝt
Of strong tymber, lym and
ston,
þat such anoþir beo nowher
non,
For my men, þat arn olyue,
460 þat y can out of londe dryue;
Zef y euere haue nede,
My lif þer yn y may lede:
þat castel ze schal make mury
Vp on þe pleyn of Salesbury:
465 Goþ and dop als y ow bad,
þat hit beo trusty and wel ymad,
And ze schule haue to ȝoure
huyre
Al so mukil as ze wol desyre.“
þeo werkmen wente forþ þo,
470 Fyftene þousand and wel mo,
Heowen tymber, coruen ston
And leiden a fondement anon;

Somme leyde and somme bere,
Somme þat werk gonne arere.

475 þat seolue day, wiþ owte doute,
Breost-hyȝh hit was abowte;

Herkneþ alle now to me,
In myn herte ych haue a þouȝt:
A strong castel y wele haue
wrouȝt
Of strong tymber & lym & 525
ston, (f. 15^a)
þat swych an oþer be nawher
non,
For myn fomen, þat buþ alyue,
þat ych of lond gan out dryue,
þat, yf nede euer come to me,
þat þar ynne saf ych may be : 530
þat castel schal stand ful mury
Vppon þe playn of Saresbury:
Dop now swythe as y ȝow bad,
þat my castel were ymad,
And ze haue schul youre hure 535

Ryȝt as ze wollyþ desyre.“
þe werkmen wenten forþ þo,
Fyf þousand & wel many mo,
For to hewe & for to bere ston,
And some, for to leggen þe 540
fundament anon;
Some drowe & some bere,
þey weren fulslyȝ, þat þere were;
So þat werk was reryd an hyȝ
(f. 15^b)
Of þo men, þat were so slye.
The furst day, wiþ oute douȝte, 545
Gurdyl-stede heyȝ hit was
abowte;

⁴⁵⁵⁾ b.] ouȝt verl. in L; *haue
*thought P. ⁴⁵⁶⁾ A *strong castle
to be wrought P. ⁴⁵⁷⁾ str.]
bigge P. ⁴⁵⁹⁾ f. om. P. ⁴⁶¹⁾
euer I P. haue] any add. P.
⁴⁶²⁾ yn] that add. P. ⁴⁶³⁾ The
P. surlye P. ⁴⁶⁶⁾ surlye P. ⁴⁶⁸⁾
As much P. shall P. ⁴⁷⁰⁾ wel]
yett F. ⁴⁷¹⁾ caruing P. ⁴⁷²⁾
fond.] foundation there P. ⁴⁷³⁾
bore P. ⁴⁷⁴⁾ & some can the
worke arreare P. ⁴⁷⁵⁾ ilke P.
wiþ o. d.] round about P.
⁴⁷⁶⁾ Itt was br. P. ab.] without
doubt P.

⁵²⁶⁾ nawher] h corr. aus?
⁵³⁰⁾ ynne ii. d. z. nachgetr.

When hit was come to þe nyȝt,
 To heore bed heo wente aryȝt
 And come aȝeyn apon þe morwe
 480 And fonde þyng of mukil sorwe;
 Al heore fondement heo founde
 Lyggand abrod apon þeo
 grounde,
 And al totorn lym and ston:
 Gret wondur þey hadden vchon.
 485 Beter red neo couþe þey non,
 Bote to bygynne a neowe anon,
 And speddyn al so wel, for
 soþe to say,
 Als þey dude þeo furste day,
 Fro morwe til hit was nyȝt,
 490 And al so swype as þey myȝt.
 And whan þe euenyng was
 come,
 To reste wente alle and somme.
 On morwe þey cam aȝeyn anon
 [& found it] cast boþe lym
 and ston (f. 14^b)
 495 [& was spr]ad boþe here and
 þer,
 [& thus they] ferdyn half a ȝer.

And whanne hit was come to
 nyȝt,
 To her[es] bed þey wenten a ryȝt
 And come aȝen on þe morowe
 And founde þyng of moche 550
 sorwe,
 And al her[es] werk þar þey
 founde
 Al tosprad vppon þe grounde,
 And al totorn lym & ston:
 Gretwounders þey hadden echon.
 Other reede þanne cowde no 555
 man,
 But a newe werk þey byganne
 And spedden also ryȝt þat
 oþer day,
 Ryȝt as þe ferst, þe soþ to say.

And whanne þe day was al agon,
 To bedden þey wenten euer- 560
 ychon,
 And come aȝen vppon þe morn
 (f. 16^a)
 And founden here werk al
 totorn
 And lay tosprad her[es] & þer[es];
 An so hit ferde half a ȝere;

⁴⁷⁷⁾ *When] *so* P; *om.* L.
 was c.] came P. wright (!) P. ⁴⁸⁰⁾
 fonde] a add. P. *much P. ⁴⁸¹⁾
 Al—heo] For all the fondation
 the P. ⁴⁸⁸⁾ tot.] both add. P.
⁴⁸⁴⁾ The had great wonder
 euerye one P. ⁴⁸⁶⁾ neo] *then
 P. ⁴⁸⁶⁾ to byg. a] *began it
 F. an.] againe P. ⁴⁸⁷⁾ al so]
 as P. for] *the P. ⁴⁸⁹⁾ f. *om.* P.
⁴⁹²⁾ The went to *bedd all
 soone P. ⁴⁹⁸⁾ aȝeyn] *om.* P.
 Von hier ab bis v. ⁵²⁹⁾ sind in
 L. nur die zweiten hälften resp.
 schlüsse der verse erhalten; die
 ergänzungen sind nach P gegeben.
⁴⁹⁴⁾ boþe] downe P. ⁴⁹⁵⁾ þer]
 thee (!) P. ⁴⁹⁶⁾ faren P.

⁵⁵⁵⁾ gowde (!) *ms.* ⁵⁵⁷⁾ ryȝt]
 as add. *ms.* ⁵⁶⁸⁾ lay ü. d. z.
 nachgetr.

[When the *king* heard] of þis,
[Great wonder he] hadde, ywis,
& oft asked both] ȝonge and
olde,
500 it myzte beo holde
& why the work] e myȝhte
noȝt stonde.
[There was none] in al þat
londe.
[Highe nor lowe], lewed no
clerk,
[That cold tell hi]m of þat werk.

505 [King Vortiger sate], in his halle
[Amongst his barrons &] knyȝthes
alle

[& sware, he wold] neuer spare,
[Vntill he wist, why] hit ware;
510 [& anon he sent his]e sonde
Ouer al England]e
[Aster clerkes old] and ȝyng,
[That cold tell hi]m of wondur
thyng.

[The messengers] forþ went

500) nicht ergänzbar durch P:
& of the wonder wold be told.
502) in al] . . . 1 L; within P.
the P. 503) lewed] . . . wed L;
learned P. nor P. 504) the P.
506) his] so P; ich las noch e
vor sonde in L. 511) younges (.)!
P. 512) of w.] wonderous things
D. 513) mess.] so P; ich las ion
vor forþ in L.

Al þat euere þey wrouȝtyn a 565
day,
A morowe tosprad hit lay.
And whanne þe kyng hurde þis,
Gret wounder he hadde, ywys,
And askede bothe of ȝong &
olde,
Why hys werk stonde nolde; 570

But þar nas noþer lewed ne clerk,
þat wyste, why nolde stonde þat
werk.

Kyng Fortiger sat in his halle
And seide amongys his barons
alle:
„Supthe ych was man yborn here, 575
Of swyche a cas ne hurdy
neuere ere,
As of my werk now ys yfounde,
þat euerych nyȝt ys yfeld to
grounde.“
And he swor, he nold no lengore
spare,
Til he wyst, why hit ware. 580
(f. 16 b)
Messageres anon he sent
Ouer al Englond, verrement,
To wyse clerkes old & ȝong,
þat cowden telle of wondryng,

For to come to hym anon, 585
As þey nolde to dethe gon.

581) Mess.] danach he sent,
unterpunktet. 583) Am rande ist
mit kleinerer schrift Amen beige-
fügt.

- [And did the k]ynges comaun-
dement,
515 [Many a wise cler]k þey sowȝt,
[Before the ki]ng alle weore
brouȝt;
[King Vortiger] aposed heom
alle,
[Why his worke] was so doun
falle;
[But there was no] mon, þat
couȝe him telle.
520 [Then he sw]are, he wolde hem
quelle,
[But if they wo]lde seyȝe in
hast,
[Why this wo]rk was so doun
cast.
[10 mast]res he lette take anon,
[The wisest] of heom euerychon,
525 [Into a chambre þey weore do,
[That no] mon myȝhte come
heom to,
- [þat] heo hadde socour of no
thyng,
[Bot]e vnneþes mete and dryng.
[S]o on a day, verrament,
530 þay lokid in to þeo firmament,
And vndur þeo weolkyn þey
sawe a sky,
- 516) king] they add. P. 517)
opposed them P. 518) was so] *did
P. 519) no m.] *none P. 520) hem]
*them P; him (!) L. 522) so] om.
P. 523) lette t.] tooke P. 527)
f. om. P. 529) on a] one (!) P.
531) þey s.] their shewed P.
- And whanne þey weren bi fore
hym brouȝt,
Al þat weren so wyde ysouȝt,
Kyng Fortiger askede of hem
alle,
Why hys werk dude so doun 590
falle;
But þar was non, þat cowde
telle.
þe kyng swor hys oþ, he wold
hem quelle,
But yf þey wolden tellen in
hast,
Why his werk was so doun cast.
- Ten maistres he leet take anon, 595
The best clerkys of hem echon,
And in his preson he dude
hem þo,
þat no man myȝt come hem to;
(f. 17a)
And þe kyng swor hys oþ by
seynt John,
þat þey schulden neuere þens 600
gon,
Tyl þat þey weren biknowe,
Why his werk was doun þrowe.
Astronymyanes alle þei weren,
þe wyldest men, þat leueden þere;
In þat preson þey weren adyȝt, 605
Neyne dayes & neyne nyȝt,
þat no socur þey hadde of no
þyng,
But vnnethe mete & dryng.
So vpon a day, verrement,
þey lokedyn on þe fyrment, 610
And vnder þe walkene þey sayn
a sky,
- 595) toke (!) ms. 598) hem]
mit blasserer tinte ü. d. z. nach-
gebr. 604) þat] in lond add. ms.
þere] om. ms.

þat schewed heom witerly,
þat fyue wynter þer by fore
A knaue child þer was ybore,
535 Byzeten wiþ owtyn ony monnes
mon;
And ȝef þey hadde þat child
anon
And slowe him, hastely þan,
Er he speke to any man,
And smeored þeo werk wiþ
his blod,
540 penne schulde hit worthe
stark and god.
þus þeo sky schewed heom þere
And passed awey wiþ owte
more.
þan weore þeo clerkes glad and
blyþe
And come to Fortager al swyþe

545 And tolde him, wiþ owte les,
A knawe child bore þer was
All wiþ owten monnes streone,
And þey seiden al by dene
& seyd: „Do *seke* þat child,

þat schewede hem ful wytterly,
þat vyf zer þar by forn
In Englund was a child yborn
And bygetyn wiþ out mannes 615
mone;
And if þey myzt þat chyld
haue one
And sleyn hit hastily þan, (f. 17^b)
Er hit speke wiþ eny man,
And tempre þe morter wiþ his
blood,
þe castel schuld be strong & 620
good.
þus þat sky schewed hem þo
And wente azen þer he com fro.
Janne weren tho clerkys blyþ
And gradden to kyng F. ful
swyth
And prayden, to leten hem 625
out in hast:
„We knowyþ, „þey seiden, „why
þy werk ys doun cast!“
The kyng leet þe dore vndo
And comaundede þe maystyrs
to comen hym to.
þey seiden: „Syre kyng, wiþ
outen les,
A child in Englund yborn is 630
And byghete wiþ outen mannes
mone.“
The clerkys seiden þus echone:
„Syre, sechep after þat same
chyld (f. 18^a)

⁵³³⁾ þat] in add. P. winters P.
⁵³⁵⁾ Begotten without any man
P. ⁵³⁶⁾ anon] then P. ⁵³⁷⁾ sley
P. ⁵³⁸⁾ spoke P. ⁵³⁹⁾ smeere P.
⁵⁴⁰⁾ hit w. st.] that worke be sure
P. ⁵⁴⁴⁾ al sw.] sithe (!) P. ⁵⁴⁶⁾ Of
a P. bore þ. w.] that was gotten
iwiſ P. ⁵⁴⁷⁾ All] durch einen
riss im pergamente zerstrt in L.
Without seede of any man P.
⁵⁴⁸⁾ And] sehr zweifelhaft in L;
Thus P. al b. d.] euerye *one P.
⁵⁴⁹⁾ & s.] om. P. *seke*] schwer
lesbar in L; send & feitch P.

⁶¹⁶⁾ if] ii. d. z. nachgetr. ⁶¹⁹⁾
þe] mit blaesserer tinte ii. d. z.
nachgetr. ⁶²²⁾ þer] ausgestr. und
he übergeschr. he] þey ms. ⁶²⁴⁾
F.] om. (!) ms. ⁶²⁸⁾ maystyrs]
yr aus ry corr. oder umgekehrt.
⁶³³⁾ schycheþ (!) ms. In f. 17^b
steht die schrift vielfach auf rasur.

- 550 Wheþer he beo in towne or feld,
And doþ him sle hastely
(f. 15 a)
And tak þeo blod of his body
And smeore þy werk abowte
þer wiþ,
And hit schal stonde euer in
gryþ!"
555 Blíþe and glad was Fortagers,
He lette clepe twolf messangeres
And lette departen heom, so
mote y theo,
þat non neo scholde wiþ oþir
beo.
He sente heom forþ vp on his
sonde
560 On foure half of Engelonde
And comaunded, þat þey neo
stynt nouȝt,
Til he weore to fore him brouȝt.
Anon þeo messangeres forþ
went
And duden þeo kynges comaun-
dement;
565 And sir Fortager þeo bolde
Comaunded þeo clerkes to beo
holde,
Til þeo messangeres comen
azeyn,
To wite, what þey wolde seyn,
And swar by Jhesu, heouene
kyng,
570 Zef þey lowen any lesyng,
- Boþe in town & in feld, (f. 18 a)
And quelliþ hit hastyly 626
And takyþ þe blood of his body
And leet wasch þar wiþ zoure
werk,
And hit schal be goud & eke
sterk."
Blyþe & glad þanne was For-
tiger
And clepede to hym hys massager 640
And leet hem depaþy in þre
& þre,
So þat non schuld wiþ oþer be,
And sente fourþ so his sonde
In to foure halues of Englonde
And bad, þei schuld stynte 645
nouȝt,
Er þey þat child hadden ybrouȝt.
The messagerys, foruþ þey wente,
To don þe kynges comaun-
demente;
And ȝut syre Fortiger þe bold
Leet do þe clerkys in to hold, 650
Tyl þe massageres comen aȝen
as tyde, (f. 18 b)
To weten, yf hit were soþ, þat
þey han seyde;
And if hit be eny lesyng,
He swhor bi Jesu heuene kyng,

550) Wheþer] heþe fast unlesbar
in L. 552) the P. ab. þ. w.] rond
about P. 554) euer in g.] without
doubt P. 555) Glad & blithe P.
556) He l. c.] * & called *to *him
P. 557) heom so m.] mit dunklerer
tinte auf rasur geschr. in L. 557)
f.: & parted them in veritye, That
neuer a one might other see P.
560) Vnto P. parts P. 561) neo] om.
P. 562) he] so P; þey (!) L. to f.]
befor P. 566) Caused P. 567) came
P. 570) lowen] made P.

643) so] s verklext. 649) for-
giger (!) ms.

No raunson scholde for heom
gon,
þat þey neo scholde dyȝe
euerychon.

Now lete we þis maistres beon
And of þis clerkes al by dene,

575 And telle of þis messangeres,
þat wenten fro sire Fortageres,
For to seke þeo child so ȝyng,
And ȝe schal here a wondur
thyng:
Zef ȝe wolon a stounde dwelle,
580 Of þat child y wol ȝow telle,

On what manere þe messangeres
Brouȝte him to sire Fortageres,
And what he hyȝhte, wiþ owte
les,
And of what kynde þat he was,
585 þat ȝe schule vndurstonde and
wite,
þoruz what skile he was byzete.

Dauid þeo profete and Moyses
Witnesseþ and seiþ, how hit
wes:
þo god hadde mad þoruz his
myȝt
590 Heouene ful of aungelis bryȝt,

572) But P. neo] om. P. 573)
f. om. P. 575) Now let vs tell
P. 576) from P. 578) wonderous
P. 579) & if P. 580) shall P.
581) messenger P. 582) Vortiger
P. 584) þat] om. P. is P. 585)
may P. 586) gett P. 589) That P.

þat no raunsom schuld for hem 655
gon,
þey schuld be anhang & todrawe
echon.
Now lete we be þuse clerkys
styllle
And speke we of þe kynges
massageres so snelle!

Lestneþ, lordyngis, wiþ goud
entent,
And ȝe schul here, þe massa- 660
geres buþ went,
To sechen after Merlyn, þat ys
so ȝyng,
Lestneþ & ȝe schul here a
wonder ȝyng:
If ȝe wollep a while dwelle,
Of chyld Merlyn y wyl ȝow
telle,
Al how þe massageres 665
Brouȝtyn hym to syre Fortigeris,
And of what kende þat he was,
(f. 19 a)
I welle ȝow tellen al þat cas;
And also ȝe schullyþ ful wel
ywete,
For what cause & how he was 670
byghete,
And also, what þat child heet,
I schal ȝow telle also skeet:
Alle, þat holdeþ now stille hure
steuene,
Cryst graunte hem þe blisse of
heuene!
Dauyd þe prophete & Moyses 675
þys wytnessyþ, and soþ hyt ys:

Whanne Cryst hadde made
þoruz hys myȝt
Heuene ful of angelis bryȝt,

658) of] ü. d. z. nachgetr. 676)
hys(!) ms. 677) þourȝ] þouȝt(!) ms.

þeo fairhod, þat þey hadde þan,
Nis no tonge, þat telle kan,
Til Lucifer hit forgult wiþ pryd,
Alle, þat heold wiþ him þat
tyde;
595 Such veniaunce god on heom
gon take,
þat þey arn now feondes blake
And, as y fynde in holy wryt,
þey felle fro heouene to helle
put
Sixe daizes and seoue nyȝt,
600 As þikke as hayl in þondur lyȝt.

And when þay weore ut of
heouene,
Oure lord seide wiþ mylde
steuene
And heouene lowked aȝeyn ful
stille,
Als hit was his owne wille.

The nomber, þat þare was þanne,
Noman for sop telle can; 680
þanne Lucifer agulte in þat tyde
And alle, þat helden wiþ hym
in pride;
Crist on hym vengeance gan
take, (f. 19 b)
So þat alle þey bycomen deueles
blake
And fylle adoun in to helle 685
pyȝt;
þus holy wryȝt wetnessyþ hyt.

The tenþe ordre & no mo
Oute of heuene fyllen þo,
And whanne ynowe were out
of heuene,
Oure lord þanne wiþ mylde 690
steuene
Heuene schette anon ful wel,

As hit was hys swete wyl.
And of þe fendes in þat tyde,
þat fillen fro heuene for here
pryde,
As þe book dop vs telle, 695
Many þar fillen adoun to helle,
And some þare lefsten ellys
whare,
Man to brynghe in moche care,
And some in þe eorthe haue
here wonying,
And some in þe eyr, wiþ oute 700
lesyng,
And some in water & some in
londe (f. 20 a)

591) fairh.] ioy P. 592) *Forsooth P. þat] om. P. 593) hit f. w.] with guilt of P. 594) *& all P. 595) as] om. P. 596) from P. 597) nights P. 600) lights P. 601) when] mit späterer hand ü. d. z. nachgetr. 601) f. om. P. 608) f.: & when it was our ladyes will, Heauen closed againe full still P.

699) haue] & ausgestr. und haue übergeschr. 701) some in l.] some in u. d. z. geschr.

605 Feole of þe feondes, þat y tolde er,
Felleon out of heouene wiþ Lucifer.
þo, þat wonen in þe eyr an hyȝh,
Felle þey beon, stronge and slyȝh
And of þeo eyr takeþ heore lyȝt (f. 15^b)
610 And han heore streynthe and heore myȝt,
After mon to make heom body,
Fair of colour and rody,
Dessenden doun among mon kynne,
To tyse men to dedly synne.
615 Alle þey wiste wel by fore,

And some amonges vs gonne wiþstonde.
Crist seyde to hem þo,
þat so þey schulle byleuyn hedyr to,
& so þey beþ, as y ȝow say, 705
And schulleþ be in to domes day.
þanne made Crist after hys wylle
Man-kende, þat place to fulfylle;
Ferst he made Adam, ywys,
And brouȝte hym into paradys, 710
And Eue god made also,
For to lybbe in joye for euermo.
Alle ze herde tellen her by forn,
How Adam & Eue were forlorn:
No more of Adam now y nelle, 715
But of child Merlyn y wyl ȝow telle.
Manye of þe fendes, hit telleþ here,
þat fillen from heuene wiþ Lucifer,
And þey, þat dwellip on þe eyr an hyȝh, (f. 20^b)
Wel queynte þei buþ & al so 720 slyȝh,
And of þe eorthe þei mowen take lyȝt,
And þey han bothe strengthe & myȝt,
After man to schapen here body,
Fayr & gentel & also rody,
And to lyȝten adoun amonges 725 man kynnne
And to tempten hem, to don synne.
Ful wel þei wysten here by forn,

605) Feole of] om. P. tolde] of add. P. 607) Those P. bidden on P. haight P. 608) sleight P. 609) And] om. P. þeo] they P. eyr] *the add. P. their P. 610) heore] great P. heore] om. P. 611) him L.; a P. 618) Discending P. mankind P.

705) &] corr. aus? 716) ȝow] u. d. z. nachgetr.

þat Jhesus was of Marie bore;
þer to þeo feondes hadden
onde
And seide, þat þey wolde
fonde,
To neyȝhe in eorþe a maide
mylde
620 And byȝete on hire a childe,
Such a child, þey seide þo,
þat schal worþe þeo world
ful wo
And acombe al so feole,
Als Jhesus had brouȝt in to
weole.

625 þus þey wende þeo world
afyled,

þat Jesus was of Mary born
And sethen deide vpon þe rood
And vs bouȝt wiȝ his blood. 730
þarto þe fendes hadde envye
& onde;
þan seide a fend, þat he wold
fonde,
To lyggen by a mayden mylde
And on hure bygheten a chyld,
Swych a child, he seide þo, 735
þat al cristandom schal vndo;

Al þat Crist brouȝt, vs hys to
werch, (f. 21a)
He schal hit vndo & al so
holy church.
"As Crist was born of a mayde,
Al man kende to sauuen," þe 740
feend seyde,
"And was conseuyed by the
holy gost,
For mannes soule ne schuld
be lost,
And in eorth was yborn,
For man kende schuld nouȝt
be forlorn,
So schal my chyld be born, 745
wiȝ outer les,
Of a womman, þat ich wele
ches,
And of me yghete schal be,
þat al þis wordl schal make
vnfre;
Al, þat Crist makede in heuene
to dwelle,
My sone schal turnen hem to 750
helle."
þus þe feend þouȝt to han
schenþ vs alle,

⁶¹⁶⁾ was of] wold on P.
Marie] be add. P. ⁶¹⁷⁾ *enuye
P. ⁶¹⁸⁾ þat—fonde] to the
earth the wolden hye P. ⁶¹⁹⁾
on P. ⁶²¹⁾—⁶²⁴⁾ om. P. ⁶²⁵⁾
world] *to *haue add. P. af.] a
unvollst. in P.

⁷³⁷⁾ hys] über vs mit blasserer
tinte geschr.

- Bote atte laste þey weore by-gyled.
Y schal telle ȝow, how hit was:
Now may ȝe here a wondur cas.
In þat tyme, y vndurstonde,
- 630 A riche man was in Engelonde
And hadde a good womman to wyue,
And lyued to gedre in clene lyue.
A sone þey hadde and douȝtred
þreo,
þeo fairest childre, þat myȝhte beo.
- 635 Anon þeo feond, þat y of tolde,
þat wonede in þe eyr so bolde,
In to þeo eorþe he lyȝhte þan
And tempted so þat gode womman,
þat in hire body he hadde gret myȝt,
- 640 And brouȝt hire in chest and fyȝt,
And made hire ofte wiþ egre mood
Corse hire children, as heo weore wod.
So apon a day an euen late
þoruz þeo feond wiþ gret hate
- 645 Wiþ hire sone heo gan to grame,
- And vpon hym sylf hit gon to falle,
For ich wele ȝow tellen, how hit was:
Ze schul heren of a delful cas.
Some tyme, as ich vnderstoned, 755
(f. 21 b)
A rych man was in Englund
And hade a woman to his wyue,
þe fayrst, þat men wanst a lyue.
A sone þey hadden & douȝtren
þre,
þe fayrst children, þat myȝten be. 760
- And þat feend, þatich ȝow of told,
þat woneþ in þe eyr & ys so bold,
In to eorthe he alyȝt þanne
And temptede þys goud wommanne,
For of hure he hadde gret 765
myȝt:
He brouȝt hure in cheste & in fyȝt,
He mad hure wiþ egre mood
- To cursen here children, as zhe were wood,
So þat vpon an euenyng
þrouȝt þe feendes entysyng 770
Wiȝt hure sone zhe bygan to grame,

627) *you *tell P. 628) yee
may P. wonderous P. 631) to]
*his add. P. 632) in] a P. 633)
daughters P. 635) þeo] a P.
636) woonen(!) P. 637) In—lyȝhte]
He light on the earth P.
638) tempted so] for to tempt P.
637) f. umgestellt in LP. 639) &
P. he] om. P. 640) in ch.] into
striffe P. fyȝt] ȝ auf rasur
geschr. in L. 641) ofte] after P.
642) *To curse P. child P. shee
was P. 643) So] om. P. att P.
644) gret] danach debate, durch-
gestr. L.

754) a] ü. d. z. geschr. 762) eyr]
erthe, ausgestr. und eyr überge-
schr. 768) cursen] r ü. d. z.
geschr.

Corsed him harde by his name,
And to þeo deouel heo him
bitauȝt
Wip al þeo power, þat heo auȝt.
þanne was þeo feond glad and
bliþe
650 And þouȝte to do heom schame
swyþe,
And þo hit was come to þeo
nyȝt,
In to hire hous he com ful ryȝt
And strangled heore sone, þere
he lay;
þeo wif ros vp, when hit was
day,
655 And fond hire sone ded at
morwe
And went and hong hire seolf
for sorwe;
And whan hire lord herde þis,
Anon swiþe for sorwe ywys
Sodeynly he deȝed þo
660 Wip outen schryſt and hosol al so.
þeo folk of þat contre þat tyde,
þat wonede þer nyȝh by syde,
Come þidre, heom to seo,
And hadden reuthe and gret
pyte, (f. 16^a)
665 þat mony a mon þat day
Weop and seide weylaway
For þat godemon and his wif,
þat hadden lyued so good lif.
An heremyte wonede þer by
syde

And ȝhe cursed hym by his name,
And to þe feend ȝhe hym by-
tauȝt (f. 22^a)
As moche as ȝe of hym auȝt.
þanne was þat feend ful blyth 775

And þouȝt hym to schynden
swyþe,
And whanne hit come to þe
nyȝt,
To þat hows he wente ful ryȝt
And stranglede þat chyld, þar
hit lay;
The moder aros, whanne hit 780
was day,
And founde hure sone ded a
morwe,
And ȝhe anheng here sylf for
sorowe;
And whanne þe goud man herde
al þys,
Anon for sorowe & care, ywys,
Sodeynleche he deyde þo 785
Wip outen hosel & schryſte al so.

Moche folk come, þat hedows
syȝt to see,
And hadden þer of gret pytee,
Many a man þat same day
Wrong & weep & seide wel a way. 790

An heremyte wonede þar by
syde, (f. 22^b)

791) her.] þar add. (!) ms.

646) & curst P. harde] fast P.
647) bihight P. 648) þeo] her P.
þat h. a.] & her might P. 650)
*him P. 651) þo] *when P. þeo]
om. P. 652) The feende *went
to her house right P. 653) where
P. 656) hong] strangled P. 660)
out P. and] or P. 661) þat]
the P. 662) neere P. 663) þidre
h.] together then P. 665) & P.
666) Weeped P. 668) good] a add.
P. 669) her.] that add. P.

670 And com for to seo þat tyde;
Blasy, for soþe, his name was,
And ofte he seide: allas, allas,
þat hit was byfalle soo,
In his heorte him was ful woo
675 And seide, hit was, verrament,
þoruz þeo feondes comburment.
þeo douȝtress he fond þeronlyue,
þat godman þo can heom
schryue,
Of al þat þey couþe þenke or
mene,
680 And seóthen asoyled heom ful
clene;
And whan þey hadden doon
and seid,
Fair penaunce on heom he leyd.

And whan he had tauȝt heom soo,
Hom aȝeyn he wente þoo,
685 And þanne þeo maydenes al
yfere
Seruedyn god wiþ bliþe chere.

In al Engelond þo was vsage,
ȝef any womman dude outrage,

He com, to seen hem in þat
same tyde;
Blasye, ywys, his name was,
Ofte for hem he seide, allas:
For hit was myshapped so, 795
In his herte hym was ful wo;
He seyde þanne, verrement,
Hit was þe feendes combrement.
þre douȝtren he fond a lyue,
þat goud man hem gan schryue soo
Of al þat þey cowden mene,
And he asoyled hem ful clene
And penaunce on hem layede
And seide to hem: „My leue
mayde,
Lokeþ euere wiþ al ȝoure myȝt 805
in dede,
þat ȝe seruen wel god almyȝty
& hym drede.“
And whanne þe heremyte hadde
tauȝt hem so,
Hom to his hermytage he wente
þoo,
And anon þe douȝtren al yfere
(f. 23 a)
Gonnōn to seruen god wiþ myld 810
chere
And oure lady Marye, ywys,
Nyȝt & day þey dedyn þys.
þan was þan in Englond an vsage,
Yf eny womman dude outrage,

⁶⁷⁰⁾ And] om. P. for] om. P.
seo] *them there add. P. ⁶⁷²⁾
ofte] te später nachgetr. in L.:
*for *them add. P. allas] om.
P. ⁶⁷⁴⁾ he P. ⁶⁷⁶⁾ incomberment
P. ⁶⁷⁷⁾ aliue P. ⁶⁷⁸⁾ þat g. þo]
The hermitt hee P. ⁶⁷⁹⁾ Of]
om. L. ⁶⁷⁹⁾ f. om. P. ⁶⁸¹⁾ he
had P. ⁶⁸³⁾ *had] so P.; om. L.
tauȝt h.] done P. ⁶⁸⁴⁾ he w.
þoo] can he goe P. ⁶⁸⁵⁾ And]
om. P. in fere P. ⁶⁸⁷⁾ þo] *then
P. was] the add. P.

⁸⁰⁴⁾ hem] e aus y corr. ⁸⁰⁹⁾ al
yf.] auf rasur geschr. ⁸¹³⁾ vsage]
ge auf rasur geschr. ⁸¹⁴⁾ Of (!)
ms.

Bote zef hit weore in sposyng,
690 Or anonymon old or zyng
Myzhte hit wite of þat contre,

Al quuyk heo scholde doluen bee,
Bote heo weore lyȝt womman
told
To alle, þat hire aske wold.
695 So þeo feond, þat hadde myȝt,
þat wonede in þe eyr lyȝt,

Into þeo eorþe he lyȝte doun
þan
And wente him til an old
womman
And hyȝhte hire boþe gold and
fee,
700 To wende to þeo sustreon þeo,
þeo eldest maiden to enchaunte,
Som ȝong monnes body for to
haunte,
And, zef heo myȝhte brynge
hit þer to,
He hette hire gold for euere mo.

705 þat olde quene was ful glad

⁶⁸⁹⁾ sp.] her spousage *P.*
⁶⁹⁰⁾ If *P.* ⁶⁹²⁾ shold *P.*; schol-
den (!) *L.* ⁶⁹³⁾ heo] if it *P.*
were] *a add. *P.* called *P.* ⁶⁹⁴⁾
alle] men add. *P.* þat] to add. (!)
L. h. a.] aske her *P.* ⁶⁹⁵⁾ him
t.] vn*to *P.* ⁷⁰²⁾ for] om. *P.*
enfante *P.* ⁷⁰³⁾ zef] om. *P.* *her
P. ⁷⁰⁴⁾ more (!) *P.*

But if hyt were in clene wedlak, ⁸¹⁵
Anon ryȝtis me wolden hure tak,
And þorȝ þe dom men schulden
hit se,

Al quyk ȝhe schulde bydoluen be,
But ȝhe were a comon womman
ytold

To alle men, þat hure axen wold. ⁸²⁰
So þe feend, þat was ful of myȝt,
þat was in þe eyr abone ylyȝt,
Was abouȝten ful long wyle,
þat eldeste mayden to beghyle,
And for nauȝt, þat he myȝt ⁸²⁵
do þan,

He ne myȝt bygylen þys goud
wouman;

For ȝhe was schreue of dede
& þouȝt ^(f. 23 b)
þe feend myȝt do to hure ryȝt
nouȝt.

þanne wente þe feend in liknesse
of man

To an old wyked womman ⁸²⁰

And byhyȝt hure gold & fee,

To wenden to þes sustren þre
And þe eldest to bytraye,
þat som man hure haue maye:

„And if þu myȝte brenghen ⁸³⁵
hure þer to,
þu schalt han catel ynow for
euermo!“

þus þe feend to hure gan say,
And þanne þe feend wente a
way.

þat old quene was ful glad,

⁸¹⁸⁾ schulden (!) ms. ⁸¹⁹⁾
where (!) ms.

- And dude, als þeo deouel hire
bad,
And wente hire to þeo sustreon
þreo;
So sone as heo myȝhte heom seo,
- To þeo eldest suster heo seide:
710 „Allas, my swete, dure maide:
þow hast faire feet and honde,
Gentil body for to fonde,
Whyt swyre and long arm:
Ywis, hit is muche harm,
715 þat þy body neo myȝte asay,
Wip som ȝong mon for to play,
þat þe myȝte fynde in euery cas
Gamen and murthe and gret
solas!“
„Certes,“ seide þe maide þan,
720 „Zef þat y tok now anyman,
Bote ȝef hit weore in sposyng,
(f. 16^b)
And anonymon old or ȝyng
Myȝhte hit wite of þis contre,
Al qwyk y scholde dolue beo.“
725 „Nay, certes,“ seide þat olde
quene,
„þow may hit do wiþ owte dene
Zer and oþir in boure, in bedde,
þeo whiles nomon þar þe wedde,
- To don, as þe feend hure bad, 840
And wente to þe sostren þre;
And whanne ȝhe myȝt hem ysee,
þat wicche made gret lamentaci
on & care,
For þe þre sostren fare
And to þe eldest 844 a

707) wente] weste, *ausgestr.*
und wente *übergeschr.* L. hire] om. P. 708) So] As P; *danach*
s, *verklext*, L. 709) suster] soone add. P. 710) deere sweete P.
712) A gentle P. sounde (?) P.
713) sw.] hayre P. 715) might not P.
717) þe] yee P. place P.
718) and] om. P. 719) Certaine P. maiden P. 720) tok now]
take P. 722) And an.] Any man either P. 723) Myȝhte—of] & itt were knownen in P. 725) cer
taine P. the P. 726) Yee P.
727) Zer a. o.] Both P. 727)
boure] & add. P. 728) þeo wh.] Although P. doe you P.

842) myȝt ü. d. z. *nachgetr.*
844a) *Diese vier worte sind als custos erhalten.*

And þer fore neo dred þe nouȝt,
730 Ne þar hit neuere be forþer
brouȝt;
And ȝef þow wolt do by my red,
þow neo dudest neuer better
dede!"
So þoruz þeo qwenes enchaun-
tement
And þeo feondes comburment
735 þeo eldest suster, soþ to say,
Lette a ȝong mon wiþ hire play,
And whan hire liked best þe
game,
Hit turnde hire to muche schame,
For heo was taken and forþ
ydrawe,
740 And of hire game heo was knowe,
And for þat werk doluen heo was;
Mony mon seide for hire allas.
þeo feond, ȝet anoþir while
þat oþir suster he con bygyle
745 And made hire loue a fair ȝong
man,
And was his leman after þan,
Al hire wille to him heo let;
Hit was parceyued ful sket,
Heo was taken forþ, ywis,
750 And brouȝt by fore þeo justis,
Hire juggement to vndurfonge,
As hit was lawe of londe.
þeo justice hire aposede þo,
Wher fore heo hadde do so;
755 Heo onswereerde, as hire was tauȝt,
And seide, heo neo forsok hit
nouȝt,
Heo swor, heo was a lyȝt woman
To alle, þat wolde hire body han,
And þer skapeode heo away,

729) neo] om. P. 730) Ne þ. h.] For it needs P. be] so P;
om. A. forth P. 732) neo] om. P. neuer] a add. P. 734) in-
cumberment P. 735) suster] the add. P. 737) hire] shee P.
739) ydr.] y, danach brouȝt, unterpunktet und ausgestr., drawe, L.
741) for] mit d. t. ü. d. z. nachgetr. in L. heo] om. P. 742) Mony]
aadd. P. 744) The P. 745) hire] mit d. t. ü. d. z. nachgetr., L.,
to add. P. 746) And] after add. P. after] om. P. 747) f. om. P.
749) forth wise (?) P. 750) þeo] hye add. P. 751) vnderstand P.
752) was] the add. P. of] the add. P. 753) opposed her P.
755) hire] shee P. 756) neo] om. P. 757) & said, shee P. 758) hire
b. h.] come to her common. 759) þer] soe shee P. heo] them P.

760 So þat hire folewed al þat day
Of harlates a gret haras,
To fyle hire body for þat cas.
Zet þeo feond, in þat while
þe þridde suster he can bygyle.
765 Þenne was þe ȝongest suster
so wo,
þat nyȝh hire heorte brast in two,
For hire modur hong hire seolue
And hire sustur men qwyk dolue,
And for hire fadir dyȝed amys
770 And hire broþir was strangled,
ywis,
Hire oþir sustur an hore strong,
þat wiþ harlates made hire mong.
Al most for sorwe and þouȝt
Ynwanhope heo was nyȝh brouȝt.
775 To þeo hermyte heo wente þan,
þat hyȝhte Blasy, þat gode man,
And tolde him al þeo soþe by
fore, (f. 17^a)
How al hire kynrade was forlore.
þeo hermyte hadde wondur gret,
780 On godes halue he hire het:
"Y bydde þe, haue god in mynde
And let beo þeo lore of þe
feonde!"
He bad hire forsake in alle wise
Pruyde, hate and couetyse,
785 Nyþe and onde and envye
And monnes flechs in lecherye,
Alle such werkes he bad hire fleo
And godes seruaunt for to beo,
Bad hire, heo schulde nyme kepe,
790 þat heo neo leyde hire nouȝt to
slepe,
And nameliche nouȝt on nyȝt,
Bote heo hadde candel lyȝt

761) haras] race P. 764) he] om. P. 765) youngest P; ȝonge L.
766) burst P. 767) hong] had hangd P. 768) hire] one add. P.
quicke was delfe P. 769) for] that add. P. 770) was] so P; om. L.
772) wiþ—mong] harlotts was euer among P. 773) and] for add.
P. 774) nyȝh] om. P. 776) To that P. 778) kindred were P.
780) het] besett P. 781) in] thy add. P. 783) & P. alle] any P.
785) N. a. o.] Alsoe sloth P. 787) he b. h.] for to P. 788) And]
bade her add. P. for to] om. P. 789) & bade P. heo sch. n.]
to take good P. 790) heo neo] shee P. nouȝt] not downe P. 791)
n. on] not in the P. 792) Vnlesse P. hadde] a add. P.

And wyndowes and dores in
þat stounde
Waren sped by rof and grounde,
795 And make þer aȝeyn wiþ good
voys
þeo signe of þe holy croys:
Bid him, þat he warant beo
Aȝeyn þeo feond and his pouste!⁴
And whan he hadde tauȝt hire so,
800 Hom aȝeyn heo can go
And seruede god wiþ heorte glad;
Heo dude, as þe hermyte hire bad,
And ȝet þeo feond wiþ enuye
Bygyled hire wiþ tricherye
805 And brouȝte hire in wel dreory
chere:
Y schal ȝow telle, in what manere.

Apon a day, verrament,
Wiþ neyȝhebours to þe ale heo
went;
Longe heo sat and dude mys,
810 þat heo was dronkyn, ywis;
Hire oþir sustur, þat y of tolde,
þat was an hore stowt and bolde,
Com hire þider þat ilke day
Wiþ mony an harlot, and made
deray
815 And mysseide hire, as heo
weore wod,
And calde hire oþir þan good,
And heo was dronkyn, sop to
seyn,
And mysseide hire aȝeyn.
Solonge heo chidde, wiþ oute les,
820 þeo hore start vp in a res
And wiþ hire fust in outrage
Smot hire in þe visage,
Drouȝh hire her and rente
hire cloþ

794) Waren] To be *P.* spurred to *P.* 795) noyce (?) *P.* 796)
crosse *P.* 797) f. om. *P.* 800) can shee *P.* 802) & *P.* 803) wiþ]
thorow *P.* 805) in wel] into a *P.* 807) Vpon *P.* 808) þe] om. *P.*
809) amisse *P.* 810) drunken shee was *P.* 818) hire] om. *P.* same *P.*
814) an—deray] harlotts for to play *P.* 815) hire] sister add. *P.*
shee was *P.* 817) f. om. *P.* 819) wiþ o. l.] in a resse *P.* 820) in
a r.] without lesse *P.* 821) & went to her sister in a rage *P.*
822) & smote *P.* on *P.* 823) f. om. *P.*

And beot hire boþe eouele and
wroþ;
825 Hom to hire chaumbre heo
fledde þo
And stak þeo dore by tweone
heom þo
And cryzed out, and neyzhe-
bours come,
And þe hore anon þey nome
And dryuen hire away anon,
830 And þeo harlotes euerychon.
Whan þay weore dryuen alle
away,
þeo mayden in þe chaumbur lay
Al mad and coupe no good,
(f. 17^b)
Wepte al day, as heo weore wood;
835 And whan hit was come to þe
nyȝt,
Apon hire bed heo feol doun ryȝt;
Al yschod and yclad
Heo fel on slepe and was al mad
And forȝat hire hows vnblessed,
840 As þe hermyte hire hadde wissed.
þanne was þeo feond glad and
bliþe
And þouȝte to don hire schame
swyþe;
Ouer al wel in he myȝt,
For þer was mad no crois þat
nyȝt;
845 And to þe maiden anon he went
And þouȝte al cristendam to
haue schent:
A streone of a child he putte
in hire þo
And passed awey þer he com fro.
And whan þat womman was
awaked,
850 Heo fond hirebody ly al naked,

825) Then home P. heo fl. þo] shee can goe P. 826) stak]
made to P. dores P. them tow P. 828) anon] soone P. 831) weore]
e corr. aus h, L. alle] om. P. 832) maid P; that add. P. 833) and
—good] as shee were woode P. 834) al day] & fared P. wood]
with ill moode P. 835) þe] om. P. 836) hire] the P. 837) yschod] d
auf rasur geschr. in L.; both shodd P. 838) all was P. 840) had
her P. 843) in] om. P. 844) noe crosse made P. 845) mayd P.
847) traine, corr. in braine, P. 848) where P. com] cann (!) P.
850) & P. ly al] lying P.

And heo gropede wiþ hire honde,
And in a stude þer heo fonde,
Wher by heo wende witerly,
þat som mon hadde leyzen
hire by.
855 þanne heo ros vp in hast
And fond hire dore sperred fast,
And whan heo fond, þat hit
was so,
In hire heorte heo was ful wo
And þouȝte, hit was sum
wikyd þynge,
860 þat wolde hire to schame brynge.
Al þat nyȝt heo made gret sorwe,
And to þe hermyte heo wente
on morwe
And tolde him al þat cas;
þeo hermyte seide: „Alas, alas!“
865 þat heo hadde brokyn hire
penaunce,
And seide, his was þe feondes
combraunce.
„A, gode fadir,“ heo seide þo,
„What, ȝef hit byfalle so,
þat a child beo on me geten
870 And anonymon hit may witen,
þenne schal y beo doluen anon
Al qwyk, boþe body and bon!“
„Certes,“ seide þe gode man,
„My leoue douȝter, after þan,
875 And y may þe soþe yseo,
þat a child is geten on þe,
Y schal hit helpe wiþ al my myȝt,
Til y þer of may haue a syȝt,
Go now hom, douȝter myn,
880 And haue Cristes blessyng and
myn,
For he may, ȝef his wille beo,
Out of þy sorwe brynge þe!“
Hom heo wente wiþ dreory mod
And serued god wiþ herte good,
885 And euery day after þan

851) grope P. hands (!) P. 852) in a st.] some seed P. 857) And] om. P. 860) br.] bright (!) P. 861) the P. 862) on] att P. 863) the P. 867) said shee P. 868) be fallen P. 869) gotten B. 870) may it P. 872) bon] bome (!) P. 873) Certaine P. 874) deere P. 876) f. om. P. 877) hit] you P. 878) y—may] of itt I P. a] om. P. 879) now] om. P. douȝ.] now add. P. 880) gods P. 881) ȝef] and P.

Hire wombe wel gret bycam,
So heo neo myȝhte hit nouȝt
hyde;
Hit was parceyued in þat tyde,
Heo was taken forþ, ywis,
890 And brouȝt by fore þe justice.
þeo justice hire apposede þo,
(f. 18 a)
Why heo hadde ydo so,
And, for heo wrouȝte azeyn
þe lawe,
He jugged hire to beon yslawe;
895 And heo onswerde and seide:
„Nay,
Ynewrouȝteneuerazeynþelay!“
And swor: „By him, þat dyȝed
on treo,
Nas neuer mon, þat neyȝhed me
Wip flesch lust neo lecherye
900 Neo kuste my body wiþ vilenye!“
þe justice onswerde anon:
„Dame, þou lyest, by seynt Jon;
þy wordes buþ false and wilde,
When men may seo, þou art
wiþ childe:
905 In þis world nas neuer child born,
Bote monnes flesch weore by forn,
Sauë Jhesu Crist þoruȝ his myȝt
Was born of a maide bryȝt:
How myȝhtow hit forsake þan,
910 þat þow neo haddest part of man,
Whan my seolfþeo soþe may seo,
þat a child is geten on þe?“
„Certes, sire,“ heo saide þan,
„Y go wiþ childe wiþ owte man;
915 By him,“ heo seide, „þat made
þis day,
Neuere mon by me lay,

886) will greater began (!) P. 887) So] that add. P. neo] om. P.
888) But itt P. 889) Heo was] Then was shee P. forþ] forsoothe
P. 890) by f.] afore P. þe] hye add. P. 891) opposed her P.
893) against, a corr. aus b, P. 894) her] for add. P. 896) ne] om.
P. against P. 898) Was P. 899) fleshly P. neo] or P. 900) my]
ü. d. z. nachgetr., L. body] so P; mon (!) L. 905) was P. 906) seede
there was P. 908) mayden P. 909) myȝt. h. f.] may thou for
shame P. 910) Say P. neo h.] had neuer P. of] any add. P. 911)
Whan] I add. P. þeo] they P. 912) of P. 913) Certaine P. 914)
owte] any add. P. 916) N. m.] There was neuer that P.

Bote, as y slepte on a nyȝt,
By me lay a selcoupȝ wyȝt,
Bote y ne wist, what hit was:
920 þer fore y do me in þy grace.“
þeo justice seide, wiþ ouþe faile,
He ne herde neuer of such
merueille:
„To day neo schal þeo wommon
beo dolue,
Til y haue jugged wyues twolue,
925 Zef any child may beo mad
Wiþ owte getyng of monhed,
And ȝef þey say, hit may beo so,
Al qwyt and freo þan schal-
tow go;
And ȝef þey say, þat hit neo
may,
930 Alqwyk men deluen þe to day.“
On twolf wyues heo dude hire
anon,
And þey onswerede euerychon,
þat neuer child was born of
mayde,
Bote Jhesu Crist, alle þey saiden.
935 Blasy þe hermyte vp sterte þan
And þe justice onswere bygan:
„Sire justice,“ he seide þo,
„Here me of a word or two!
þat þis wommon haþ told vche
del,
940 Certes, al y leue hit wel,
And ȝe ne leuen hire ryȝt noȝt:
By god, þat al þis world haþ
wrouȝt,
Y haue hire schryuen and
tawȝt þeo lawe,
To me was heo hit neuer
aknowe,
945 þat anymon wiþ word or dede

917) on a] one P. 919) ne w.] wist neuer P. 921) outen P.
922) He—such] I neuer hard of such a P. 923) neo] nay (!) P.
924) asked P. 927) soe bee P. 928) and—go] shalt thou goe &
free P. 929) neo m.] may nay P. 930) men] shall add. P. 938)
maiden P. 934) they all P. 936) And—onsw.] To answer the
justice he P. 938) of] in P. 940) al y 1.] I beleue P. 941) ne 1.]
beleeven P. 942) þat] & (!) P. haþ] om. P. 944) was] wold P.
hit add. L. aknow P; of knowe L. 945) wiþ—dede] for any meede P.

Nyȝhed hire body wiþ fleschly
dede;
þer fore hit is aȝeyn þeo lawe,
þat heo scholde beo dolue þis
dawe:
Sipen heo had serued to beo
spilt, (f. 18^b)
950 þeo child in hire wombe haþ
no gilt;
þer fore, sire, do by my red,
þow neo schalt nouȝt do hire
to ded,
Bote do hire in warde by fore,
Til þe child beo ybore,
955 And þanne, " he seide, „god
hit wot,
Two ȝer kepe hit heo mot,
And let hire kepe hire child
hire seolue;
By þan myȝhtow here telle,
And par auenture, " he seide,
„þan,
960 þeo child may beo a wel god
man!"
þan onswerde þe justice:
„Hermyte, þy wordes arn wel
wise;
þer fore by þe don y wil:
To day neo schal hire noman
spille!"
965 þe justice comaundered anon,
To lede hire to a tour of ston,
þat no wyȝt schulde wiþ hire go,
Bote a medwif, and nomo;
þe tour was strong and swiþe
hyȝh,
970 Nomon myȝte come hire nyȝh.
A wyndow þer was mad þo
And a corde tyzed þer to,
To drawe þer wiþ al thyng,
Fuyr and water, mete and
dryng.

⁹⁴⁷⁾ against *P.* ⁹⁴⁸⁾ doluen shold be *P.* ⁹⁴⁹⁾ Giff *P.* haue
P. to beo] for to (!) *P.* ⁹⁵⁰⁾ not *P.* ⁹⁵²⁾ þow—hire] & put her
not this time *P.* ⁹⁵⁷⁾ f. om. *P.* ⁹⁶⁰⁾ beo a wel] proue a *P.*
⁹⁶¹⁾ said *P.* ⁹⁶²⁾ wel] full *P.* ⁹⁶³⁾ þe d.] thy doome *P.* ⁹⁶⁴⁾ To
—noman] Noe man to day shall her *P.* ⁹⁶⁷⁾ & that *P.* ⁹⁶⁹⁾ swiþe]
om. *P.* ⁹⁷⁰⁾ That n. *P.* ⁹⁷³⁾ þer w.] therein *P.*

975 And whan þe time of hire was
come,

Heo hadde born a selcoup sone:
Ryȝt fair forme hit hadde þan,
Al þe schap, þat feol to man;

Blak he was, wiþ owte les,

980 And rouȝh as a swyn he wes.
þeo medwif, anon ryȝt

Heo was agrisen of þat syȝt,
And for he was rowȝh of hyde,

Also swiþe heo pouȝte þat tyde,

985 þat he nas neuer geten of man,
And ful sayn heo wolde þan,

In helle he hadde beon hire
fro,

þat neuer mon hadde seyze
him mo.

þe hermyte, þat hyȝt Blasy,

990 Wiste ful wel, sikerly,
þat tyme, þeo child schold be
bore,

And to þe tour he com amorwe
And cleped vpward to heom þare,
Asked heom, how þey hadde fare.

995 þe medwif seide, wiþ owte les,

A knawe child bore þer wes.

And pouȝtanon þanne, (f. 24a) 845
þat hit was neuere byghete of
man;

In helle, ȝhe wolde, hit hadde
ybe,

Whar no man hyt myȝt se.

The heremyte, þat hyȝt Blasye,
wiþ outen lyȝe,

Wyste wel and sekerlyȝe, 850
Whyche tyme hit schulde be
bore,

And to þat tour he com þarfore
And clepede to hem vp þare

And askede hem of here fare,
And ȝhe answerde wiþ wourdes 855

myldes,

þat þar was born a knaue childe:
"Wel fayr schap hit haþ, a plyȝt,

But fowl hit is in eche mannes
syȝt,

For al his skynne ys ful of heer;
Suche a chyld seyze we neuere 860
eer."

975) of h.] om. P. 976) hadde
b.] bare P. 977) faire shape he P.
978) forme P. to] for a P. 981)
Then they P. 982) Heo] om. P.
afeard P. 983) was] soe add. P.
984) Full well shee wist P.
985) was P. of] by my (!) P.
987) helle] that add. P. 991)
The P. 992) tower P. att morne
P. 993) called P. them yare P.
994) *& a. P. hadde] did P. 996)
there borne P.

887) schap] a stark radirt.

854) ask.] of add. (!) ms. 860) we]

y, ausgestr. und mit hellerer tinte
we übergeschr.

„Tak him me,“ he seide þan,
„And y schal make him cristen-
man:
Wheþir he dyȝe or lif abyde,
1000 þeo fairer grace him may by-
tide!“
Ful glad was þo þe medwif
And tok þeo child al so blyue,

And by a corde heo let him
doun,
And Blasy ȝaf him his benesoun
1005 And bar him hom wiþ drery
mod (f. 19a)
And baptized him in þe holy
flod
And cleped him to his cristen-
dam
Merlyn in godes name,

þat þoruz þe name, y ȝow
telle,
1010 Alle þeo feondes, þat weoren
in helle,
Weore agramed þer of ful sore,
þer þoruz was heore pouste lore.

„Dame,“ he seyde, „þat þu me
take,
A crystynman yche wele hit
make:
Whather he deyeþ or lyf abydyþ,
(f. 24 b)
The fayrere grace hym bytydeþ!“

Ful glad was þat mydwylf þanne, 865
Zhe took þe chyld to þat holy
manne

An he bar hit hom anon

And cristenied hit in þe vant
ston
And nempnede his name in þat
plas
Merlyn þrouȝ godes gras, 870
And anon as he was fulled so,
Al his heer from hym gan go,
þat he hadde azens reson,
Wente a way þrouȝ hys cristen-
dom,
And al þe blaknesse of his hyde 875
Went a way in þat tyde,
And he was as fayr of hewe,
As eny child, þat þey euore
knewe,
And þus þrouȝ his cristenedom,
as y ȝow telle,
Alle þe feendes, þat beþ in helle, 880

998) him] *a add. P. 1000)
he P. 1001) þo] om. P. 1002)
caught P. al so] om. P. 1005)
dreri] merry P. 1007) called P.
1008) & named him M. P. 1009)
þat] om. P. þe] that P. 1010)
*feendes P.; feodes (!) L. 1011)
agreed P. þer of] & that P.
1012) þer] danach þouȝ, ausgestr.
L. þoruz] fore P. their power
bore (!) P.

868) crystymen (!) ms. 876)
Went] danach de, ausgestr.

And whan he hadde cristened
him so,
Hom aȝeyn he bar him þo
1015 And in þe corde he can him
leyn;
þe medwif drouȝ him vp aȝeyn,
And he bad hire, wiþ owte
blame,
Clepe him Merlyn by his name.
þe medwif anon ryȝt
1020 Bar him to a fuyr bryȝt,
And as heo warmed him by
þe fuyr,
Heo byhuld his lodly chere:
„Alas,“ heo seide, „artow
Merlyn?
Whepen art þow and of what
kyn?
1025 Who was þy fadir by nyȝt or
day,
þat nomon wite neo may?
Hit is gret reuþe, þou foule
thyng,
þat for þy loue, by heouene
kyng,
þy modur schal beo slayn
wiþ wo:
1030 Allas, þat stounde schal falle so!
Y wolde, þow ware feor in þe
see,
Wiþ þat þy modur myȝht scape
fleo!“
Whan he herde hire speke so,
He brayd vp his eyȝne two
1035 And lodly on hire gon loke,
And his hed on hire he schok
And gan to crye wiþ loud
deone:
„þou lyȝest,“ he seide, „olde
quene!

1018) Call P. 1019) medw.] bare him add. P. 1020) Bar —
fuyr] To the fyer that was P. 1022) his] this P. 1023) said
shee P. 1024) Whence P. and] om. P. 1026) iwitt P. neo] itt P.
1027) þou f. þ.] by heauens king P. 1028) by h. k.] thou
foule thinge P. 1029) Alas the time it shalbe soe P. 1032) Wiþ]
om. P. 1033) he] Merlyn P. 1034) bradde open P. 1035) gon]
can hee P. 1036) olde] thou foule P.

- My modur schal nomon qwelle,
1040 For no þyng, þat men may
telle,
Whyl þat y may speke or gon,
Mawgre heom euerychon:
Y schal sauue hire lif for þis,
þat þowschalt seo and here ywis!"
1045 And whan þeo medwif herde
þat,
Almost heo fel doun, þer heo sat;
Heo gan to quake, as heo ware
wod,
And hadde leouere þan any good,
þat heo hadde beon feor away,
1050 So hadde his modur, þer heo lay;
So sore þey weore of him agast,
þey blessedyn heom in hast
And coniured him in godes
name,
He ne scholde do heom no
worldes shame,
1055 And faste on him þey gan to
crye,
In godes nome and seynte
Marie,
He scholde heom telle, what
he weore
And what mesanter brouȝte him
pore.
He gan him leyȝe and halde
him stille
1060 And let heom cryȝe al heore
wille; (f. 19^b)
- My moder schal no man quelle,
(f. 25^a)
For nouȝt, þat alle men connen
telle,
þe whiles þat y may speke & gon,
Mawgre here teep echon:
Hure lyf ych wele sauuen for al
þys,
And þat þou shalt see ywys!"
And whanne þe mydwif hurde
þat,
Zhe felle a swowe, þar zhe sat,
And gan to grede, as zhe were
wood;
Zhe hadde leuer þan eny good, 890
þat he hadde be a deuel way þo,
And so wold his moder al so;
So sore of hym þey weren agast,
þey bygonne to blesse þo ful fast
And hym þey coniurde in 895
Crystis name,
þat he schuld do to hem no
schame,
And fast on hym þey bygonne
to crye,
By þe vertu of Cryst & of seynt
Marie,
To tellen hem, what þat he
were (f. 25^b)
And what myschaunce he dude 900
þere;
And he gan lawȝhe & hold hym
stille
And leet hem gredyn al here fille;

1039) mod.] he sayd add. P.
1040) *can P. 1041) Whilst I
P. 1042) Mauger them that wold
her lone P. 1044) you shall P.
1045) And] om. P. mid.] shee add.
P. 1046) Alm.] om. P. þar h. s.]
almost flatt P. 1048) leouere] rather
P. 1050) where P. 1052) heom in
h.] them & that *full *fast P.
1053) con.] cryed on P. 1054)
He ne] *That he P. worldes]
om. P. 1055) to] om. P. 1058) misad-
uenture P. 1059) He did lye &
held P. 1060) their *fill P.

881) hy (!) ms. 886) am rande
nachgetragen. 889) were] w auf
rasur geschr. 891) deuel] danach
ein buchst. ausradirt.

And þouȝh þey hadden slain
him þo,
A word neo wolde he speke mo.
And þus þey þeo lyuede þare

Wiþ muche sorwe and wiþ care,
1065 And þer after half a zer,
As heo heold him by þe fuyr,
Reouþfully heo gan to grete
And seide to him: „My sone
swete,
For þy loue, wiþ oute wene,

1070 Al qwyk schal y dolue beon.“
He onswerde and seide: „Nay,
Dame, þow gabbest, by þis
day:
þer nys no mon no justice,
þat schal þe deme in none wyse,
1075 þeo whiles y may go or speke,
Yn eorþe þy body for to
wreke.“
þanne was his modur bliþe
woman,
And euery day after þan
He gladed hire wiþ his tale
1080 And tolde hire merueyles feole;
And whan he couþe speke and
gon,

Wourd to hem wolde he speke
non,
Tyl þat half zer were agon.
His moder þer after kepte hym 905
þere

Wiþ rewful hert & sory chere,
And after þat half a zer,
As ȝhe hym held by þe feir,
Rewfullych ȝhe tygan to wepe
And seyde: „Allas, my sone 910
swete,
For þy loue now, ych wot wel
my selue,
Al quyk on þe eorþe men schul
me bydelue.“

þe chyld answerd & seyde:
„Nay,
þu schalt nowt be dede for me,
by thys day:
þer ys no steward, baylyf ne 915
justyze,
þat þe schal dampne in eny wyse;
No man schal þy body quyk
breke, (f. 26^a)
Whyles þat y may go or ellys
speke.“
þanne was ȝhe a glad wouman,

And euerych day after þan 920
He gladeede hure wiþ som tale
And told hure aventures many
& fale;
And whanne þe tyme was, þat
he cowde gon,

1061) þouȝh] if P. hadden]
shold haue P. 1062) He wold
not speake a word moe P. 1063)
þus] om. P. the P. 1065) þer]
for (!) P. 1067) Rufullye P.
1069) outen P. 1070) dolue shall
I P. 1072) gables (!) P. 1073) is
neithe (!) P. nor P. 1074) yee P.
noe P. 1075) Then whilst P.
may] either add. P. 1077) mod.]
*a add. P. 1079) f.: He made
her gladd & bold, & maruelous
tales to her he told P. 1081)
And] om. P.

917) byreke(!) ms. 922) a ven-
tures (!) ms. 928) whanne] ü.
d. z. nachgetr.

þe justice was redy anon
And eode him forþ anon þan,

He let brynge tofore him þat
wommon,
1085 For to resceyue hire juggement;
And whan heo cam in present,

þeo justice forȝat hit nouȝt,
And egrely he saide his þouȝt
And swor anon by heouene
quene,
1090 Al qwyk heo schulde doluen
beone.
Heo neo onswerde good no
harm,
Bote heold þe child stille in
hire arm.
þeo child onswerde wiþ wordes
bolde,
He ne was bote two ȝer olde,

1095 He seide to þe justice wiþ
egre mod:
„Sire justice, þou konst litel god,
To do my modur to þeo ded,
And neo wost by hire no qued,

Saeu a chaunce, þat hire byfeol,
1100 And þer fore þou dost nouȝt
wel,
For euery man may wite by
þan,
þat ȝebyn chaunce may beo
nomon:

The justyze was redy anon
And comaundede his men bi 925
name,
To fechyn fourþ Merlyns dame,

To vnderfong hure juggement;
And whanne ȝhe was ycome yn
present,

The justyze swor by heuene
quene,
þat ȝhe schuld ydolue bene. 930

ȝhe answerd nother ȝe ne nay,

But stood styllie wiþ hure sone
al way.
þan was þe chyld but two ȝer
old,
And he answerd wiþ wourdes
bold
And seyde anon wiþ egre mood: 935
(f. 26 b)
„Syre justyze, þu canst no good,
To dampne my moder to be ded,
And þu knowyst by hure no
qued,
Saeu a chaunce, þat hure byfelle,
1140 And þarfore, syre, þu dost nouȝt
welle,
For wel ych woot on my þouȝt,

Aȝens þat chaunce ne myȝt ȝhe
nouȝt:

1088) And e. h.] & bade bring
P. 1084) Hetof.] Befor P. þat]
ilke add. P. 1088) But P. 1090)
shold P.; schuldyn L. 1091) f.
om. P. 1093) * Then the P.
1094) He ne] * And he P. yeeres
P. 1096) konst] but add. P.
1098) & wotts not, by what
reade P. 1099) hire b.] to her
fell P. 1100) And] om. P. nouȝt]
to her add. P. 1101) may w.
b.] will wott * well P. 1102)
against P.

928) was] ü. d. z. nachgetr.
938) qued] quyd, darüber mit
dunklerer tinte e nachgetr.

þoruȝ chaunce and þoruȝ grace
Into þis world brouȝt y was;
1105 And whan y was þoruȝ chaunce
 byȝete,
Euery man may wel wite,
 þat my modur oweþ nouȝt
For my loue to deþe beo
 brouȝt.“
Gret wondur þo hadden boþe
 olde and zyng
1110 Of þe childeſ onswerynge,
 And þe justice was ful wroþ,

And al alowd he swor his oþ,
Al qwyk heo scholde dolue beo.
„Nay,“ seide Merlyn, „so mote
 y theon,
1115 þow schalt hit neuer bryngē
 þer to,
For al þat euer þow canſt do,
 (f. 20a)
Hit ſchal nouȝt gon as þow wolt,
For heo neo hadde þer to gult,
And þat y ſchal preoue þoruȝ
 skyl,
1120 Mawgrey heom, þat wolen hire
 ſpyle:
My fadir, þat byȝat me,

Ys a feond of gret pouſtee
And wonyþ in þe eyr aboue
 þe lyȝt
And tempteþ men boþe day
 and nyȝt,
1125 And þer fore to my modur he
 wende

For þoruȝ chaunce & þoruȝ gras
In þys world beghetyn ych was;
And whanne ych was þoruȝ 945
 chaunce byghete,
Ech man may hit wel ywete,
 þat my moder ne auȝte nouȝt
For my loue to ded be brouȝt.“

Gret wonder hadde þan boþe old
 & zyng
Of Merlyns wyse answeryng, 950
And þe justyze was ful wroþ,
 (f. 27a)
And deplych he swor his oþ,
þat anon ȝhe ſchulde ydolue bc.
„Nay,“ ſeyde Merlyn, „so mot
 y þe,
þu ſchalt neuere brynghen hit 955
 þar to,
For nouȝt, þat þu myȝt do,

Hit ſchal nouȝt go as þu wylt,
For ȝhe haþ þar on no gylt,
And þat y preue by þys skele,

And after reson do þu, yf þu 960
 wele:
My fader,“ he ſeyde, „þat bygat
 me,
Is a feend of gret powste
And wonyþ in þe eyr aboue
 þe lyȝt
And tempteþ men boþe day &
 nyȝt;
To my moder he ys ywent, 965

1108) *f. om. P.* 1105) *whan y w.] om. P. byȝet.*] I was begott *P.*
1106) Therfore ev. *P. wott P.* 1106) *ought P.* 1109) *þo] om. P.* 1111) *Then P.* 1112) *al] om. P.* on loud *P.*
he] *om. P.* his] *an P.* 1115) *hit]*
her *P.* 1116) *al] *ought P.* 1118) *neo—to] hath done *no P.* 1119)
þat] *om. P.* *preoue] itt add. P.*
1120) *Maug.] of add. P.* wold
P. 1122) *potencye P.* 1123) *wonyþ]*
is *P.*

954) *moty(!) ms.* 957) *scha]*
danach ein buchst. ausradirt. 963)
Al cr̄istyndom to haue yschenþ,
ausgestr. und v. 968) *f. mit der ver-*
weisung a) b) am rande nachgetr.
976) englond, & corr. aus l.

- And wende al cristendam to haue
schende;
He gat me on hire, wiþ owte
lesyng,
þat heo neo wiste þer of no
thyng;
And for heo no wiste, whenne
hit was,
1180 Y preoue, þat heo is gultles,
For alle þe feondes wende,
wiþ me
To haue schent al cristiaunte
And hadde of me a wicked fode,
Bote god haþ me now turned
to gode;
1185 And now y am a godes sonde,
For to helpe al Engelonde,
And þoruz my fadir,“ he seide
þan,
„Alle thyng y ȝow telle kan,
þat euere was and now ys,
1190 Y kan yow telle wel ywys;

And þow neo wost, justice, þan,
Who was þeo fadir, þat þe wan;
And þer fore y preoue, modur
þyn
Raper to beo doluen þen myn!

1145 Herkenep now al þe stryue,
How Merlyn saued his modur
lyf!
- Al cristiandom to haue yschent,
And he bygat me on hure, wiþ
out lesyng,
And she wyst þar of ryȝt no
þyng;
And for ȝhe wyst nouȝt, whanne
hit wes, (f. 27^b)
Ich preue, þat ȝhe ys gylteles, 970
For alle þe feendes wenden,
þoruz me
Haue dystroyd al cristente,
And þouȝten, þat y schuld haue
be of lether mood,
But Crist hit haþ al turned to
good;
And now ych am sent þrouȝ 975
Cristes sonde,
To helpen al Englond,
And þrouȝ my fader,“ he seyde
þanne,
„Alle þyngys telle ich can,
þat ys go & come schel,
Ich ȝow can telle eueryche del, 980
And ful wel y wot, ywys,
Ho þat myn owne fader is,
And so wost nauȝt þu, & þat
ys schame: (f. 28^a)
Whi woldest þu þanne dampne
my dame?
And wel iche preue, þat moder 985
þyn
Is worthyer to be bydoluen quek,
þan myn!“

Now herkenep al to þys stryf,
How Merlyn sauede his moder
lyf!
Gret wonder hadde many a man,

1127) & P. 1128) *& P. neo—
of] therof wist P. 1129) wist not
P. 1131) wiþ] by P. 1134) turned
me P. 1135) For P. of god sende
P. 1137) þor. my f.] forsoothe P.
1138) Pardie tell you I can P. 1139)
All that P. 1141) And—wost
Thou dost not wott P. 1142) þeo]
thy P. 1143) preoue] *that add. P.

976) Englond] g corr. aus l.

þo was þe justice in heorte wo
And to Merlyn he saide þo:
„þow lyȝest, þowblake couiouн!
1150 My fadir was a good baroun
And my modur a leuedy freo:
Zet o lyue þow may hire seo.“

„Sire,“ he seide, „hold þy
mowþ,
Or y schal make hit wide coup:“

1155 Do a mon after hire to gon,
And al so swiþe my seolf al on
Y schal hire don anon beo
knowe,
Elles anhong me and todrawe!“

þe justice after his modur sent,

1160 And whan heo was comen in
present,
þeo justice byfore heom alle
To Merlyn þo gan he calle;
He seide to him: „Belamy,

Beo now so bold and hardy,
1165 To preoue þy tale, zef þou can,
þat þow seydest of þis womman!“
Merlyn onswerde to þe justice:
„Sire, þy dedes buþ nouȝt wyse:
Zef y telle þis folk by fore,
1170 How þat þow ware gete and
bore,

1147) Then P. 1148) lyȝ.] *he
*sayd add. P. bl. c.] glutton P.
1158) f. om. P. 1156) f.: Sir, said
Merlyne then, anon Said (!)
after her full soone P. 1157) And
I P. hire d. a.] *make her to P.
1158) Or else hange me on(!) to
drawen P. 1160) in] om. P. 1162)
þo] om. P. 1163) belanye(!) P. 1167)
onsw.] *said P. 1168) *wordes P.
1170) þat] om. P. was P.

How þys chyld to answery bygan. 990
The justyze sat & was ful wo
And to þat chyld he spak þo:
„þu lyxt,“ he seyde, „þu feendes
sone!
My fader was a noble baroune
And my moder a lady fre: 995
Zut a lyue, ych hope, zhe be;
And, as y trowe by oure lady,
Zhe dude neuere no lechery!“
„Syre,“ quaþ Merlin, „hold þy
mouþ,
Or hit schal be ryȝt wyde coup: 1000
(f. 28 b)
Anon leet a man after hure gon,
And ych my selue ryȝt anon
Schal maken hure selue soþ
byknawe,
And ellys lat hanghe me & to-
drawe!“
The justyze anon after his moder 1005
sent,
And zhe come anon in present.

„þu,“ seyde þe justyze, „þu bel-
amy,
Art þu now so bold & so hardy,
To avowe þe wordes, speke, yf
þu can,
þat þu seydest by thys womman? 1010
Merlyn seyde þan: „Syre justyze,
þyne wourdes beþ nouȝt wyse:
If y schal telle þys folk by forn,
How þu were byghete & born,

997) as] s auf rasur geschr.
1003) selue] ü. d. z. nachgetr.
1004) todri.] t corr. aus?

- þanne schal hit spryng wide
and brode,
þen hastow lore þy manhod;
þanne schal þy modur dolue
beo, (f. 20b)
And þat weore for þe loue of þe!“
1175 þeo justice þan vndurstod,
þat Merlyn kouþe muche good;
Into a chaumbre he ladde him þo,
He and Merlyn, wiþ owte mo;
„Merlyn,“ he seide, „now preize
y þe:
1180 What was þeman, þat byȝat me?“
„Sire,“ he seide, „by seynt
Symoun,
Hit was þe person of þis toun;
He byȝat þe, by seynt Jame,
Apon þis wommon, þat is þy
dame!“
1185 þe leuedy seide: „þow foule
thyng,
þow hast lowen a stark lesyng:
His fadir was a noble baroun
And holden a mon of gret renoun,
And þow art a mysbyȝete wreche:
1190 Y pray to god, þeo deovel þe feche;
Yn wilde fuyr þow schuldust
beo brent,
For wiþ wronge þow hast me
schent!“
„Dame,“ seide Merlyn, „hold þe
stille,
For hit weore boþe ryȝt and skille,
1195 For y wot, wiþ owte wene,
þow owes qwyk to dolue beone;

1171) shold P. 1172) & thou
shold lose P. 1174) þat] all P. 1176)
mikle P. 1177) Then to P. he —
þo] can they goo P. 1178) wiþ o.
m.] & noe moe P. 1179) now p. y]
I pray P. 1180) that P. 1182) þis]
the P. 1183) thee gott P. Jane (!)
P. 1184) Vpon P. 1186) low.] made
P. 1188) a man holden P. 1190) to]
thee(!) P. þeo] om. P. devill P.;
deol(!) L. 1191) shalt P. 1192) me]
my(!) P. 1194) and] om. P. 1195)
outen P. 1196) owes—dolue]
deserue doluen to P.

For, siþen þou weore to þis
world brouȝt,
Al þe werk, þat þou hast wrouȝt,
Y con þe telle ilke a word,
1200 Better þan þow, by oure lord,

How þy sone was byzeten;
Dame, ȝef þow hast forgeten,

Y can telle þe al þe cas,
How and where and whenne
hit was,

1205 þat þou schalt beo aschamed
sore:
þe weore betre speke namore!“

þe leuedy was sore amayed,
And Merlyn forþ his tale said:

„Dame,“ he saide, „verrament,
1210 þat tyme þy lord to Cardoyl
went,
Hit was by nyȝt and nouȝt
by day,
þe person in þy bed lay,

At þy chaumbre dore þy lord
gon knocke,
And þou dudust on þy smok
1215 And weore sore aferd þat tyde

And vndudest a wyndow wyde,
And þer þe person þow out
lette,
And he ran awey ful sket:

Bett þan þu þy selue by oure
lord, (f. 29 a)
Dame, if þu hast forȝete,
How þy sone, þat here staunt,
was byghete,
I can tellen þe al þat cas, 1020
How & wer & whanne hit was,

And yf þu wost forsake hit
panne,
I schalle tellen þe al þat y canne,
So þat þu schalt aschamed be
sore:
Dame, þu were betere to speke 1025
no more!“
The laydy þanne hym mys sayde,
And Merlyn his tale þan foruþ
layde:
„Dame,“ he sayde, „verrement,
Thy lord to Cardos was ywent

And come by nyȝt, soþ to say, 1030

And þe person of ȝowre toun by
the lay,
At þy chambre dore þy lord
gan knocke,
And þu stertust vp in þy smocke,
And þu were agast in þat tyde; 1035
(f. 29 b)
þu openedest a wyndowe, þat
ys wyde,
And ȝowre person þare þou out
leet,
And he ran hom vpon hys feet:

¹¹⁹⁷⁾ sithe *P.* was *P.* ¹¹⁹⁹⁾
þe] om. *P.* ilke] it euerye *P.*
¹²⁰²⁾ haue *P.* ¹²⁰³⁾ þe] you *P.*
¹²⁰⁴⁾ *when *P.*; whence, c
verklext, *L.* ¹²⁰⁵⁾ þat] & *P.*
¹²⁰⁷⁾ dismayd *P.* ¹²¹⁰⁾ Carlile
P. ¹²¹⁵⁾ was *P.* afryad *P.*
¹²¹⁸⁾ þow] þorw, corr. aus *þow*,
L. ¹²¹⁸⁾ sket] tyte *P.*

¹⁰¹⁷⁾ Beet(!) ms. ¹⁰³¹⁾ toun]
ü. d. z. nachgetr. ¹⁰³²⁾ At] And
(!) ms.

- „Dame,“ he seide, „þat ilke nyȝt
1220 Was byȝete þy sone, þe knyȝt.
Dame,“ he seide, „lyȝe ich
ouȝt?“
And heo stod stille and seide
nouȝt.
þanne was þe justice wroþ
and wo,
And to his modur he seide þo:
1225 „Dame,“ he seide, „how goþ
þis?“
„Sone,“ heo seide, „al soþ ywis:
þauȝ þow me honge by a corde,
He neo lyȝep of me no maner
worde!“
þeo justice for schame wax al
red
(f. 21a)
1230 And on his modur schok his
hed
And bad hur in haste wende hom
In muche mawgre, as heo com.
„Blyue,“ seid Merlyn, „send
after a spye,
For to þe person heo wol hire
hyȝe
1235 And al þe soþe heo wol him seyn,
How y haue heom bywryzen;
And whan þeo person haþ
herd þis,
Anon for schame and sorwe, ywis,
To a brugge he wol fleo,
1240 þat neuer mon after schal him
seo;
Into þe water starte he wol,
His lif and sowle for to spyl,
And bot hit beo soþ, þat y say,
- „Dame,“ he seyde, „þe person
þat same nyȝt
Hadde bygheten þy sone, þat
here ys knyȝt.
Dame,“ quaþ Merlyn, „lye yche 1040
auȝt?“
And ȝhe stood stylle & spak ryȝt
nauȝt.
þanne was þe justyze ful wo,
And to his moder he seyde þo:
„Dame,“ quaþ he, „how goþ
þys?“
„Sone,“ ȝhe seyde, „soþ hit ys: 1045
þouȝt þu me hanghe by a corde,
Merlyn lyȝep neuere a worde!“
The justyze for schame þanne
wax al red
And on his moder he schok
his hed
And bad hur ver 1049a

1222) And] om. P. 1225) he]
shee (!) P. 1227) For if thou hang
me with P. 1228) ne—maner]
belyeth me *neuer *a P. 1229)
wax al] waxes P. 1231) hur] so
P; om. L. 1232) With P. shame
P. 1236) How] that add. P. them
betraine P. 1240) & after noe man
P. 1242) His] om. P. 1243) beo]
om. (!) P.

1045) ȝhe] ȝh auf rasur geschr.
1048) al r.] ared ms. 1049a) als
custos erhalten.

Baldely do me honge to day!"¹²⁴⁵
þeo justice, wiþ owte faile,
Dude after Merlyns counsaile;
He sent after a spye bold,
He fond ryȝt as Merlyn told.
þanne þe justice sat and louȝh,
1250 Him þouȝt, þat Merlyn was wys
 ynouȝh,
And þer fore, for Merlyns sake,
Him and his modur he lette
 take
And let heom boþe go qwyþ
 and freo
By fore þeo folk of þat contre.
1255 And whan Merlyn was seoue
 ȝer old,
He was of dede swiþe bold:
His modur he dude a nonne
 make
A blak abyte he dude hire take,
And fro þat tyme, verrament,
1260 Heo serued god wiþ good entent.
Now lete we at his modur beon
And to owre tale we turne
 azeyn,
And speke we of þo messangeres,
þat wenten fro sire Fortageres,
1265 For to seche Merlyn þe bolde,
To haue his blod, as y ow tolde.
So þeo of heom com by cas
In a place, þer Merlyn was,
On playȝyng as he can gon
1270 Wip oþre childre mony mo;
And als þey pleyzed in þat stede,
On of his felawes him myssede
And gon cryze on Merlyn þo:
"Þow blake schrewe, þow go
 ows fro:
1275 Þow art a foul þyng, geten amys,
Nomon wot, who þy fadir is,

1244) do me h.] hang me P. 1245) outen P. 1248) & P. ryȝt] itt P.
1249) f. om. P. 1251) And þ.] & the justice P. 1253) boþe] om. P. 1256)
of d. sw.] both stout & P. 1258) & P. let P. 1261)f.: Now let vs of his
mother fayle & turne vs to another tale P. 1263) the P. 1264) from P.
Vortiger P. 1267) chance P. 1268) Into the P. where P. 1271) stede]
t corr. aus? L. 1272) myssede] mysande oder myfande L.; misdeed P.
1273) gon] to add. P. 1274) blake] cursed P. srow(!) P. 1276) what P.

Bote sum deouel þe byzat, y
wene,
To don ows boþe treyze and
teone!“
þeo messangers come faste by
1280 And herdyn wel þe childre cry;
Sone anon þey weore byþouȝt,
þat was þeo child, þat þey souȝt,
And vchonowthissweorddrouȝh,
And Merlyn schok his hed and
louȝh:
1285 „Now eouel thryft haue þow,
couioun, (f. 21 b)
þat þow spak so hyȝh þy rown:
Here comen þe kynges messan-
geres,
þat han me souȝt fer and neor,
For to haue myn heorte blod;
1290 Ryȝt now þey þenkyn in heore
mod,
For to sle me þis day,
Bote, by my trowthe, ȝef þat
y may,
Or þey departe awey fro me,
Wel gode freondes schal we
beo!“
1295 Merlyn anon to heom ran,
He grette heom faire, as he
wel kan,
And seide: „Welcom beo ȝe,
messangeres:
ȝe comen fro sir Fortageres;
Me to sle is al ȝoure þouȝt,
1300 þer of schule ȝe spede nouȝt,
For to beore ȝoure kyng my
blod;
þat neuer schal do him good,
For þey, þat tolde him þat
tydyng,
þey lowen on me a strong
lesyng,
1305 þat seide, my blod, wiþ owte
wrong,

1277) f. om. P. 1280) child P. 1282) þat] it add. P. þat þ.] they after
P. 1283) his sword out P. 1285) f. om. P. 1288) souȝt] both add. P. 1290)
Ryȝt] om. P. þen.] thinke itt P. 1292) Or] that add. P. part P. from P.
1296) greets P. 1297) & welcomed the messenger P. 1298) & sayes: yee
P. from P. Vortiger P. 1301) & for P. 1304) Lyed of P. 1305) & P.

- Schuld make his castel styf and
strong:
þauȝ al þe werk þer on was set,
Neo schulde hit stande neuer
þe bet.“
þeo messangeres haddyn wondur
ilkon
1310 And seiden to Merlyn þanne
anon:
„Hou konstow telle such priuete?
Tel vs þe soþe, we praiȝ þe,
þat we may haue verray toke-
nyng,
To avowe owr tale by fore þe
kyng!“
1315 Merlyn ladde heom a good pas,
Til he cam, þer his modur was;
Heo tolde heom al þe soþe
byfore,
How Merlyn was geten and bore,
And of his wisdam and of his
red,
1320 How he saued hire fro ded.
þeo messangeres, as y ȝow telle,
Al þat nyȝt þey conne per
dwelle;
Amorwe, sone as hit was day,
þey token leue to wende away,
1325 And also Merlyn þat tide
Rod on a palfray heom by syde,
And wentyn forþ al yfere
Toward þe kyng, sir Fortagere.
As þey þoruz þe contre nam,
1330 In a chepyng toun þey cam,
So þat Merlyn, as y þe telle,
Com, þer schon ware to selle.
A gret lawynȝg vp he nam;
þeo messangeres þo to him cam,
1335 Sone askeden him þo,

1307) f. om. P. 1309) ilkon] then P. 1310) þanne] om. P. anon]
o auf rasur geschr., in L. 1311) such], vs this P. 1312) we pr.] I pray
P. 1313) verray] om. P. tokeinge P. 1314) þe] our P. 1316) where P.
1320) & how P. from P. 1322) þat] om. P. þey c. þ.] there did P.
1323) Att Morrow P. as] when P. 1325) And] om. P. þat] ilke
add. P. 1327) in fere P. 1328) Tow. — sir] Towards king P. 1329)
came P. 1330) chep.] om. P. þey c.] their inne they tane P.
1331) þe] you P. 1332) þer] as add. P. 1333) laughter P. tooke P.
1334) þo to] fast on P. cam] can lokee P. 1335) & full s. P.

- Wher fore þat he lowȝ so.
þan seide Merlyn: „Seo ze nouȝt
þat ȝong mon, þat haþ schon
bouȝt
And strong leþer, to do heom
clowte,
1340 And gres, to smeore heom al
abowte: (f. 22a)
He wenyp to lyue, heom to weore,
Bote, by my sowle, y dar wel
sweore,
His wretched lif he schal forlete,
Er he come to his owne gate.“
1345 þeo messangeres, at þat tide
After þat man gon þey ryde
And fond him ded as any ston,
Er he hadde a forlong gon.
In þat town þey dwelled al nyȝt;
1350 On morwe, whan hit was day lyȝt,
þey dyȝt heore hors and made
heom ȝare,
In heore weye for to fare,
And, as þey wente in heore jornay
þorȝ a town of þat contray,
1355 He com by a chirche ȝard;
He mette a cors þyderward
Wiþ preostes, clerkes, syngynge
by fore;
þeo cors was on a bere bore;
Mony mon þer wiþ can gon.
1360 Merlyn byheold heom euer ilkon,
A gret lauȝhyng vp he nam,
þeo messangeres to him cam;
þeo messangeres to him rod,
Askeden him wiþ heorte good,
1365 Why he louȝ so schrylle.
Merlyn seide: „By godes wille,
Zef heo wiste, why hit weore,
Heo wolde þer fore lauhȝ wel
more;

1338) laughed P. 1338) The F. haþ sch.] the shoone hath P.
1339) f. om. P. 1341) wendes P. 1342) sowle] hood P. 1343) forgoe
P. 1344) Or that he is one gate come to. 1346) man] so P; om. L.
can P. 1348) Or that he P. 1351) horses P. 1352) On theire
journey P. 1353) on P. 1354) of] in P. 1356) course(!) P. 1357) pr.]
& add. P. 1358) corpes were (!) P. 1359) Mony] a add. P. 1361)
laughter he vptooke P. 1362) to h. c.] on him can looke P.
1363—67) & asked him with hart free, Why he laughed soe hartilye P.

- Among þis folk," he seide þan,
1870 "Y seo anold sely man,
þat doþ sore weope:
Him war betre skippe and lepe;
Anoþir y seo her go and synge:
He auȝhte betre his hondes
wrynge;
- 1875 Y schal telle ȝow, for why,
þat ȝe schal haue god rybawdy:
þat cors, þat ded is and cold,
Hit was a child of ten ȝer old;
þat ilke preost," he seide þo,
1880 "þat goþ by fore and syngeþ so,
He was þe fadir, þeo child byȝat;
And ȝef he weore byþouȝt of þat,
He scholde his hondes wrynge
sore
And for þat synne sorewe more,
1885 And now he syngeþ with ioye
and blis,
As hit neuer hadde beon his.
And ȝe seon þe sely housbonde
For sorwe and care wrynge his
hondes,
He no auȝt heom nouȝt to
wrynge,
1890 For ioye he auȝt skyppe and
synge;
þer fore he is a muche fool,
þat for his foman makiþ deol,
For he is ded, þe prestes fode,
þat neuer no scholde do him
gode."
- 1895 þeo messangeres euerilkon,
To þe childe modur heo ȝeoden
anon, (f. 22b)
And Merlyn in a litel þrowe
Made hire al to beon yknowe,

1869) He said: Amongst these folkes then P. 1870) silly P.
1871) sore] & fast add. P. 1872) He ought P. bet.] to add. P.
1873) An. — her] & others here P. 1874) That P. their P. hon.]
to add. P. 1875) telle—why] you tell certainlye P. 1876) ȝe — ryb.]
you may know the cause whye P. 1877) is] so P; om. (!) L. 1878)
Hit] om. P. 1881) fadir] that add. P. 1883) wold P. 1884) synne]
child L. 1885) And] om. P. syn.] danach ein buchst. ausrad, L. with]
so P; om. L. 1886] As the chyld had neuer P. 1887) ȝe s.] to see
P. 1889) f. om. P. 1891) mickle P. 1892) foomen P. 1893) f. om. P.
1896) heo ȝ.] went P. 1898) hire all] the mother P.

Wher fore heo neo couþe nouȝt
say nay,
1400 Bote euer heo preyzed him
nouȝt to say.
þenne weore þe messangeres
bliþe
And in heore weyze ryde swiþe;
And as heo ryden in heore way,
Hit feol apon þe þridde day,
1405 Whan hit was abowte hyȝh
pryme,
þan lowȝ Merlyn þe þridde
tyme.
þan axed þey alle yfere,
Why he made þo lauȝhwynge
chere.
Merlyn seide þo: „Ywis,
1410 þauȝz y lawȝe, no wondur is,
For siþþe þe time, þat ȝe ware
bore,
Such wondur herde ȝe neuer ore;
Y schal ȝow telle, wiþ owte oþ,
þat ȝe schule fynde treowe and
soþ;
1415 Herkneþ alle, wiþ owte wouȝh,
Y schal ȝow telle, why y
louȝh!
þis ilke day, by my treowþe,
In þe kynges court is mukil
reouþe
Of þe kynges chaumburleyn,
1420 For þe quene, soþ to sayn,
Hap lowen on hire a lesyng
strong,
Men wolen do hire to dep wiþ
wrong;
His chaumburleyn is a womman
And goþ in cloþyng as a man,
1425 And for heo is fair & bryȝt of
heowe,
þeo false quene, þat is vntreowe,

1399) neo] om. P. 1400) heo] om. P. them P. 1402) in —ryde] on their iourney ridden P. 1403) And] om. P. on P. 1404) was P. 1405) hyȝh] the P. 1407) in fere P. 1408) þo] such P. 1409) Merl s. þo] Then said M. P. 1410) There of P. 1412) beforne P. 1416) Y] danach s. verklext, L. 1415) f. om. P. 1418) court] house P. 1421) He hap (!) L. lyed P. him P. 1422) Men—dep] Therfore shee shall be dead P. 1423) For his P. 1424) in] the add. P.

Bysouȝte hire, to beon hire
leman derne,
And heo onswerde and can hire
werne;
Nede heo moste þat game forsake,
1430 For heo no hadde takil forþ to
take,
For to make hire no counfort,
For hire takil was to schort.
þer fore þe quene was a fool;
For, hadde heo wist of hire tol,
1435 And how schort hit was wrouȝt,
Heo neo hadde of hire loue
souȝt.
þe quene, for soþe, was amayed,
þouȝte wel, heo scholde beo
wryed,
And wende wel to haue beo
schent;
1440 Anon by fore þe kyng heo went
And seide, þat his chaumbur-
leyn
Wip streynþe hire wolde haue
forleyn.
þe kyng, for soþe, is wondur-
wroþ,
And anon he swor his ofþ,
1445 þat heo scholde beo drawe and
honge,
Bote, certes, hit is al wip
wronge;
þer fore on of ȝow wend hom
blywe
Al so swiþe as ȝe may dryue,
And sey to Fortager þe kyng:
1450 „þe quene hap lowen a strong
lesyng

1427) beon] om. (!) P. 1429) Nede] & sayd P. 1430) For noe
comfort shee wold her make P. 1431) f. om. P. 1434) witt P.
1436) Shee wold of loue asked her nouȝt P. 1437) for s.] forth-
with P. affrayd P. 1438) & wend P. heo—wr.] to have bee[n]
bewrayd P. 1439) wende—hane] & thought that shee shold P.
1440) & P. kyng] anon add. P. 1441) his] so P.; hire A. 1442)
Wip] danach streny, ausgestr., P. wold haue her P. 1443) for—
wondur] therof was wonderous P. 1444) anon—his] swore many
a great P. 1445) shee P. beo—honge] both hang & draw P. 1446)
& that were against the law P. 1447) on—wend] wend you P.
1448) As fast P. 1450) lowen] made P.

Apon hire chaumburleyn for
hate, (f. 23 a)
þer fore bid we, þat heo beo take,
And serche al abowte hire þan,
And ȝe schal fynde hire a
womman,
1455 And sey, y sent him so bode,
He schal hit fyndesōþ, for gode!“
A knyȝt þer was stowt and fer,
Gan to prike on his destrer,
þat he no made no targyng,
1460 Til he cam by fore þe kyng.
Whan he com in to þe halle,
Doun on kneos he gon to falle
And seide, as y fynde in boke:
„My lord þe kyng, god þe loke!
1465 Mony a contre we han went
On þy message, þer þou ows sent,
To seke a child of selcouþ
mounde,
And such on we han yfounde,
þat nis bote fyf wynter old;
1470 þow no herdest neuer of non
so bold;
He is cleped child Merlyng,
He kan telle al maner thyng,
Of al, þat was and now is,
He kan ȝow telle wel, ywis,
1475 And he kan telle ȝou ful wel,
What destourbeþ ȝoure castel,
Why hit may not stonde on
pleyn,
And al so of þy chaumburleyn,
þat þow hast mynt to drawe
and honge,
1480 He seiþ, for soþe, hit is wiþ
wronge,

1451) Upon his P. chaumburleyn, y corr. aus l, L. 1452) we] wē (!)
L; om. P. 1453) al ab. h.] the chamberlaine P, 1454) he P. hire]
shee is P. 1455) f. om. P. 1457) was] both add. P. fer] stearne P.
1458) & pricked forth the truth to learne P. 1459) & P. no]
om. P. 1462) on] his add. P. he g. to] can he P. 1463) f. om. P.
1465) & said thorrow many P. we han] he P. 1466) þer] as P.
1467) mounde] land P. 1468) such] a add. P. haue wee P. 1469)
is P. 1470) þow no h.] You heard P. of] om. P. 1471) Merline
P. 1472) man.] of add. P. 1474) tell you P. 1475) And] om. P.
1476) dest.] thing troubles P. 1478) your P. 1479) yee haue R.
1480) wiþ] for P.

For to sle a w^mman,
þat goþ in cloþyng as a man;
þer fore do, as we þe sayn:
Let do take þy chaumburleyn
1485 And of hire bondes hire vnbynde:
A w^mman fair þow schalt
hire fynde;
And bote hit beo so, wiþ ryȝt
lawe
Do me honge and sippē to-
drawe!“
Fortager awondred was,
1490 And alle, þat herden of þat cas;
He comaunded hise men alle,
His chaumburleyn brynge in
halle,
Anon hire serchede in þat
stounde,
And a w^mman heo was founde.
1495 Wroþ was þanne Fortager
And asked of þat messenger,
Who him tolde, heo was w^mman.
„For gode, sire,“ he seide þan,
„Merlyn was, þat þis gan say,
1500 Ryȝt as we came by þe way,
For he kan telle, and gabbe nouȝt,
Al þe þyng, þat euer was wrouȝt;
Al þat euer þow konst him
frayne,
He wol telle þe sop, certayne!“
1505 Fortager was glad and bliþe
And seide to þe messenger
swiþe:
„Y schal þe ȝeue lond and
plowȝ (f. 23 b)
And make þe riche man ynowȝh;
þer fore y comaunde now ryȝt,
1510 Duyk, baroun, eorl and knyȝt

1483) & th. P. we þe s.] I you fayne (!) R. 1484) & P. the P. 1485)
bondes] yee add. R. 1486) yee shall P. 1488) me] to add. P. sippē
to-] om. R. 1492) chamb.] to add. P. all (!) P. 1498) hire] the P.
serch.] r. ii. d. z. nachgetr., L. in] her R. 1495) was þ.] then was
sir P. 1497) told him he P. was] a add. P. 1498) gode] sooth P.
1499) Merl.] it add. P. can P. 1500) Ryȝt] om. P. rydden P. 1501) gabbe]
lye P. 1502) þe þ.] things P. were P. 1503) & all P. you can
P. saine P. 1504) þe] you R. 1507) þe] yee P. ȝeue] both add.
P. 1508) þe r. m.] yee a man right good P. 1509) now] anon P.
1510) erle, barron P.

Dyzhte heore hors and make
heom ȝare,
Forþ wiþ Fortager to fare!“
He no wolde no lenger byde,
Bote leop to hors and gan to ryde,
1515 To speke wiþ Merlyn þe ȝonge;
So glad he was of his comyng,
þat, whan hit was come to þe
nyȝt,
Wiþ Merlyn he mette ryȝt;
So sone as he him can mete,
1520 Wiþ faire wordes he can him
grete;
Of mony thynges heo spaken
þan,
Sum þer of telle y can.
Wiþ muche ioye, verrament,
To þe kynges court þey went,
1525 Warn mad wel at ese þat nyȝt.
On morwe, whan hit was day
lyȝt,
To þat steode þey went bydene,
þer þey scholde þeo castel
seone.
„Sone,“ he seide to Merlyn þan,
1530 „Tel me, child, ȝef þow can,
Why my castel in þis stounde
Ys euery nyȝt falle to grounde,
And why hit may stande nouȝt,
Of so strong thyng as hit is
wrouȝt!“
1535 þanne seide Merlyn to þe kyng :

Wiþ feyr speche & myld; (f. 30 a) 1050
Of many þynges þey spekyn
þan,
Of mo þan ich now telle can.
Alle wiþ joye, verrement,
Aȝen to his castel þe kyng ys
went,
Ful wel at ezse þey weren þat 1055
nyȝt.
And a morowe, wanne hit was
day lyȝt,
To a place þey ȝeden bydene,
Whare þey myȝtten þat castel
sene.
The kyng sente so Merlyn þanne:
„Tel me now, syre, yf þu canne, 1060
Why my castel in þys place,
þat ys so fast,
Euereyech nyȝt adoun ys cast,
And whi hit may stonde nouȝt,
Of so strong þyng as hit is
wrouȝt!“
þanne seyde Merlyn to þe kyng : 1065

1511) To d. P. horsses P.
1512) fare] so P; haue L. 1513)
Then wold he R. longer abyde P.
1514) leapt P. gan to] forth
gan P. 1516) For P. 1517) But P.
þe] om. P. 1519) As P. can him P.
1521) he spoke P. 1522) þer of]
of them P. 1523) ioye] & add.
P. 1525) Warn m. w.] & were P.
ese] all add. P. 1526) * & on the
P. day] om. P. 1528) *Where the
castle shold haue beeene P. 1524)
things P. rought(!) R.

1052) þan] corr. aus þat. now]
ü. d. z. nachgetr. 1056) vor 1555)
gestellt. 1055) ezse] ȝ ü. d. z.
geschr. 1059) kyng] ü. d. z. nach-
geatr. 1060) now] ü. d. z. geschr.
1064) as] þat, darüber as geschr.

- „Sire, þow schalt here a wond-
ur-thyng:
Here in þis ground arered in
deop
A water þer is strong and steep;
Vndur þe water arn stones two,
1540 Muchele and brode and longe
al so,
By neope þeo stones vndur þe
molde
Two dragons lyggen yfolde;
þat on is whyt so mylkes rem,
þat oþir is red so fuyres glem,
1545 Wel grisly þey arn of syzt boþe
And fareþ to gedre, as þey
weore wroþe;
And euery day, when hit is nyzt,
þey bygynnen a stark fyzt,
þat þoruz þeo streynthe of heore
blast
1550 þy werk con þey doun cast;
And zef þat dragons weore
away,
þan myzhte þy werkmen vche
day
Make þy werk ryzt at þy wille,
To stonde boþe strong and
stille:
1555 Do now loke, and þow schalt seo,
þat hit beo sop, y telle þeo!“
- „Syre, wiþ outen eny lesyng,
Her in þe grounde, a zerdes
dep, (f. 30 b)
Is a water strong & step,
And vnder þe water buþ stones
twey,
Moche & long, for sop to sey; 1070
And vnder þe stones ryzt at
þe mold
Twey dragons þar lyggen yfold;
þat on ys wyzt as melkes reme,
And þat other ys reed as feyr
ys leme,
Grysly of syzt þey buþ bothe, 1075
And þey to gederes buþ swythe
wroþe;
And euermo, whan hit ys nyzt,
þey byghynneþ harde to fyzt,
And þrouzt þe strenthe of here
blast
Al þy werk ys ouer cast; 1080
And yf þe dragons weren a way,
þan myzt þy werkmen euerych
day
Maken þy werk al to þy wille,
And hit woldestond bothe strong
& stille: (f. 31 a)
Lat men loke, & þu schalt seo, 1085
þat hit ys sop, þat ych telle þeo!“

1536) Yee shall P. wonderous
P. 1537) ar. in] om. P. 1538)
*Is a water P. 1540) *Much &
strong & broad alsoe P. 1542)
yf.] *there foulde P. 1543) The
P. as milke P. 1544) The P.
is] om. P. so f.] as any P.
1545) Wel] om. P. 1546) þey w.
wr.] the wroþe P. 1548) strong
P. 1550) The P. the can P. 1551)
the P. 1552) þy] they(!) P. werk.
worke add. P. *euerye P. 1553)
& make P. ryzt—wille] both
stronge and still P. 1554) *& to
P. boþe—stille] att thy owne will
P. 1556) *is P. sop] *that add. P.

1088) þy] þe, von jüngerer hd.
corr. in þy.

Fortager comaunded anon
To his werkmen euerychon,
Fiftene þousand and zet mo,
1560 He bad heom alle loke, zef hit
ware so,
Anon þey doluen in þe grounde,
(f. 24^a)
And a water þer þey fonde,
Among heom alle, sop to telle,
þey maden two deope welles;
1565 Al þe water þey brouȝt out þo;
And whan þey hadden so ydo,
By neopen at þeo watres
grounde
Two grete stones þey founde;
Mony men redy þer weoren,
1570 þeo two stones vp to rerен;
And whan þat þey weoren vp
yrent,
Two dragons þer weoren ybent
Wiþ longe tailes feole fold,
And fond ryȝt as Merlyn told:
1575 þat on dragon was red so fuyr,
Wiþ bryzes of eyȝne as basyn
cler;

His tayl was gret and noȝyng
smal,

Fortiger comaundede anon
Alle his werkmen euerychon,
Vif þousand & wel mo,
He bad hem loke, yf hit 1490
were so.
And anon þey doluen in þe
grounde,
And a fayr water þar þey founde,
And anon amonges hem alle,
wiþ outen les,
þey made twey depe welles,
And al þat water þey brouȝten 1095
oute þo;
And whanne þey hadde ydo so,
By nethen þe welles grounde
Twey gretstones þar þey founde;
Many a man þan redy were,
þo two stones for to arere, 1100
And whanne þe stones weren vp
went, (f. 31^b)
Twey gret dragons þar þey
founden ybent,
Wiþ long tayles fele fold,
And founden hit ryȝt as Merlyn
haþ told:
þat on was red as eny feyr, 1105
Wiþ eyȝen brod as a basyn
cleer;
Powes he hadde gret & longhe,
And feyr out of his mouþ
sponghe.
His body was gret & noȝyng
smal,

1558) All P. 1560) alle] om.
P. zef] whether P. 1563) alle]
the add. P. 1564) two d. w.] a
full deepe well P. 1565) & P.
so ydo] done soe P. 1567) By—
watres] Beneath the watter in
the P. 1568) stones] there add.
P. 1569) redy þ.] there they P.
1571) þat] om. P. hent P. 1573)
Foule they were for to behold
P. 1574) fond] itt add. P. 1575)
The P. 1576) br. of] bright P.
bason P.

His body was vnruyde wiþ al.

His schaft may nomon telle,

1580 He loked as a feond of helle.

þe whyte dragoun lay him by,
Steorne of lok and grysly,

His mouþ and þrote zoned wide,
þeo fuyr barst owt on ilk a side;

1585 His tayl was ragged as a feond,

And apon his tayles ende
þer was schaped a grysly hed,
To fyȝte wiþ þe dragoun red;
For Merlyn seide, for soþe
aplyȝt,

1590 So grysly weore þey boþe of syȝt,
Whan þey scholde vp aryse,

Mony a mon þer schal agryse.
Anon þey rysen of heore den,

þer weore ferd mony men;

1595 Al þat folk, þer was þat tide,
þer dorste non lengor abide.

1579) shape P. 1580) as] like
P. 1584) ilk a] *euery P. 1585)
as] *like P. 1588) that P. 1589)
I plight P. 1590) they were P. of]
in P. 1591) That when P. vprise P.
1592) þer] they P. 1593) ryssden,
d ü. d. z. geschr. P; *out add. P.
1594) Then was P. many a man P.
1595) Of all the P. 1596) þer
om. R. non l.] not one of
them P.

His tayle was wounder-row 1110
wiþ al.

His strengthe ne myȝt noman
telle,

And he lokede ryȝt as a feend
of helle.

The whyte dragon lay by hym þo,
Wiþ longhe powes & scharpe
al so

And wiþ gret tuskes, þat croked 1115
were,

And he made noyse & a fowle
bere,

And wiþ his mouþ he zenede
wyde, (f. 32a)

The feyr barst out in euereych
syde;

Al glewyng was his wombe,
His tonghe rend ryȝt as a 1120
bronde;

His tayl was raggud lych a
feend,

And vpon þe tayles end
þare was a gresly hed,
For to fyȝten wiþ þe reed;
For Merlyn seyde, soþ ryȝt, 1125

So gresly þey weren of syȝt,
For whanne þey gonne for to
aryse,

Manye a man schulde agryse.
þe dragons resen vp out of
here den,

And aferd were þo manye men; 1130
And þe folk, þat was þar by
syde,

No lengore dorsten þare abyde.

1118) lay] danach by, ausgestr.
1118) feyr] ü. d. z. nachgetr.

An hondred flowen at on hép,
So þat eche vp othere bygonne
to lep,
And some for dred fellyn a 1135
sowe; (f. 32b)
Merlyn smot his gloue & lowe.

Some fallen for ferd in *swowz*,
And Merlyn clapte his hond
and lowz.
þe rede dragoun and þeo white,
1600 Harde to gedre gon þay smyte

Wiþ mouth, powe and wiþ tayl,
By tweone heom was ful hard
batayl,
þat þeo eorþe donede þo

And lodly weder wax þer þo.
1605 So strong fuyr þey casten anon,
þat þe pleynes þer of schon,
And sparklede abowte bryȝt,

As doþ þe fuyr from þondur lyȝt.
So þey fouȝhte, for soþe to say,

1610 Al þe loneg somores day;
þey no stynten neuere of fyȝtyng,
Til þe euesong con rynge.
So in þat tyme, as y ȝow telle,
þe rede dragoun, þat was so
felle,
1615 Drof þeo white feor adoun
In to þe pleynes a gret vyroun,
(f. 24b)
Til þey come to a valeye,
þere þey rested heom boþe
tweye,
Wel þe montaunce of a whyle,

þe reed dragon & þe white,
To gederys þey gonue for to
smyte
Bothe wiþ mouþ & wiþ tayle,
By twexen hem was a strong 1140
batayle,
And al þe eorþe bygan to
denyen þo
And gastlych wedyr wax also.
So gret feyr þey casten vp anon,
þat al þe playn þer of schon,
And þat sparclede abouȝten so 1145
bryȝt,
Ryȝt as hit were þonder lyȝt.
And so þey fouȝten, as ych
ȝow say,
Al þe long somerys day,
þat þey ne stenten of fyȝtyng,
(f. 33a)
Til euesong bygan to ryng. 1150
So þat tyme, as y ȝow telle,
The rede dragon was so felle

And drof þe white fer adoun,
Out of þe playn a gret vyroun,

Tyl he com to a valeye, 1155
And þare þey gonue to resten
beye;
þey ne resteden but a whyle,

1597) slowz L. 1597) f. om. P.
1601) *Both with P. powe] om. P.
1602) ful] *a P. 1603) don.] quaked
P. 1604) weder] d corr. aus? L.
per þo] *alsoe P. 1607) f. om. P.
1611) They never stinted their
fighting P. 1612) þe] men to P.
con] did P. 1613) as] so P; al
L. 1615) feor a.] from a downe
P. 1616) verome P. 1617) into P.
*& there P. 1619) f. om. P.

1138) gonue] g corr. aus?
1141) deuyen ms.

- 1620 þat a mon myȝte gon a myle,
And per þe whyte couered his
flyȝt
And wax egre for to fyȝt,
And egrely, wiþ owte fayle,
þeo rede dragoun he gon assaille
- 1625 And drof þeo rede ryȝt aȝeyn,
Til he cam in to þe pleyn,
And per þeo whyte anon ryȝt
Hente þe rede wiþ al his myȝt,

And to þeo grounde he him
cast
- 1630 And wiþ þe fuyr of his blast
Al to gedre brente þe rede,

þat neuere of him was founden
schrede,
Bote dost vp on þe ground lay;
And þe white went away,
- 1635 þat neuer siben after þan
Neo herde mon, wher he bycam.
penne seide Merlyn þe zyng
Among heom alle by fore þe
kynge,
And seide to him wiþ wordes
bolde:
- 1640 „Now is hit sop, þat y ȝow
tolde,
Hit is sop, þow may hit seo,
per fore for loue y prayze þe,

Do now þe clerkes by fore me
brynghe,
þat lowen on me þat lesynge,
- 1645 And y schal aske heom by forn,
- þe montaunce of a myle,
þo þe white kudde his myȝt

And wax fel & fresch to fyȝt, 1160
And egerlich, wiþ outen fayle,
The rede dragon he bygan to
asayle
And drof þe rede aȝeyn,
Tyl he com vpon þe playn,
And þare þe white anon ryȝt(f.33^b) 1165
Hente þe rede wit strenthe of
myȝt,
And sone to grounde he hym
caste,
For alle þe power of his fnaste
To dust brende þe dragon, þat
was reed,
So þat neuere of hym was founde 1170
no schred,
But dust on þe grounde lay;
And þanne þe white fley away,
þat neuere zit wanst man,
Whare þe white bycom after þan.
- þan seyde Merlyn þe bold: 1175

„Syre kyng, þat tale, þat ich ȝow
told,
Hit is sop, as ze may se,
þar fore y praye, syre, for loue
of me,
Lat þy clerkys by for me
brynghe,
þat lowen on me a gret lesynge 1180

¹⁶²¹⁾ recouered *P.* ¹⁶²²⁾ waxed
P. ¹⁶²⁵⁾ *f. om.* *P.* ¹⁶²⁷⁾ whte (!) *P.*
r.] with all his might *P.* ¹⁶²⁸⁾ anon
wiþ—myȝt] anon right *P.* ¹⁶³¹⁾
gedre] he *add.* *F.* ¹⁶³²⁾ of h.]
after *P.* ¹⁶³⁵⁾ & *P.* after] that time
P. ¹⁶³⁶⁾ Heard noe *P.* ¹⁶⁴¹⁾ þow]
*yee *P.* ¹⁶⁴²⁾ for l.] *sir king *P.*
¹⁶⁴³⁾ now] yee *P.* by f.] afore *P.*
¹⁶⁴⁴⁾ laid *P.* ¹⁶⁴⁵⁾ y sch. a.] he
asked *P.* heom] the king *add.* *P.*

¹¹⁶⁵⁾ anon] darüber mit hellerer
tinte wiþ geschr. ¹¹⁶⁷⁾ sone] white,
ausgestr. und sone mit hellerer
tinte übergeschr. ¹¹⁶⁸⁾ For] von
jüngerer hd. hinzugef.

Why þey wolde, my blod war
lorn.
þey onswerde wiþ wordes mylde
Dredfully to þat childe
And seiden, þey sawe witerly,
1650 By neopen þeo weolkene þey
sawe a sky,
þat schewed heom al his byȝate,
How he was in eorþe ylaten,
And þoruz his blod þe kynges
castel
Scholde stonde strong and wel;
1655 „So wende we, verrament:
Do now wiþ ows ȝoure talent!“
þanne onswerde Merlyn þo:
„He was a schrewe, þat sche-
wed so!
þat sky,“ he seide, „þat sche-
wed ȝow þat,
1660 He was þeo fader, þat me byȝat,
And for y serue him nouȝt at
wille,
He wolde do my blod to spille;
And for he haþ so bygyled ȝow,
Sire Fortager, now preyȝ y ȝow,
1665 þat ȝe graunten heom to lyue,

And al my wrappē y heom
forgyue.“
þe kyng heom graunted al so
blyue,
þo weore þe clerkes glad and
blyþe;

þat þu graunte hem me to leue,
(f. 34 a)
And alle my wrap iche hem
forȝeue.“
The kyng hit grauntede al so
swythe,
þanne were þe clerkes swythe
blythe;

1646) my] his P. 1647) & the
P. 1648) to þat] before the P.
1650) Beneath P. þey s.] om. P.
weolk.] danach asyȝt, ausgestr., P.
1651) & P. him P. begott P. 1652) on
P. lote P. 1654) stonde] both add.
P. 1655) f. om. P. 1657) onsw.] said
P. 1658) schewed] told you P. 1662)
Therfore he P. do] om. P. to]
om. P. 1663) for] that add. P.
beguiled you soe P. 1664) now—
ȝow] I pray you thoe P. 1665)
grant P. to] their P. 1666) And]
om. P. 1667) heom—bl.] his ask-
ing granted *swithe P. 1668)
Then P.

- Forþ heo wenten to heore yn,
1670 And wiþ heom wente child
Merlyn.
Merlyn was wiþ Fortager
(f. 25^a)
To his counsail al þat zer;
þoruz his wisdam and his coun-
sail
þeo castel was strong, wiþ owte
fayle.
1675 And whan þe castel was al
wrouȝt,
Eorles and barouns þe kyng
bysouȝt,
þat heo scholde wite at Mer-
lyn þo,
Why þat þeo dragouns fouȝ-
ten so;
Hit was sum tokenyng, þey
seiden alle,
1680 Of sum aventure, þat scholde
byfalle.
Merlyn was brouȝt by fore þe
kyng,
He him asked, wiþ owte lesyng,
What þat tokenyng myȝte beone,
þeo fyȝtyng of þeo dragouns
kene.
1685 Merlyn stod and made daunger,
þenne byspak him Fortager
And seide: „Merlyn, bote þow
me telle,
Anon y schal þe quelle!“
1690 Þanne onswerde Merlyn, aplyȝt,
Wiþ gret wrathþe anon ryȝt
And seide: „Sire, wiþ owte
wene,
- þe kyng wente þan to his yn, 1185
And wiþ hym wente chyld
Merlyn.
Merlyn was wiþ Fortyger
Chef of his consayle al þat zer,
And þrouȝ his wysdom & his
rad
The castel of Salisbury was 1190
ymad.
And whanne þe castel was
ywrouȝt,
Erlis, barons hym bysouȝt,
þat he schuld weten of Merlyn
þo,
Why þe dragons fouȝten so,
For hit was som tokenyng, þey 1195
seyde alle, (f. 34^b)
Of wondres, þat schuld byfalle.
Merlyn was brouȝt by forn þe
kyng,
And he hym askede of þat þyng,
What tokenyng hit myȝte bene,
þat þe dragons fyȝt was so kene. 1200
Merlyn stod & made danger,
And þanne byspak syre Fortiger
And seide: „Merlyn, but þu me
telle,
Anon y schal don þe quelle!“
1205 And Merlyn seyde þan, aplyȝt,
Wiþ gret wrethe anon ryȝt
He seyde: „Syre kyng, wiþ
outen op,

1669) to h. yn] both more &
mynne P. 1670) child] om. P.
1673) and his] & P. 1674) strong
— f.] built strong & well P.
1677) he wold know P. 1678)
þat] om. P. 1680) That P. 1681)
om. P. 1682) & he P. 1683)
beone] meane P. 1686) him] *sir
P. 1688) þe q.] cause thee to
be quell P. 1691) Sire] om. P.

1195) was] om.(!) ms. seyde]
danach þan, ausgestr.

- þat day schaltow neuer seone,
þauȝ þow take þy sweord in
honde,
Me to sle or brynge in bonde:
1695 Zet may þow faile of al þy fare,
As doþ þe grehound of þe hare!
Y warne þe wel, sire Fortager,
Y no ȝeue no thyng of þy
daunger;
Bote ȝef þow wolt me fynde
borwe,
1700 þat þow schalt do me no sorwe,
þan wol y telle þe al by dene,
þe fyȝhtyng of þeo dragouns
kene;
And bote þow so wolt, by oure
lord,
Y no wol þe telle neuer a word!"
1705 Alle þe barouns and þe kyng.
Hadden wondur of his onswер-
yng;
Two barouns þe kyng him fond,
þeo beste, þat weoren in þe
lond,
And þer to sworen on a bok,
1710 þat men schulde him non harme
loke.
þan he tolde al by dene
þe fyȝhtyng of þeo dragouns
kene,
þanne seide Merlyn to þe kyng:
"Sire, vndurstond my sayzyng:
1715 þe red dragoun, so foul of syȝt,
Bytokenyþ þy seolute and þy
myȝt,
And þoruz þy false procuryng
Moyne was slayn, þe ȝonge
kyng.

1692) shall P. neuer] *be add.
P. 1693) If P. 1696) As the hound
doth P. 1697) you P. 1698) no]
om. P. 1699) me f.] find me a P.
1701) you P. by] *danach* d, *ver-*
klext, L. 1710) men] *danach* s,
verklext, L. 1708—12) om. (!) P.
1714) vndurst.] well add. P. 1716)
and] all add. P. 1717) For P.

1210a) als custos erhalten.

- þow sawe, þe rede þe whyte
drof (f. 25^b)
- 1720 Feor doun in to þe groff:
þat bytokenyþ þeo ayres, þow
dudeſt fleme
Wip wronge owt of heore ryȝt
rewme,
And al þe folk, þat wiþ heom
heold,
Boþe in towne and in feld.
- 1725 þeo whyte dragoun doþ signefyȝe
þe ryȝhte heires han gret envye,
þat þow holdust al heore lond
Wip wronge in þyn owne hond;
And al so þe whyte, þow say,
- 1730 Kouorede his flyght in þe valay
And drof þe rede dragoun
agayn,
Til he com in to þe playn,
And to grunde he him kast
And wiþ þe fuyr of his blast
- 1735 Al to powder brente þe rede,
þat neuere of him was founde
schrede:
þat bytokenyþ þeo heires by
ȝonden,
þat arn waxen and socour
founden
And arn redy, wiþ mony a
knyȝt
- 1740 Aȝeyns þe to holde fyȝt;
In to þis castel þey schule þe
dryue
Wip þy childre and wiþ þy
wyue,
And alle, þat buþ wiþ þe penne,
In to þe ground men schal ȝow
brenne;
- 1745 And þe kyng, sire Aungys,

1719) see P. rede] dragon add. P. 1721) ayres] that add. P. 1722)
heore r.] the P. 1723) Soe P. 1725) doth signifie P; signefyȝeþ
A. 1728) Against them with much wronge P. 1729) And] om.
P. þow s.] can you well say P. 1730) flyght] flym L. Recovered
his flyght into P. 1732) in] om. P. 1733) to] the add. P. 1735)
pow.] he add. P. 1736) founde] a add. P. 1737) by ȝ.] soe younge P.
1738) þat a.] Are now P. 1740) Against P. 1742) child P. wiþ]
om. P. 1743) þat] om. P. beene P. 1744) men] om. P. ȝow] the P.

Schal beo slayn and holde no
 pris;
His kynrade and þyn al so
Schal don Engelond mukil wo.
 þe hed apon þe whytes tayl,
1750 þat bytokenyþ, wiþ owte fayle,
 þe heires, þat buþ treowe and
 gode,
Schal distryen al þy blode.
Sire Fortager, þis is þe tokenyng
 Of þe dragouns fyȝhtyng:
1755 As y þe seyze, wiþ owten oþ,
 þow schalt hit fynde siker and
 sop!“
Stille him stod sire Fortager
And bot his lippe wiþ dreory
 cher
And seide to Merlyn: „Wip
 owte faile,
1760 þow most me telle sum coun-
 saile,
Wip owte chest, wiþ owte stryf,
How y may best saue my lif.“
þan Merlyn gan stande stille
 And onswerede him wiþ wordes
 grylle
1765 And seide: „Sire, wiþ owte
 wene,
þus hit moste nedes beone,
And þer fore, so god ȝeue me
 rest,
Y no can no red, bote do þy
 best!“
Fortager seide: „Bote þow me
 telle, (f. 26a)
1770 Anon y schal do þe quelle!“
He start vp and wolde haue
 him rawȝt,
Bote, where he was, he no
 wiste nouȝt;
So sone he was awayȝe þan,
 þat in þe halle wiste no man,

1747) kingdome P. 1749) vpon P. whytes] white dragons P.
1756) troth P. 1760) You P. tell me P. 1761) chest w. o.] any
more P. 1762) leade P. 1763) f. om. P. 1765) And] Then Merlyne
P. Sire] om. P. 1766) must itt P. 1767) god ȝ. me] haue I P.
1668) I can P. 1769) þow] om. P. 1771) him haue wrought P. 1772)
no] om. P. 1773) awayȝe] sehr verlöseht in L.

1775 Hyȝh no lowȝh, sweyn ny grom,
þat wiste, wher Merlyn bycom.
þo wente Merlyn hastily
To þe hermyte, þat hyȝhte Blasy,
And tolde him, wiþ owte lessyng,
1780 How he hadde serued þe kyng,
And tolde him, wiþ owte wrong,
þe fyȝhtyng of þe dragouns
strong,
Of þe rede and of þe whyte;
He dude a gret bok sone wryte

1785 And tolde, þat þeo rede dragoun
Bytokenyþ gret destrucciou
þoruz Fortageres kynde, ywys,
And þe heþene kyng Aungys;

In Engelond schulde beo afterward

1790 Strong bataile and happes hard.

Al þat Merlyn tolde and seide,
In scripture hit was leyde,
Of alle þe auentures, y vndur-
stonde,
þat euer schal beo in Enge-
londe;

1795 Bote for hit is so derk þyng,

þat Merlyn made in his seyzyng,
Fewe men, wiþ owte wene,

Of þe rede & of þe white, (f. 35a)
Anon þe heremyte a book dede
wryte;
Merlyn tolde, þat þe rede dragon
Bytokenede gret dystruxion
þoruz Fortiger is kende, ywys, 1215
And þoruz þe Denmarkes kyng
Amygys:

þorwȝ here kende, wiþ outen
wene,
Englond schal be brouȝt in
moche tene,
Strong bataile & happes hard,

þat schul comen her afterward; 1220
Some schul fallen ryȝt sone, &
han byfallen al so,
And zut ys not Merlyns pro-
phecie al ydo,
For Merlyn tolde hit & sayde,
And in þe Bruyt he hit layde,
Of alle þe auntres, ich vnder- 1225
stonde,
þat euere schul byfalle in Eng-
londe;
So derk hit ys & so wonderful
þyng,
þat Merlyn seyde in his techyng,
Wel fewe clerkys, wiþ outen
wene, (f. 35b)

¹⁷⁷⁵) nor P. nor P. ¹⁷⁷⁶)
Merl.] was add. P. ¹⁷⁷⁷) Then
P. ¹⁷⁸⁴) A great booke he did
endite P. ¹⁷⁸⁶) much P. ¹⁷⁸⁷)
kinred P. ¹⁷⁹⁰) battailes P.
¹⁷⁹²) scr.] good writting P. ¹⁷⁹⁴)
shold fall P. ¹⁷⁹⁵) derk] a
add. P. ¹⁷⁹⁷) þat add. (!) LP.
weene P; wone A.

¹²²¹) fallen] danach eine ab-
kürzung für sir, ausgestr.

Konne vndurstonde, what hit
may mene;

Bote, *ȝef* *ȝe* wolen a stounde
dwelle,
1800 Of opir thyng y wol *ȝow* telle,

Of þe hende childre two,
Vter and Pendragon al so.
Y tolde yow, y vndurstonde,

How þey weore flemed owt
of londe;

1805 Now wol y telle *ȝow* for certayn,
In what maner þey com agayn
Wip gret streynthe and power,
And how þey drof sire Fortager
Forþ in to his castel strong
1810 For his vnryzt and his wrong,
And how þey brente him, flesch
and bon,
And how þey can kyng Aungys slon;
Y wol *ȝow* telle, in what manere:
Listenyþ now, and *ȝe* may here!

Vnderstondyþ, what hit wold 1280
mene,
And, for hit is so derk ywrouzt,
Of þat book ne telle ich ryȝt
nouȝt;
But, if *ȝe* wollyþ a while dwelle,
Of other auntres ich wolle *ȝow*
telle.

Now herkenep boþe old & *ȝong*, 1285
And *ȝe* schul heren a mery
talkyng
Of þe heende children to,
Vter & Pendragon al so.
Here by forn hit is ywrete, ich
vnderstonde,
How þey were flemyd out of 1240
Englonde;
In to Garscoyne þey weren fled
And wiþ here frendes þare yfed;
And whanne þey weren woxe
of age,
þey þouȝten to chalange here
herytage,
And þarforþ y wole *ȝow* sayn, 1245
How þey comen in to Englund
agayn
Wiþ feyr strengthe & gret power,
(f. 36a)
And how þey dreuen syre For-
tiger
In to his castel, þat was so strong,
For his treson & for his wrong; 1250
And how þey hym brende wiþ
flesch & bon,
And how þey bygonne kyng
Aungis to slon;
Iche wele *ȝow* telle, in what
manere:
Lesteneþ now, & *ȝe* schul here!

1798) may] om. P. 1799) *ȝef*] on P. 1800) things P. 1803) yow y] as I you P. 1804) of] the add. P. 1805) for] in P. 1808) he draue P. 1810) and] for add. P. 1814) you shall P.

1230) Vnd.] nouȝt add. (!) ms.

1815 A mury tyme hit is in May,
Whan spryngyþ þe somores day

1820 And damyseles caroles lediþ,
On grene wode fowles grediþ.
So in þat tyme, as ȝe may here,
Two barouns com to Fortagere

1825 And seiden: „My lord þe kyng,
We haue ȝow brouȝt an hard
tydyngh
Of Pendragon, þat is þy fo,

And of Vter, his broþir, al so:
þey arn come in to þis lond
Wiþ mony a knyȝt douȝhty of
hond; (f. 26^b)

þey no wolen stynte nouȝt,
Til þat þow beo to grunde
brouȝt;

1830 þey arn at Wynchestre al most,
per fore send abowte in hast
To alle þy freondes, y þe rede,
For þow no haddest neuer so
much nede!“
Vp him starte Fortageres
And clepede to him messangeres,
1835 To Wynchestre he heom sent
And bad heom, þoruȝ his com-
aundement,

1815) The merryest P. 1816)
Then P. 1817) f. om. P. 1820)
The P. 1822) ȝow br. an] brought
you P. 1827) And they will P.
1828) þat] om. P. 1832) no] om.
P. so much] so P: er L. 1834)
called P.

A mery tyme is in May, 1255
þanne bygynnyþ þe someres day,
þanne spryngyþ boþe corn &
gras, & leues wexyþ grene,
Moche merthe & solas in euerych
town schal bene.

In þat tyme, as ȝe may here,
The barons come to syre For- 1260
tiger

And seyden: „My lord, syre kyng,
Whe brengheþ to þe an hard
tydyngh

Of Pendragon, þat is þy fo,
(f. 36^b)

And of his brother Vter also,
þat buþ come in to Englund 1265
Wiþ many a douȝty knyȝt of
hond;

So moche folk comeþ, soþ to say,
þat noman hem nombre may,
Wiþ helme on hefd & bronye
bryȝt,

And comeþ hedurward, wiþ þe 1270
to fyȝt.

þey sweryþ, þat þei nellyþ
stynte nouȝt,

Tyl þu be to deþe brouȝt;

For nouȝt þey willyþ abyde,
Nyȝt & day þey willyþ ryde,
And buþ at Wynchestre al mast; 1275
þar fore sende aboute in gret hast
To al þy frendes fer & ner,
þe to helpen wiþ al here power.

1258) grene] ne ist weggeschnitten.

- Aȝeyn Vter and Pendragoun
þey schulde schutte þe ȝates anon,
As þey wolde his loue wynne,
1840 þey schold nouȝt lete heom come þer ynne,
And he wolde come, wiþ owte ȝelp,
Wip mony a mon heom to helpe.
Oþir messangeres he sent, ywis,
To þe heþene kyng Aungys
1845 And bad him come to helpe at nede
Wip al þe folk, he myȝhte owt lede,
For to fyȝhte aȝeyn his fon,
þat weore come him to slon.
Whan þe kyng Aungys was come,
1850 And heore armes haddyn ynome,
þey prykedyne faste anon
Toward Wynchester euerychon;
Her þey haluendel com þare,
Vter and Pendragon ware þare;
1855 þey ware come Wynchestre so nyȝh,
And heore baner heo reryd an hyȝh,
Armes heo schewed ryche ykore,
þat hadde beon heore fadres by fore.
þeo burgoys, þat þe baner kneow,
1860 banne at furst gon heom rewe
þe dep of Constaunce þe kyng,
And þat Moyne was slawe so ȝyng,
And seide, Fortager was traytour in lym and lyth
And al, þat euer heold him wiþ,
1865 And seiden, þey wolde lete in to þe toun
Boþe Vter and Pendragon
And sese þer in to heore honde,
For þey weore heyres of þat londe.
þey settin open þe ȝates wyde
1870 And letten Pendragon yn ryde,
And Vter, his broþir, al so,

1837) Against P. 1840) þer] om. P. 1841) wiþ o. z.] anon right
P. 1842) To helpe them with all his might P. 1843) sent] *danach*
anon, *ausgestr.*, L. ywis] anon P. 1844) þe h.] om. P. A.] soone
add. P. 1846) folk] that *add.* P. owt] om. P. 1847) against P.
1849) þe] om. P. kyng] ü. d. z. *nachgetr. in L.* 1850) The way to
Winchester they nume P. 1851) f. om. P. 1853) & or they were
halfe way there P. 1854) ware þ.] comen weare P. 1855) þey
w. c.] To P. W.] towne *add.* P. 1856) heore—reryd] reard their
banners P. 1857) the P. yk.] there P. 1859) Then the burgesse
P. they banners P. 1860) banne at] Att the P. gon] he can P.
1861) Constantine P. 1862) þat] of P. M.] that *add.* P. 1863) was]
a *add.* P. in—lyth] om. P. 1864) euer—wiþ] wold him succor P.
1867) hands P. 1868) weore] right *add.* P. the P.

- And alle, þat come wiþ heom þo;
þey ȝoldyn heom boþe toun and tour
And duden heom ful gret honour,
1875 þat euermore Wynchestre after þan
Gret þank and freodam of heom wan.
And whan Fortager, þat felle,
þe soþe tidyng herde telle,
þat Vter and Pendragon
1880 Ware leten in to Wynchestre toun,
For wrathþe he was nyȝh owt of wit
And seide, hit scholde heom sowre sitte;
He comaunderd his men fast, (L f. 27a)
To pryme to Wynchestre in hast.
1885 And whan Pendragon had vndurnomen,
þat Fortager was þider ycomen,
He comaunderd anon þan
To horse and armes ilke a man.
þey casten open þe ȝates wide,
1890 And alle þey gonnew owt ryde
And dyȝhten heom, wiþ owte faile,
To ȝene sir Fortager bataile.
Bote þe Englyshe barouns al yfere,
þat war come wiþ Fortagere,
1895 Whan þay conne þat folk seon,
þat som whyle hadde heore kynne beon,
Wiþ Fortager was mony a knyȝt,
þat kneow þe baner anon ryȝt;
Wel a powsand and mo, per weore,
1900 þat hadde serued heore fadir byfore,
Seiden, Fortager was fals in felde
And al, þat euer wiþ him heold.
To Fortager þey ran anon
And woldyn haue slayn him anon;
1905 þey haddyn mynt a slayn him þere,
Bote al to litel was heore powere;
For aȝeyn on of heom
Fortager hadde twenty men,
þat weore comen al to gedre,

1872) them 2 P. 1873) & yeelden to them P. 1875) euer after
P. after] om. P. 1876) of h.] om. P. 1877) When that P. the
P. 1878) tydings B. 1881) f. om. P. 1883) Then he P. 1884) goe P.
1885) had vnd.] vndername P. 1886) was] did P. come P. 1887)
f. om. P. 1888) He cast P. 1890) can P. 1893) in fere P. 1895) þat]
they P. 1896) kynne] mit dunklerer tinte ü. d. z. nachgetr., L. That
were some time of their kine P. 1898) banners P. 1899) pows. and
mo] 100 P. 1900) byf.] deere P. 1901) & s. P. 1902) wiþ] mit
dunklerer tinte ü. d. z. nachgetr. in L. 1903) anon] soone P. 1904)
woldyn] thought for to P. 1905) a] to haue P. 1907) against P.

- 1910 Wiþ kyng Aungys þider.
Kyng Fortager and kyng Aungys
For wrathþe weore neor wode, ywis;
He comaunded al his rowte,
To bysette heom al abowte,
1915 And swar, þer schulde askape non,
þat þey ne scholde beo slayn vchon.
Schaftes þey brak and launces drowen,
Monye of þe barouns þey slowen,
Bote þey weore so stronge and wyȝt
1920 And foughтен aȝeyn wiþ al heore myȝt,
For noȝyng wolde þey ȝelde heom þan,
Bote slowen mony an heþen man;
Faste on heom þey gon to hewe,
Bote, allas, þey weore to fewe,
1925 For þoruȝ þat contek and þat stryf
Half an hundred laftan heore lif.
Bote a baroun was so strong,
þat askaped owt of þat þrong;
He priked his stede wiþ gret raundoun,
1930 Til he com to Pendragon;
He saide: „þow art kynde eyr of londe,
To my tale þow vndurstonde:
For þe loue of þy broþir and þe
Hider y come, to helpe þe;
1935 þer fore arn we now yschenȝt,
For we wiþ wille to þe went;
Kyng Fortager and kyng Aungys
Wiþ mony a Sarsyn of gret pris
Schal ows hewe doun to grounde,
1940 Bote ȝe helpe ows in þis stounde;
And for þat we arn schent for þe,
Go help ows now, par charite!“
Hit was no ned, to bydde heom ryde,
þeo folk sprad owt on vche a side,
1945 And whan þey weore to gedre met,
þer weore strokes wel byset;

(f. 27^b)

1910) Aun.] come add. L. 1911) kyng] om. P. 1915) scape P. 1916)
But P. ne] om. P. sch.] all add. P. vchon] om. P. 1917) Lance
P. laun. dr.] shafts the drew P. 1919) so] om. P. 1921) heom
þ.] then P. 1923) him P. to] om. P. 1925) f. om. P. 1927) Yett
P. 1928) ask.] he scaped B. the P. 1931) kynde] om. P. of] this
add. P. 1932) þow] doe P. 1933) For] o ausradirt und nochmals
übergeschr., L. 1935) & therfor P. now are wee P. 1936) we wiþ]
our good P. meant P. 1939) hew vs P. to] the add. P. 1840)
vs helpe P. 1941) f. om. P. 1943) reed P. him (!) P. 1944) spurred
P. vche a] euerye P.

- þer fauzt Vter and Pendragouns,
As þey weore wode lyouns,
And Vter þo nouzt forȝat,
1950 þat he no ȝaf Sarsynes mony a flat;
Mony Sarsynes hed anon
He strok of by þe nekke-bon.
Gret folk on boþe syde
þer was slawe at þat tide.
- 1955 Kyng Fortager, wiþ owte faile,
Was ouercome in þat bataile,
And, mawgre him and alle his,
þat weoren wiþ kyng Aungys,
þey weore dryuen so nyȝh,
- 1960 In to a castel þat þey fleyh,
þat was boþe god and mury,
Apon þe pleyn of Salesbury.
Pendragon and his broþir Vter
Prikeden after sir Fortager,
- 1965 And whan þey to þat castel come,
Wilde fuyr anon þey nome
And casten hit ouer þe wal wiþ gynne;
And al so swiþe hit was wiþ ynne,
Hit gan to brenne owt of wit,
- 1970 þat noman myȝhte staunchen hit;
And Fortager wiþ child and wyf
And al, þat was þer ynne on lyue,
Best and mon, wiþ lym and lyth
Hit brente doun, wiþ owte gryth.
- 1975 Fortager regnede here
Al fully seouen ȝere.
Now preyze we Jesu, heouene kyng,
And his modur, þat swete þyng,
He blesse ows alle wiþ his hond
- 1980 And sende ows pes in Engelond!
Now when Vortiger was brent,
Vther & Pendragon went,
For to beseege king Anguis
In his castle soe strong of price,
- 1985 Wither he was fled for dread & doubt;
& Pendragon with all his rout

(P p. 171)

1947) Pendragon P. 1949) f. om. P. 1951) Mony] a add. P.
1952) The P. 1953) Many P. on b. s.] that ilke tyde P. 1954) Were
slaine on both syds P. 1960) That into P. þat þey] they can
P. 1961) & that P. god] strong P. 1962) Vpon P. 1965) [at] the
P. 1966) anon þ.] soone them P. 1967) ouer—wiþ] in with a P.
1968) al so s.] sas soone as P. 1972) That were theere in their liffe P.
1973) lymes P. 1974) Were brenned all forthwith P. 1976) Al t.
Fullye the space of P. 1977) J. h.] all the heauens P. 1980)
Explicit Merlyn add. L. Damit schliesst L.

Besett him soe on euery side,
That noe man might scape *that* tyde.
But *king* Anguis within *that* castel
1990 Was bestowed soe wonderous well,
& soe stronglye itt was wrought,
That noe man might deere itt nought.
& when they had besieged him longe
About the castle, *that* was soe stronge,
1995 & when noe man might him deere,
5 barrons comen there,
That had beene *with* Vortiger,
& told Pendragon & Vther,
How Merlyne was begotten & borne,
2000 & how he came the *king* beforne,
& what words he him tolde
Of the dragons vnder the mould,
& how the *king* wold haue him slaine,
& noe man wott, where he become,
2005 & said: „*Sir*, verament,
& Merline were here present,
Throughe his councell you shall anon
Kinge Anguis ouercome!“
Pendragon was wounded thoe,
2010 & soe was his brother Vther alsoe,
& sent anon the *knight*s 5,
For to seeke Merlyn belieue,
& bade them, if they found the child,
To pray him *with* words milde,
2015 To come & speake *with* Pendragon
& Vther in his pauillyon,
Them to wishe & them to reade,
&, if hee might, helpe them att neede,
For to winne *that* strong hold,
2020 & he shold haue, what he wold.
The messengers forth went,
To seeke Merlyn, *with* good entent,
& fare & wyde they him sought,
But of him they heard right nought.
2025 Soe on a day the messengers,
As they were sett att their dinners
In a taverne in the west countrye,
With meate & drinke great plentye,
An old churle, hee came in
2030 With a white beard vpon his chine,
& a staffe in his hand he had
& shoone on feete full well made,
And begunn to craue more,

(p. 172)

¹⁹⁸⁹⁾ castle *P.* ¹⁹⁹³⁾ him] *u. d. z. nachgetr.* ¹⁹⁹⁴⁾ the] they *P.*
²⁰⁰⁹⁾ wounded (!) *P.* ²⁰¹⁷⁾ *Them]* Him *P.* ²⁰²⁷⁾ taberne ? *P.*

& said, he was anhungred sore,
2035 & praid them on the bench aboue,
To giue him something for gods loue.
& they then sayd, *with* out leasinge,
That he shold haue of them nothinge,
& sayd: „If that the churle be old,
2040 He is a stronge man & a bolde
& might goe worke for his meate,
If he itt wold *with* truth gett!“
& called to him euereche one
& bade him trusse & away gone,
2045 & sware by the ruth, *that* god them gauē
He shold drinke *with* his owne staffe.
Then Merlyn answered yorne:
„Fellow,“ hee sayd, „I am noe churle,
I am an old man of this worlde
2050 & many wonders seene & hearde,
& yee be wretches & younge of blood,
&, forsooth, can little good;
& if yee knew, as yee nay can,
Yee shold scorne noe old man:
2055 Yee shold be in the *kings* neede,
For old men can *yee* wishe and reede,
Where yee shold find Merlyn the chylde;
Therfore the *king* was full wilde,
To send madmen out off rage,
2060 For to goe on such a message;
For Merlyn is of such manner,
If he stood before you *here*
& spake to you right att this dore,
You shold know him *neuer* the more;
2065 For 3^{se} this day you haue him mett,
& yett yee know him *neuer* the bett;
& therfore wend home, by my reed,
For him to find you shall not speed,
& bydd that prince take barrons 5
2070 & bydde come & speake to Merlyn belyue,
& say, *that* he shall them abyde
Right here by this forrests side!“
& when he had said to them this,
Anon he was away, iwissem,
2075 & there wist of them none,
Where this old man was become.
The messengers wondred all,
Where the churle was befall,
& all about they him sought,
2080 But of him they heard nougħt;

2037) they] the P. 2049) this] *danach* world, *ausgestr.* P. 2066)
yee] thee P. 2062) lere P.; *Percy hat here am rande beigeschrieben.*
2075) none of them P.

For in story it is told,
The churle, *that* was soe stout & bold,
That spake soe to the messengers,
As they sate att their dinners,
2085 Forsooth, itt was Merline the younge,
That made to them this scorninge.
The messenger went soone anon
& told Vther & Pendragon,
& how the churle to them had tolde
2090 & sware to them *with* words bold,
& told them, how Merlyne the chylde
Was byding in the forrest wylde
& bade them take barrons 5,
To come and speake *with* him belyue,
2095 & sayd, Merlyn wold them abyde
Att such a place by the forrest syde.
Pendragon had wonder thoe,
& Vther, his brother, alsoe;
Pendragon bade his brother gent,
2100 To the seige to take good tent,
That king Anguis scaped not away,
Neither by night nor yett by day,
'Till they were of him wreake,
For he wold goe *with* Merlyn speake.
2105 Then Pendragon *with* barrons 5
Went forth alsoe belyue;
And *when* Pendragon was forth went,
Merlyn anon, verament,
Wist full well, *that* he was gone,
2110 & to Vther he came anon;
As itt were a stout garson,
He came to Vthers pauillyon
& said: „Vther, listen to mee,
For of thy harme I will warne thee,
2115 For I know well, *with* outen fayle,
All *king* Anguis counsaile,
For he will come this ilke night
With many a man full well dight
& into the forrest slippe anon,
2120 For to waite thee for to sloen;
But her of haue thou noe dowbt,
But warne thy host all about,
That they be armed swithe & weeble,
Both in iron & eke in steele,
2125 & gather together all thy host
& hold yee still *with* outen bost,
Till *that* hee bee amonge ye comen,
For he shalbe the first groome,

(p. 173)

²⁰⁸⁴) they] the *P.* ²⁰⁹⁶) a] *ü. d. z. nachgetr.* ²¹⁰⁷) when] *om. (!) ms.* ²¹¹¹)
garrison (!) *P.* ²¹¹⁶) *Angrius P.* ²¹²⁷) *amonge] ü. d. z. nachgetr. conen P.*

That shall vpon thy pauillion ren;
2130 & looke, *that* thou be ready then,
& heard on him looke thow hewe
& spare not that old shrewe,
For thou shalt slay him *with* thy hand
& *winne* the price from all this land!“
2135 & when he had told him all this case,
He vanished away from *that* place.
Great wonder had Vther thoe,
That he was escaped soe,
& thought, itt was gods sonde,
2140 *That* warned him *that* stonde,
That had soe warned him of his fone
& was soe lightlye from him gone.
& when itt drew vnto the night,
King Anguis anon right
2145 Did arme his men wrath & prest,
3000 men of the best,
& said, how a spye had tolde,
That Pendragon, the prince bold,
Forth into the country is gone
2150 & left his brother Vther att home ;
Therfore, he sayd, he will out breake,
& on' Vther he wold him wreake,
& sware an othe by Mahound,
He wold kill him in his pauillyon.
2155 & soone they were ready dight;
Then *king* Anguis, anon right
Forthe of the castle he can ryde
With 3000 by his syde,
& forthe he went without bost,
2160 Vntill he came to Vthers host.
& when he was comen right,
Where Vthers pauillyon was pight,
King Anguis, a fell felon,
He hyed him to the pauillyon
2165 & thought to slay Vther therin;
But he was beguiled thorrow Merlyne,
For Merlyne had *that* ilke morrow
Warned Vther of all the sorrow,
How *king* Anguis was bethought;
2170 Therfore in his pauillyon was he nought,
But had taken the feild *with* out
With many a hardye man & stout.
& Vther was a hardy man;
Vpon *king* Anguis hee ran
2175 & smote him att the first blow,

²¹³⁴⁾ wime (!) *P.* ²¹⁵²⁾ other (!) ²¹⁶⁴⁾ him] *danach* the, *ausgestr.*
P. ²¹⁶⁶⁾ beguiled] *guiled* *corr. aus?*

That he cane him ouerthrowe;
& Vther, *with* his sword soe smart
He smote him thorrow the hart
& hent him by the head anon
2180 & stroke itt from the necke-bone.
And when the Sarazens this can see,
Fast away can they flee
To the castle euereche one
& left their lord all alone;
2185 But, or *they* might scape againe,
500 were all slayne
Of the stoutest, *that* were there,
That came *with* their *king* ifere.
Now let *we him* be for a season,
2190 & let us turne to Pendragon,
That was gone to the forrest wilde,
To speake *with* Merlyn the chylde.
The first time he asked for Merlyn,
He see a heardsman keeping swine,
2195 With an old hatt vpon his head,
& in gray russett was he cladd,
And a good staffe in his hand,
& a white whelpe him followande;
Stalworth he seemed & well made.
2200 The prince anon to him roade
& well fayre he can him fraine,
Giff he heard ought of Merlyn,
& whether hee cold tell him any *tythinge*,
Where was his most wininge.
2205 „Yea, sir,“ he sayd, „by *saint* Marye,
Right now was Merlyn here *with* mee;
& thou had comen eare, indeed,
Thou might haue found him in *that* stead;
& if thou Merlyn ken can,
2210 He is not yett far gone;
& therfore ryde forth in *this* way,
As fast as euer thou may,
& on thy right hand rathe
Thou shalt find a verry faire path,
2215 That thorrow the faire forrest lyeth,
& in *that* way thou ryde swithe,
&, seekerlye, *with* outen weene,
Soone thou may Merlyn seene.“
Then was the prince glad & blythe
2220 & sped him forth swithe;
& as he hard, soe he itt found,
A well faire path on his right hand.

2185) *they*] the *P.* 2189) *we him*] vs *P.* 2203) *tythands* (!) *P.*
2209) *can M. ken P.* 2222) *his*] *danach h, ausgestr.*

They turned their horsses euereche one,
& in that path they rydden anon,
2225 & with Merlyn they metten then,
& as itt were a stout chapmon,
He bare a great packe on his backe;
& to him the prince full faire spake
& asked him, if hee see Merlyn:
2230 „Yea,“ said he, „by *seint* Martin,
A little heere before *your* sight;
He is not farr, I you plyght;
To you I say, by *seint* John,
He is not yett far gone,
2235 & therfore ryde forth belieue,
As fast as *your* horsses may driue,
& yee shall find him in a wyle,
By then yee haue rydden a myle;
With Merlyn yee shall meete then,
2240 Or yee shall speake with some other man,
That shall you tell full right,
Where you shall haue of Merlyn a sight! “
& when he had thus sayd,
They pricked forth in a brayd;
2245 & by they had rydden a stonde,
As he him said, with out wronge,
He mett with Merlyn on the playne,
As he were a doughtye swaine,
All cloathed in robes soe gay,
2250 As it had beene a monke gray,
& bare a gauelocke in his hand;
His speeche was of another land.
He, when the prince had him mett,
Faire & hendlye he did him greeete.
2255 Then the prince was all heauye
& asked him of his curtesie,
If he mett by the way
With chyld Merlyn that day.
„Yea, sir,“ hee said, “ by *seint* Michaelle,
2260 Merlyn I know verry well,
For right now, sikerlye,
Merlyin was here fast by,
& had yee rydden a litle bett,
With Merlyn yee might haue mett;
2265 But, sir, I say with out othee,
He is a quante boy, for soothe;
Soe well I know Merlyns thought:
With out my helpe you find him nougħt;
& if of him yee will haue speech,

(p. 175)

2223) The *P.* 2224) the *P.* 2226) chapm.] champyon(!) *P.* 2227)
He] & *P.* 2244) The *P.* 2245) had] ü. d. z. nachgetr. 2250) monkes *P.*

- 2270 Then must you doe, as I to you teache:
Att the next towne here beside,
There you must Merlyn abyde
& in the towne take *your* ine;
&, certainly, then child Merlyn
- 2275 Shall come to you this ilke night,
& there yee shall of him haue sight,
& then yee may both lowed & still
Speake with Merlyn all *that* you will!“
Then was the prince blythe & glad
- 2280 & pricked forth, as he were madd,
& tooke his inne in the towne,
As shold a lord of great renowne.
Now may you heare in this time,
How Merlyn came the 5th time,
- 2285 & how he the prince mett,
& on what manner he him grett
& became to him as councellour:
Hearken to me, & you shall heare!
When itt was *with* in the night,
- 2290 Merlyn came to the *king* full right,
Right in the guise of a swayne,
As he was in the forrest seene,
& sayd, as I find in the booke:
„Sir prince, god send you good lucke!
- 2295 Loe, I am heere, *that* thou hast sought:
Tell me, what is thy thought,
& what thou wilt to me saine,
For I wold heare thee wonderous faine!“
Then vpstart Pendragon
- 2300 & into his armes he him nume;
To bide *with* him he did him craue,
& what hee wold aske, he shold haue.
& Merlyn sayd, verament,
He wold be att his commandement;
- 2305 Ouer all, where soe he were,
He wold be att his bydding yare.
Then was the prince gladd & blyth
& thanked Merlyn many a sythe;
Then sayd Merlyn: „Sir, will you heare?
- 2310 I come from thy brother deere;
For through my councell hee hath this night
Slaine *king* Anguis, I you plight.“
Then was the prince blythe & gladd
& great solace & myrth made;
- 2315 & all, *that* were there, were full faine,
& on the morrow rod home againe

2312) you] am rande mit verweisungszeichen nachgetr.

- & found *king* Anguis slaine,
His head sett vp, his body drawne.
Pendragon asked Vther, iwis,
2320 Who had slaine *king* Anguis,
& he answered and can saine,
That he *was* warned by a swayne.
When he had told all, how he did,
He thanked god in *that* steade.
- 2325 Then bespake Pendragon
& sayd to Vther anon:
„Hee, *that* thee holpe att need thine, (p. 176)
Forsooth, itt was child Merlyn,
That standeth now here by thee.“
- 2330 Vther him thanked *with* hart free
& prayd him then, in all thing
That he wold be att his bidding.
Then they wenten to the castle, *with* out lesse,
Wherein many a Sarazen was,
- 2335 *That* noe man might to them winne
By noe manner of gynne;
& therfore the oste still lay,
Till after vpon the 3d day
Word came from the Sarazen,
- 2340 Where they lay in castle fine,
That they wold yeeld vp the castel,
If they might passe well
To their land *with* outen dere;
Vpon a booke *they* wold sweare,
- 2345 *That* they shold neuer againe come.
But Merlyn sent them word soone,
That they shold passe eache one
By leaue of *sir* Pendragon.
& when they had all sworne & some,
- 2350 *That* they wold neuer in this land come,
They passed anon to the sea strand
& went into their owne land.
Then to Pendragon the crowne they name,
& *king* of Englande he became,
- 2355 & in England he raigned *king*
But 3 yeere, *with* out leasing,
& after he was slaine rathe
With Sarazens, & *that* was scathe;
I shall you tell, in whatt manner:
- 2360 Listen a while & you shall heare!
That time in the land of Denmarke

2322) was] om. P; von Percy am ende der zeile nachgetr. 2338^v
they] the P. 2340) the P. 2341) castle P. 2344) the P. 2348) sir]
his (!) P. 2360) & listen] & ausgestr.

- 2 Sarazens where stout & starke,
& were of *king Anguis* kinde,
Of his next blood, *that was soe hynde*;
- 2365 The one was come of the brother,
& of the sister came the other.
Strong men *they were* & fell,
& theire names I can you tell:
The one was called *sir Gamor*,
- 2370 & the other *sir Malador*.
Gamor came of the brother beforne,
The other was of the sister borne;
Great *lords* were *they* of land:
Sir Malador held in his hand
- 2375 2 duchyes, & *Gamor* 3;
Stowter men might none bee.
When they heard, how *king Anguis*
In England was slaine, iwis,
Altogether can they speake,
- 2380 Theire vuckles death they wold wreake;
& soe great an oste together they brought,
That the number I can tell nought;
But vnto shipp they gone anon,
& the sea to flowe began,
- 2385 The winde soe well began to blow,
That they landed att Bristowe.
Then Merlyn knew itt well anon
& told itt Vther & Pendragon,
How there was comen from Denmarke
- 2390 A stronge oste, stout & starke,
With many Sarazens of price,
For to anenge *king Anguis*.
„In England,“ sayd Merlyn then,
„Such an oste was neuer scene;“
- 2395 I say to you, *with* outen layne,
The one of you shalbe slayne;
& whether of you soe ere it is,
Shall haue to meede heauens blisse.“
But for noe meede he wold not saine,
- 2400 Whether of them shold be slaine;
But neuer the lesse yee shall heare,
Merlyn loued well Vther,
The least heere, *that was* on his crowne,
Then all the body of Pendragon.
- 2405 Hee bade them dight them anon, (p. 177)
Against their foemen for to gone,
& sayd, Pendragon, *with* out fayle,
Vppon the land shold them assayle:

2367) *they]* *thew* (!) *P.* 2370) *Maladors* *P.* 2382) *the]* *they* *P.*
I] *they* *P.* 2384) *seat* (!) *P.* 2385) *blow]* *b corr. aus f. P.*

- & Vther, alsoe I bidd thee,
2410 Thou shalt wend by the sea
& looke, *that* theere scapen none,
Till they be slaine euerye eche one!"
Pendragon was a doughtye knight
& fell & egar for to fight;
2415 He neuer for stroakes wold forbear
Against noe man, *with* sheeld or speare,
Nor better did *non*, *with* outen fayle,
& *that* was seene in *that* battaile:
He tooke his oaste *with* might & mayne
2420 & went the Sarazens fast againe;
& when they were together mett,
There were strokes sadlye sett;
Many a heathen Sarazen
He cloue downe to the chin,
2425 Many a man was sticked tho,
& many a good steed was slayne alsoe.
The booke saith, *with* outen lye,
There was done such chualrye,
Of the folke, *that* Pendragon fell;
2430 Noe man can the number tell:
& Vther to the sea went,
& Merlyn told him, verament,
That he shold not that day be slaine.
Then was Vther wonderous fayne
2435 & in his hart soe wonderous lyght,
That hee was feirce & fell in fight,
& egerlye, *with* out fayle,
The Sarazens he can assayle
& fast against them can stryde,
2440 *That* many a Sarazen lost their liffe.
Pendragon & his folke, in hast
The Sarazens fast to ground they cast,
That there were none, against them stoode,
But fledd away, as they were wood.
2445 But Vther in *that* ilke tyde
Kept them in on the other syde;
With strong battayle & strokes hard
He droue them all againe backward;
& when *that* they noe further might,
2450 On Pendragon can they light,
A 100 Sarazens on a rowte
Att once layd him all about.
Who soe had seene Pendragon then,
He might haue seene a doughtye man,

2413) doughtye] am rande mit verweisungszeichen nachgetr. 2417) non]
om. P. 2442) they] the P. 2450) the P.

- 2455 For all, *that* he might euer reach,
Trulye, *they* need noe other leech.
The Sarazens stout & grim
Slew his steed vnder him;
& when hee had lost his steed,
- 2460 Great ruthe itt is in bookes to reede
How *that* he on foote stood,
Till *that* he lost his harts bloode.
A 100 Sarazens att a brayd
All att once att him layd
- 2465 & broken him body & arme
& slew him there, & *that* was harme.
& when *that* Vther vnderstoode,
His brother was slaine, he waxt neere woode
& bade his men fast fight,
- 2470 & he bestirrde him like a *knight*;
Of all the Sarazens, *that* were left aliuie,
There scaped noe more but 5;
Of the christian men were but slane
3031, certane;
- 2475 & in *that* ilke country theo
A mile might noe man goe,
Neither by dale nor by downe,
But he shold tread on a dead man.
And when itt was against the night,
- 2480 Vther had discomfited them in fight;
He went home into his inne
& asket councell of Merlyne.
Pendragon was out sought
& to the church full fayre brought;
- 2485 He was grauen & layd full merrye
In the towne of Glasenburye,
& thus ended *that* doughtye *kmight*:
God grant his soule to blisse soe bright,
& all, *that* done soe for the right,
- 2490 I pray Jesu for his might,
He grant them heauens blisse aboue!
Amen, Amen, for his mothers loue!

(p. 178)

2456) *they*] the P. 2467) Vither (!) P.
